

# KANGOO

vehicle user manual



# Castrol, exclusive Renault partner



Benefit from cutting-edge technology born out of competition to ensure the performance and longevity of your Renault thanks to wide range of engine lubricants developed specially by Renault and Castrol.

Renault recommends 

[renault.fr](https://renault.fr)

# Welcome to your new vehicle

---

**This driver's handbook** contains the information necessary:

- for you to familiarise yourself with your vehicle, to use it to its best advantage and to benefit fully from all the functions and the technical developments it incorporates.
- to ensure that it always gives the best performance by following the simple, but comprehensive advice concerning regular maintenance.
- to enable you to deal quickly with minor faults not requiring specialist attention.

It is well worth taking a few minutes to read this handbook to familiarise yourself with the information and guidelines it contains about the vehicle and its functions and new features. If certain points are still unclear, our Network technicians will be only too pleased to provide you with any additional information.

To help you, you will find the following symbols:



These appear in the vehicle and indicate that you should consult the manual for detailed information and/or limits on operations with respect to your vehicle's equipment.

➡ anywhere in the manual indicates a transfer to a page.



anywhere in the manual indicates a hazard, danger or a safety recommendation.

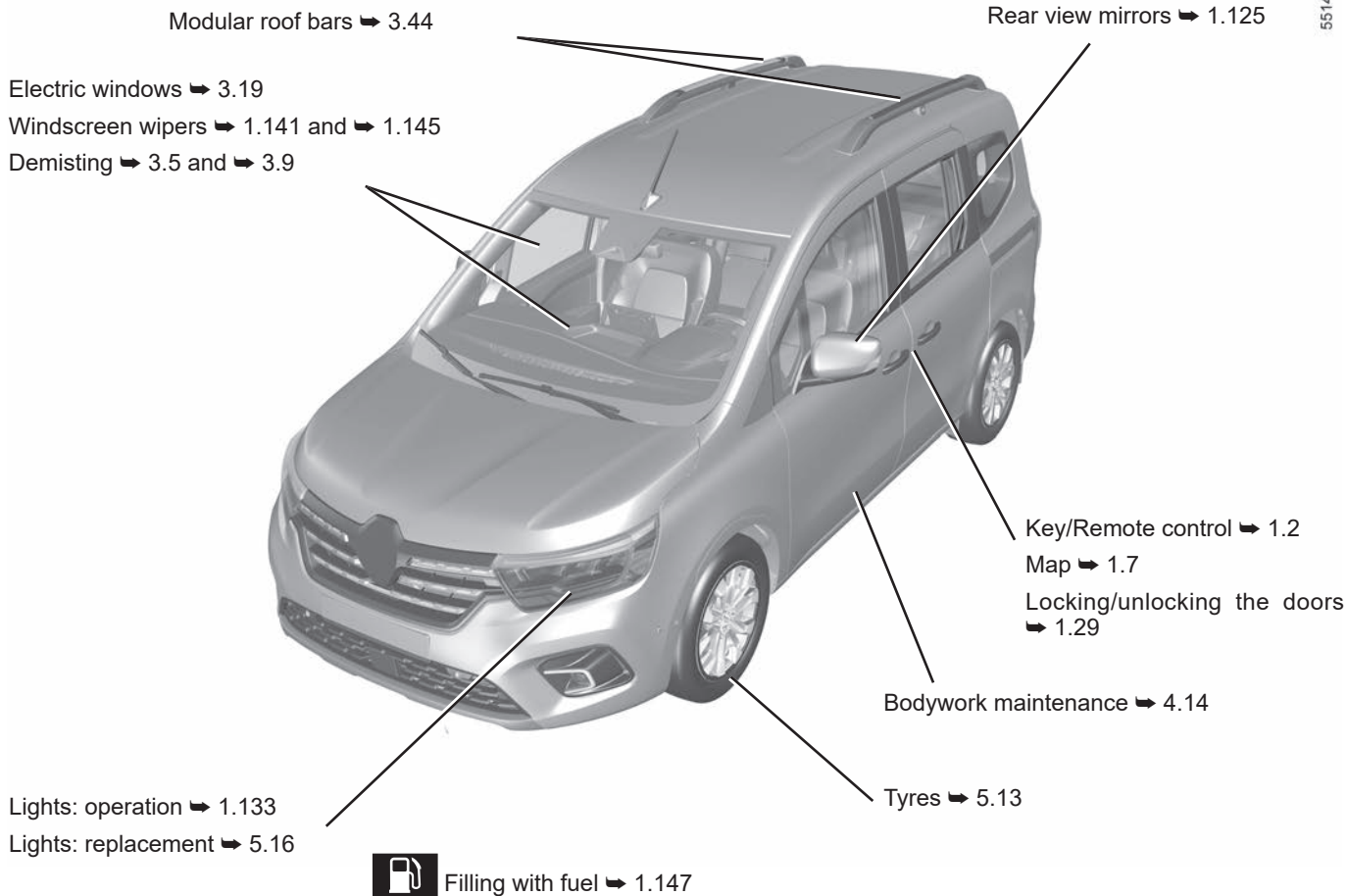
The descriptions of the models given in this handbook are based on the technical specifications at the time of writing. **This handbook covers all items of equipment** (both standard and optional) **available for these models but whether or not these are fitted to the vehicle depends on the version, options selected and the country where the vehicle is sold.** **This handbook may also contain information about items of equipment to be introduced later in the model year.** **The diagrams in the user manual are provided as examples.**

Enjoy driving your new vehicle.

Translated from French. Copying or translation, in part or in full, is forbidden unless prior written permission has been obtained from the car manufacturer.

# EXTERIOR

55149





# PASSENGER COMPARTMENT

Adjusting your driving position ➡ 1.43

Passenger compartment storage/fit-  
tings ➡ 3.25

Rear bench seat ➡ 3.34

Rear headrests ➡ 3.33

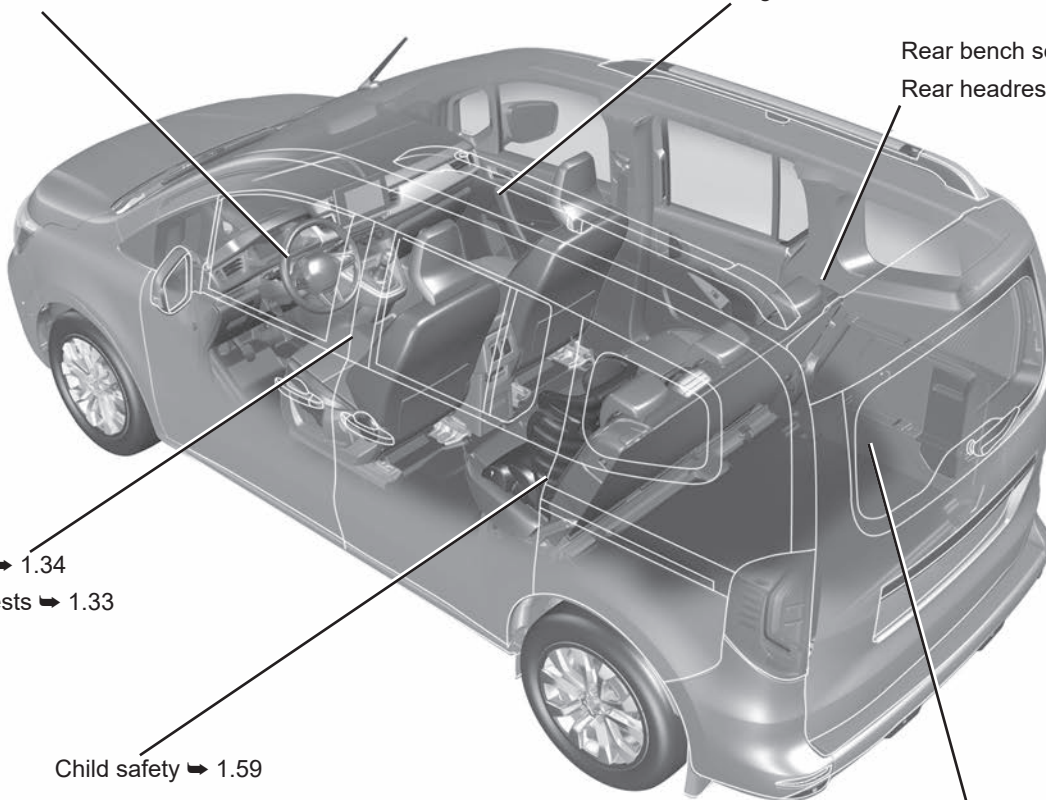
Front seats ➡ 1.34

Front headrests ➡ 1.33

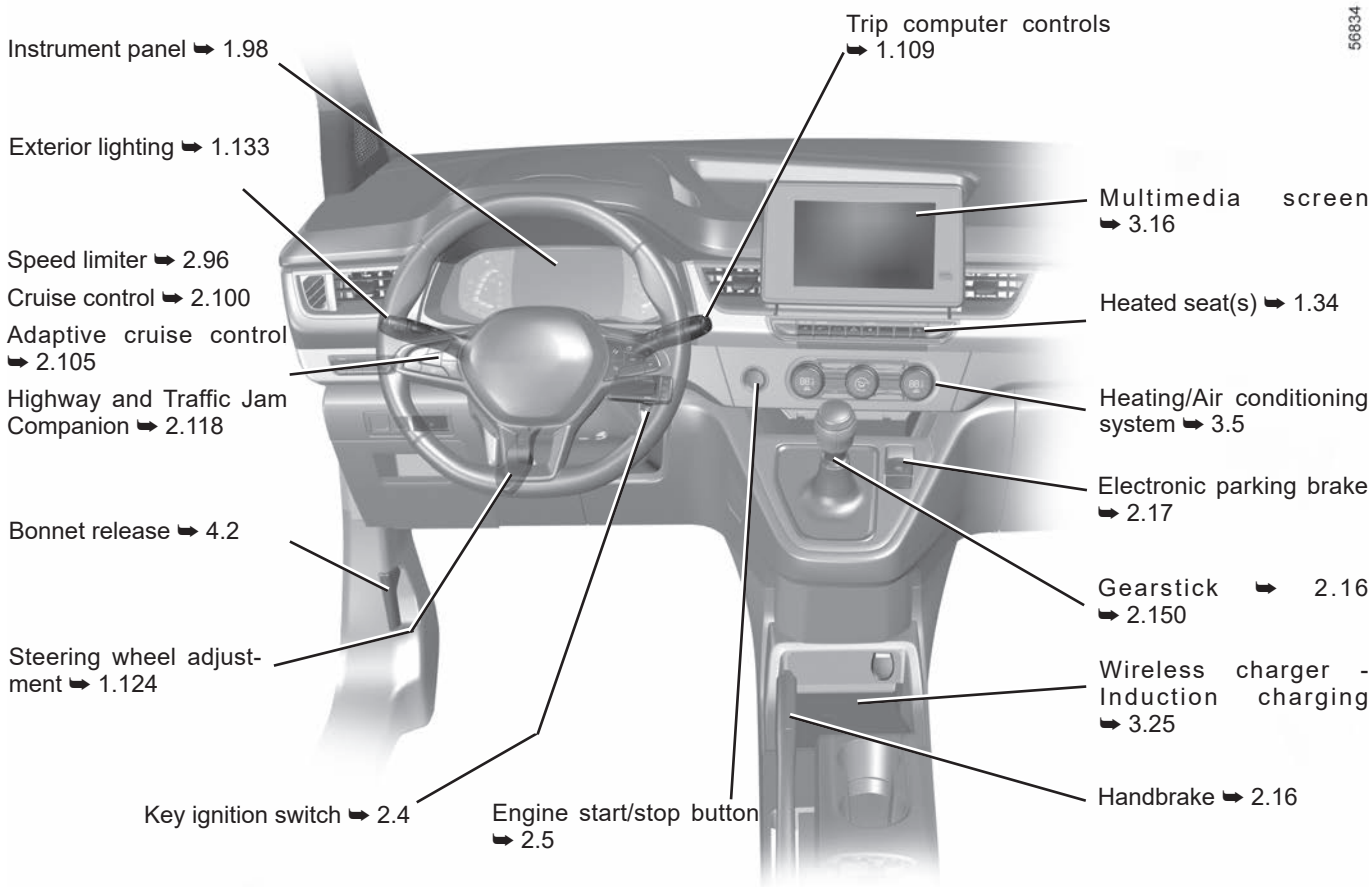
Child safety ➡ 1.59

Transporting objects in the  
luggage compartment ➡ 3.39

Rear parcel shelf ➡ 3.36



# DRIVER'S POSITION



56834

# DRIVING AIDS

ABS (anti-lock braking system)  
ESC (electronic stability control)  
Braking assistance  
Hill start assistance  
Driver assistance with a trailer  
Traction control - Extended grip  
➡ 2.42

Advanced safety ➡ 2.73

Lane departure warning ➡ 2.48

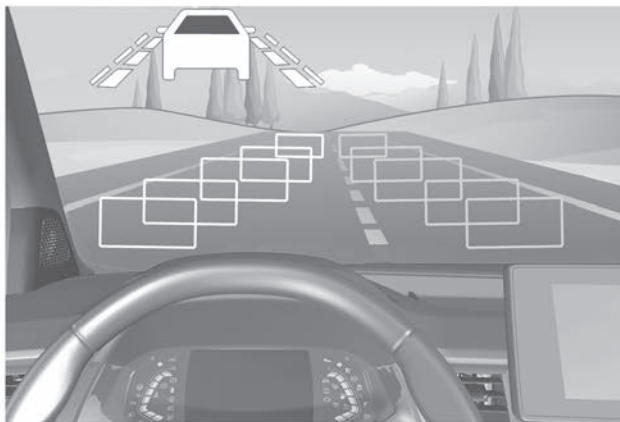
Lane Keeping Assist ➡ 2.53

Blind spot warning ➡ 2.59

Stop and Start ➡ 2.8

Safe distance alert ➡ 2.69

Fatigue detection warning ➡ 2.90



Detection of road signs ➡ 2.92

55387

Speed limiter ➡ 2.96

Cruise control ➡ 2.100

Adaptive cruise control ➡ 2.105

Highway and Traffic Jam  
Companion ➡ 2.118

Parking distance control ➡ 2.134

Reversing camera ➡ 2.142

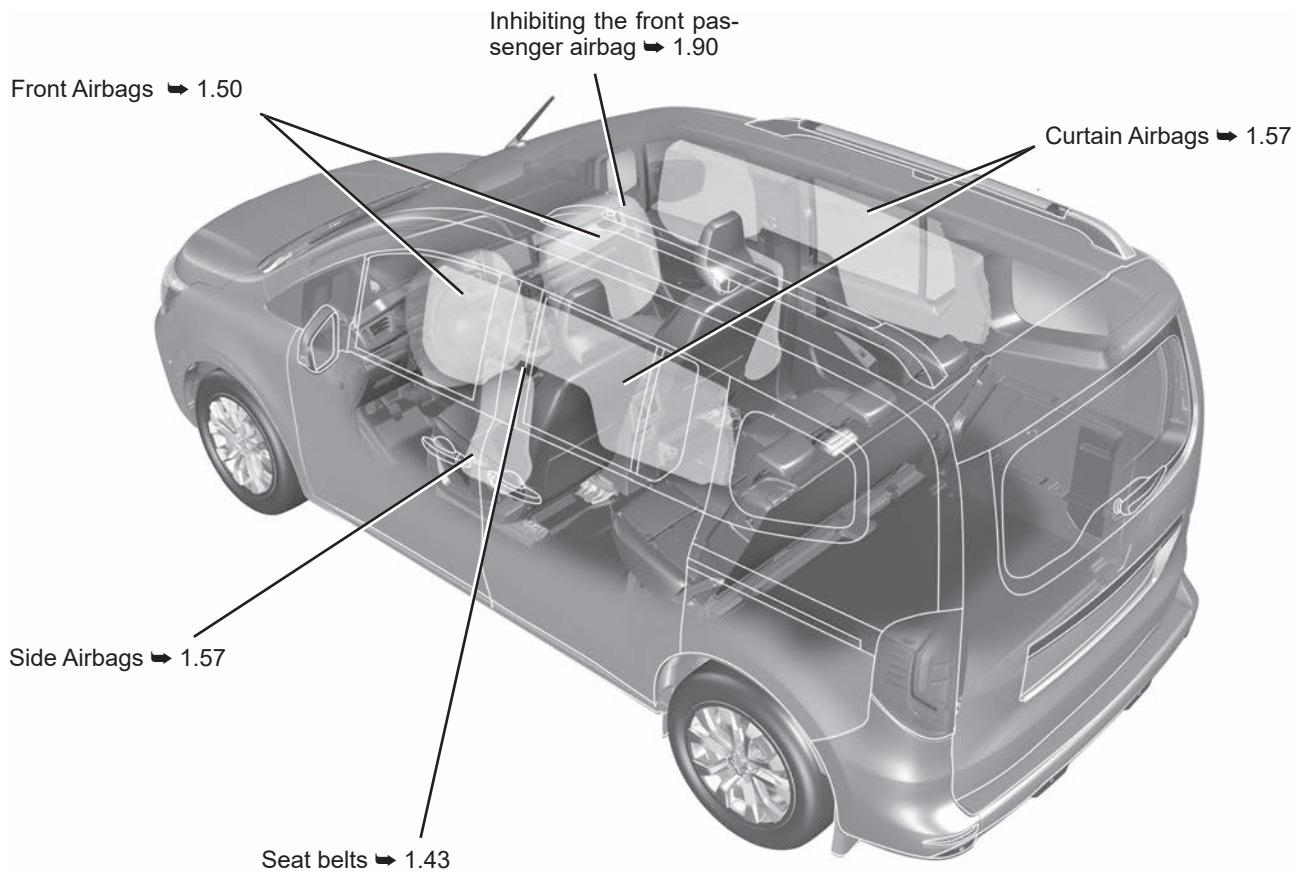
Camera rear view ➡ 1.129

Assisted parking ➡ 2.145

Tyre pressure loss warning  
➡ 2.31

Tyre pressure monitoring system  
➡ 2.37

# SAFETY ON BOARD



# IDENTIFYING A VEHICLE - LABELS

Technical Information for  
the emergency services  
➡ 6.3

Vehicle identification  
plate ➡ 6.2

Review of a vehicle identification  
number ➡ 6.2

Engine identification ➡ 6.4

Tyre pressure labels ➡ 4.10 ➡ 2.31  
➡ 2.37



# THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT (routine maintenance)

55299

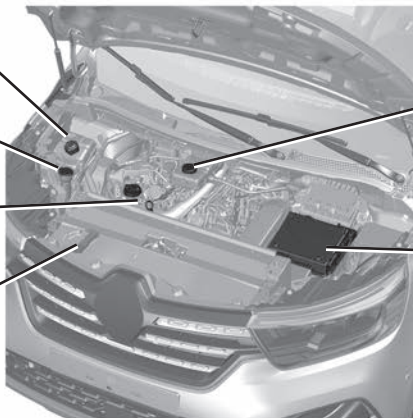
Coolant level ➡ 4.7

Windscreen washer fluid ➡ 4.7

Engine oil filler cap ➡ 4.5

Engine oil dipstick ➡ 4.4

Opening the bonnet ➡ 4.2



Brake fluid ➡ 4.7

Battery ➡ 4.12

# BREAKDOWN RECOVERY

Replacing windscreen wiper blade(s) ➔ 5.38

Replacing headlight bulbs  
➔ 5.16

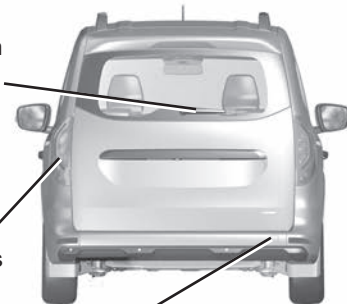
Front towing point ➔ 5.40



Replacing the rear screen wiper blade ➔ 5.38

Replacing rear light bulbs  
➔ 5.18

Rear towing point ➔ 000



Puncture:

Tools ➔ 5.8

Emergency spare wheel ➔ 5.2

Changing a wheel  
➔ 5.11



Fuses ➔ 5.35



# C O N T E N T S

## Sections

**Getting to know your vehicle .....**

**1**

**Driving .....**

**2**

**Your comfort .....**

**3**

**Maintenance .....**

**4**

**Practical advice .....**

**5**

**Technical specifications .....**

**6**

**Alphabetical index .....**

**7**





# ***Section 1: Getting to know your vehicle***

Key, radio frequency remote control: general information, use, deadlocking . . . . .	1.2
Card: general information, use, deadlocking . . . . .	1.7
Opening and closing the doors . . . . .	1.23
Locking, unlocking the opening elements . . . . .	1.29
Automatic locking when driving . . . . .	1.32
Headrests, front seats . . . . .	1.33
Seat belts . . . . .	1.43
Additional methods of restraint . . . . .	1.50
at the front, rear seat belts . . . . .	1.50
side . . . . .	1.57
Child safety: general information . . . . .	1.59
choosing a child seat mounting . . . . .	1.62
fitting a child seat, general information . . . . .	1.65
Child seats: attachment by seat belt or by isofix system . . . . .	1.67
deactivating, activating the front passenger airbag . . . . .	1.90
Audible and visual signals . . . . .	1.93
Driving position . . . . .	1.94
Instrument panel . . . . .	1.98
displays and indicators . . . . .	1.103
trip computer . . . . .	1.109
vehicle settings customisation menu . . . . .	1.119
Clock and outdoor temperature . . . . .	1.122
Steering wheel, Power-assisted steering . . . . .	1.124
Rear view mirrors . . . . .	1.125
Camera rear view . . . . .	1.129
Exterior lighting and signals . . . . .	1.133
Headlight beam adjustment . . . . .	1.139
Washers, wipers . . . . .	1.141
Fuel tank (filling with fuel) . . . . .	1.147
Reagent tank . . . . .	1.150

## KEY, RADIO FREQUENCY REMOTE CONTROL: general information (1/2)

A



55142

Depending on the vehicle, there are two types of keys, key **A** or key **B**.

### Key, Remote control **A**

- 1 Locks all the opening elements.
- 2 Unlocks all the opening elements.
- 3 Driver's door and ignition key.
- 4 Locking/unlocking using the switchblade key. To release the insert from its housing, press button **4**, it comes out automatically. Press button **4** and guide the insert back into its housing.
- 5 Unlocking/locking the luggage compartment only.

B



55143

### Key, Remote control **B**

- 1 Locks all the opening elements.
- 6 Unlocking all the opening elements, in Access mode, or unlocking the front doors, in Secure mode.
- 3 Driver's door and ignition key.

- 4 Locking/unlocking using the switchblade key. To release the insert from its housing, press button **4**, it comes out automatically. Press button **4** and guide the insert back into its housing.
- 7 Unlocking the sliding side doors and the rear hinged doors.

### Remote control **B**

There are two ways to use the remote control: **Access mode** and **Secure mode**.

To switch between the remote control user modes, use the "Access" menu from the trip computer or, depending on the vehicle, from the multimedia screen. The default mode is **Access mode**.

## KEY, RADIO FREQUENCY REMOTE CONTROL: general information (2/2)

### Radio frequency remote control operating range

This varies according to the surroundings: take care not to lock or unlock the doors by inadvertently pressing the buttons on the remote control.

**Note:** if any opening element (door or luggage compartment) is open or not properly shut, locking is unsuccessful and the hazard warning lights and side indicator lights do not flash.

### Interference

Interference by factors in the immediate vicinity (external installations or the use of equipment operating on the same frequency as the remote control) may affect the operation of the remote control.

The key must not be used for any function other than those described in the handbook (removing the cap from a bottle, etc.).

### Replacement and additional keys or remote controls.

You must only contact an approved dealer:

- If you need to replace a key it will be necessary to take the vehicle and all of its keys to an approved Dealer in order to initialise the system.
- Depending on the vehicle, you have the option of using up to four remote controls.

### Remote control unit failure

Make sure that the correct battery type is being used, and that the battery is in good condition and inserted correctly. These batteries have a service life of approximately two years.

How to change the battery ➔ 5.27.

### Advice

Avoid leaving the remote control in hot, cold or humid areas.



### Driver's responsibility when parking or stopping the vehicle

Never leave an animal, child or adult who is not self-sufficient alone on your vehicle, even for a short time.

They may pose a risk to themselves or to others by starting the engine, activating equipment such as the electric windows or locking the doors.

Also, in hot and/or sunny weather, please remember that the temperature inside the passenger compartment increases very quickly.

**RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY.**

## RADIO FREQUENCY REMOTE CONTROL: use (1/2)

Remote control **A** or, depending on the vehicle, remote control **B** locks or unlocks the doors. It is powered by a battery which can be replaced. ➔ 5.27.

### Locking the doors

Press locking button **1**.

The hazard lights and side repeaters **flash twice** to indicate that the doors have **locked** and, on some vehicles, the door mirrors fold in automatically.

**Note:** if any opening element (door or luggage compartment) is open or not properly shut, locking is unsuccessful and the hazard warning lights and side indicator lights do not flash.

### Unlocking/locking the luggage compartment only

Using the remote control **A**, press button **3** to unlock/lock the luggage compartment door only.



### Unlocking the rear area

Using the remote control **B**, press button **5** to unlock the sliding side doors and the rear hinged doors.

### Unlocking the doors

The hazard lights and side repeaters **flash once** to indicate that the doors have **unlocked** and, on some vehicles, the door mirrors fold out automatically.

### Remote control A

Press button **2** to unlock all the opening elements.

### Remote control B

Press button **4** once to:

- unlock all the opening elements, in Access mode;
- unlock the front doors, in Secure mode.

### Remote control B

There are two ways to use the remote control: **Access mode** and **Secure mode**.

To switch between the remote control user modes, use the “Access” menu from the trip computer or, depending on the vehicle, from the multimedia screen. The default mode is **Access mode**.

## RADIO FREQUENCY REMOTE CONTROL: use (2/2)



### **Driver's responsibility when parking or stopping the vehicle**

Never leave an animal, child or adult who is not self-sufficient alone on your vehicle, even for a short time.

They may pose a risk to themselves or to others by starting the engine, activating equipment such as the electric windows or locking the doors.

Also, in hot and/or sunny weather, please remember that the temperature inside the passenger compartment increases very quickly.

**RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY.**

While the engine is running, the buttons on remote control **A** or, depending on the vehicle, on remote control **B** are inactive.

Depending on the vehicle, the door mirrors fold in/out automatically when the vehicle is locked/unlocked  
➡ 1.125.



## RADIO FREQUENCY REMOTE CONTROL UNIT: deadlocking



If the vehicle is equipped with a deadlocking function, this allows you to lock the opening elements and to prevent the doors from being unlocked using the interior handles (for example, by breaking the window and then trying to open the door from the inside).

To do this, press button **1** twice in quick succession.

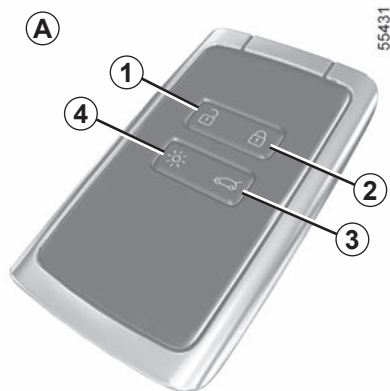
The hazard warning lights and side indicator lights give **two** slow flashes and **three** quick flashes to indicate locking.

Depending on the vehicle, the door mirrors fold in automatically when the vehicle is locked ➡ 1.125.



Never use deadlocking if someone is still inside the vehicle.

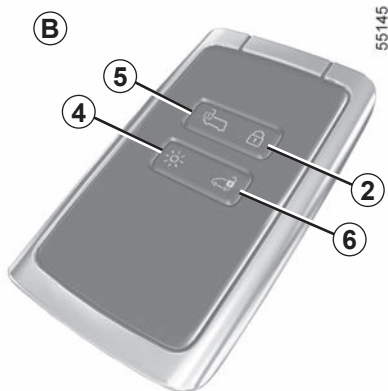
## CARD: general information (1/4)



Depending on the vehicle, there are two types of cards, card **A** or card **B**.

### A card

- 1 Unlocking the doors and tailgate.
- 2 Locking all doors and tailgate.
- 3 Unlocking/locking the luggage compartment only or, depending on the vehicle, unlocking the rear area (sliding side doors and rear hinged doors).
- 4 Switching on the lighting remotely.



### B card

- 4 Switching on the lighting remotely.
- 5 Unlocking all the front doors in Secure mode, or unlocking all the opening elements in Access mode.
- 2 Locks all the opening elements.
- 6 Unlocking the rear area (sliding side doors and rear hinged doors).

### B card

There are two ways to use the card: **Access mode** and **Secure mode**.

To switch between the card user modes, use the "Access" menu from the trip computer or, depending on the vehicle, from the multimedia screen. The default mode is **Secure mode**.

## CARD: general information (2/4)

### The card is used for:

- locking/unlocking the doors and tailgate (doors, tailgate) and the fuel filler flap (see the following pages);
- switching on the vehicle lighting remotely (refer to the following pages).

#### Advice

Avoid leaving the card in hot, cold or humid areas.

Keep the card with you.

Do not keep the card in a place where it could be bent or damaged accidentally, such as in a back pocket of a garment.

### card operating range

This varies according to the environment: take care not to accidentally lock or unlock the vehicle by inadvertently pressing the buttons on the card.

**Note:** if a door or the boot is open or not properly shut, locking is not carried out. A beep sounds and the hazard warning lights and side repeaters do not flash.

### Interference

Interference by factors in the immediate vicinity (external installations or the use of equipment operating on the same frequency as the card) may disrupt its operation.

### Battery life

Make sure that the correct battery type is being used, and that the battery is in good condition and inserted correctly. Its service life is approximately two years: it should be replaced when the message “Keycard Battery Low” appears on the instrument panel ➡ 5.29.

When the battery is flat, you can still lock/unlock and start your vehicle.  
➡ 1.29 ➡ 2.5.

## CARD: general information (3/4)



### Distance lighting function

Press button **4** once to switch on the exterior lighting for approximately 20 seconds. This can be used, for example, to identify the vehicle from a distance when parked in a car park.

Pressing and holding the **4** button for approximately two seconds activates the exterior lighting and a sound is emitted.

**Note:** pressing button **4** again switches off the lighting.



### Replacement: need for an additional card

If you lose your card or require another, you can obtain one from an authorised dealer.

If a card is replaced, it will be necessary to take the vehicle **and all its cards** to an approved Dealer to initialise the system.

You may use up to four cards per vehicle.



### Driver's responsibility when parking or stopping the vehicle

Never leave an animal, child or adult who is not self-sufficient alone in your vehicle, even for a short time.

They may pose a risk to themselves or to others by starting the engine, activating equipment such as the electric windows or locking the doors, for example.

Also, in hot and/or sunny weather, please remember that the temperature inside the passenger compartment increases very quickly.

**RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY.**

## CARD: general information (4/4)

40303

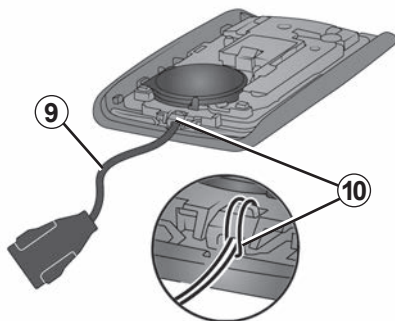


### Fitting a strap 9

Slide the rear casing **7** downwards while pressing on zone **C**.

Never insert screwdriver-type tools into the **8** opening.

57037



Insert the hand strap into the **10** component and pass the end of the strap through the buckle.

Position the hand strap at the opening **8** and close the cartridge.

**Note:** check that the diameter of the strap cord **9** will fit the opening **8**.

## “HANDS-FREE” CARD: use (1/11)

### A card

There are three ways to unlock/lock the vehicle:

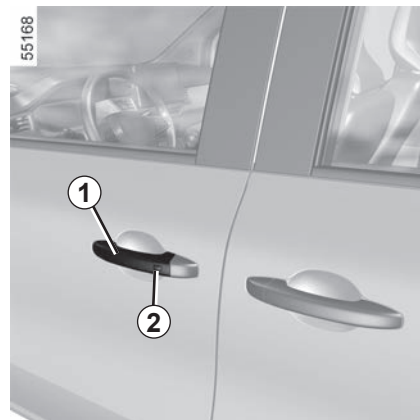
- “hands-free”, when approaching and moving away from the vehicle;
- in “hands free” mode, depending on the vehicle, using button **2** on the door handle **1**;
- using the card in remote control mode.

### Deactivating/activating the «hands-free» mode

Depending on the vehicle, from the trip computer or the multimedia screen you can deactivate/activate the following:

- unlocking when approaching the vehicle;
- locking when moving away from the vehicle;
- the “hands-free” locking and unlocking completely.

You can also disable/activate the sound signal that is emitted upon locking when moving away from the vehicle ➔ 1.119.



#### Driver's responsibility when parking or stopping the vehicle

Never leave an animal, child or adult who is not self-sufficient alone in your vehicle, even for a short time.

They may pose a risk to themselves or to others by starting the engine, activating equipment such as the electric windows or locking the doors, for example.

Also, in hot and/or sunny weather, please remember that the temperature inside the passenger compartment increases very quickly.

**RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY.**

## “HANDS-FREE” CARD: use (2/11)

53963



### Hands-free unlocking, when approaching the vehicle;

With the card in access zone **3**, the vehicle will unlock. Unlocking is indicated by **one flash** of the hazard warning lights and the indicator lights.

Depending on the vehicle, the door mirrors fold in/out automatically when the vehicle is locked/unlocked  
➡ 1.125

53962



### Hands-free locking when moving away from the vehicle

With the card on you, doors and luggage compartment door closed, move away from the vehicle: it will lock automatically once you have left the access zone **4**.

**Note:** the distance at which the vehicle locks depends on the surroundings.

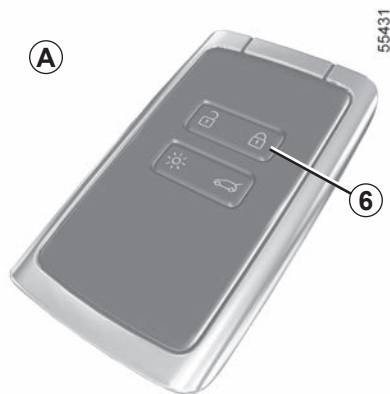
To indicate that the vehicle has been locked, the hazard warning lights **flash twice** and then **light up** for approximately four seconds, and a beep sounds in confirmation.

55939



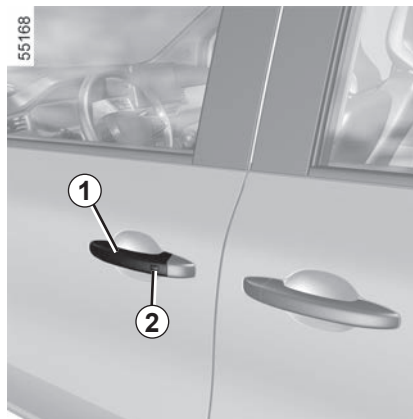
The vehicle cannot be remotely locked if the card is within the area **5**.

## “HANDS-FREE” CARD: use (3/11)



If the card has been within the detection area **4** for approximately 15 minutes, remote locking is disabled. To lock the vehicle, press the **2** button on the **1** handle or the **6** button on the card.

Do not store the card anywhere it may come into contact with other electronic equipment (computer, phone etc.) as this could hinder its operation.



### “Hands-free” unlocking/locking using button 2

With the card in zone **3** and the vehicle locked, press button **2** on the door handle **1** to unlock the vehicle.

Pressing the tailgate button once unlocks the entire vehicle and opens the tailgate.

The hazard lights and side repeaters **flash once** to indicate that the doors have unlocked and, on some vehicles, the door mirrors fold out automatically.

53963

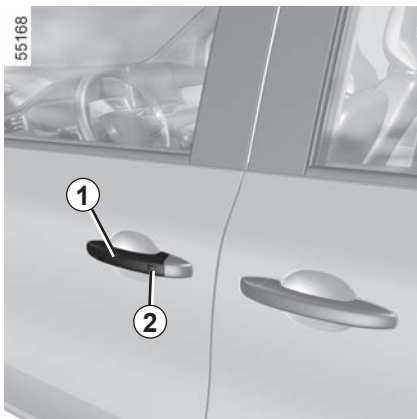


With the vehicle unlocked, press button **2** once to lock the vehicle.

The hazard warning lights **flash twice** to indicate that the vehicle is locked and, depending on the vehicle, the door mirrors automatically fold in.



## “HANDS-FREE” CARD: use (4/11)



### Special features of the unlocking system

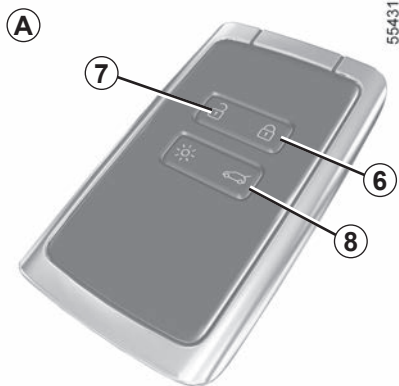
After eight days of non-use, approach unlocking is disabled. Press button **2** (front door handle) or use the card as a remote control (see following pages) to unlock the vehicle and reactivate “hands-free” mode.

### Special features relating to “hands-free” locking

After locking in “hands-free” mode, you have to wait approximately three seconds before being able to unlock the vehicle again. During these three seconds, the door handles can be tried to make sure that the vehicle is locked properly.

**Note:** if a door or the boot is open or not properly shut, locking is not carried out. A beep sounds and the hazard warning lights and side repeaters do not flash.

## “HANDS-FREE” CARD: use (5/11)



### Using the card as a remote control A

#### Unlocking with the card

Press button **7**.

The hazard lights and side repeaters **flash once** to indicate that the doors have unlocked and, on some vehicles, the door mirrors fold out automatically.

The card buttons are deactivated when the engine is running.

#### Locking using the card

With the doors and boot closed, press button **6**: the vehicle locks.

The hazard warning lights **flash twice** to indicate that the vehicle is locked and, depending on the vehicle, the door mirrors automatically fold in.

#### Note:

- the maximum distance at which the vehicle locks depends on the surroundings;
- if a door or the boot is open or not properly shut, locking is not carried out. A beep sounds and the hazard warning lights and side repeaters do not flash.

#### Unlocking/locking the boot only or, depending on the vehicle, unlocking the rear area

Press the **8** button to unlock/lock the boot only or, depending on the vehicle, to unlock the rear area.

55939



If, **while the engine is running**, a door is opened and closed, and the card is no longer in the zone **5**, the message Keycard Not Detected indicates that the card is not inside the vehicle. This will, for example, prevent you from driving away after dropping off a passenger who has kept the card on them.

The warning disappears when the card is detected again.

## “HANDS-FREE” CARD: use (6/11)

### B card

#### Unlocking the vehicle

There are two ways to unlock the vehicle:

- in “hands-free” mode, using the buttons on the door handles;
- using the card in remote control mode.

#### Locking the vehicle

There are four ways to lock the vehicle:

- in “hands-free” mode, when moving away from the vehicle;
- in “hands-free” mode, using the button **9** on one of the front door handles;
- in “hands-free” mode, using the button **10** on the handle of one of the sliding side doors or using the button **11** on the rear hinged door;
- using the card in remote control mode.

Do not store the card anywhere it may come into contact with other electronic equipment (computer, phone etc.) as this could hinder its operation.

**B**

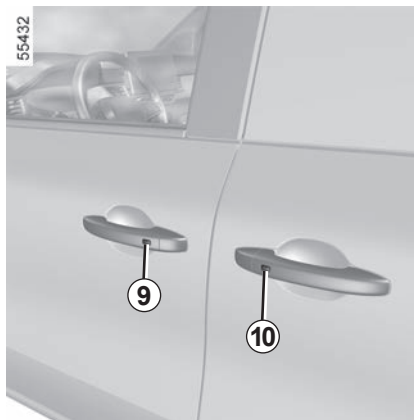


#### Deactivating/activating the «hands-free» mode

Depending on the vehicle, from the trip computer or the multimedia screen you can deactivate/activate the following:

- locking when moving away from the vehicle;
- locking and unlocking by pressing button **9** on one of the front door handles.

You can also disable/activate the sound signal that is emitted upon locking when moving away from the vehicle ➔ 1.119.



## “HANDS-FREE” CARD: use (7/11)

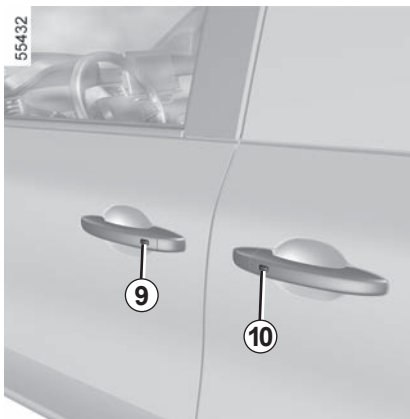
55433



### “Hands-free” unlocking

With the card in the access zone **12**:

- press the **9** button on the handle of one of the front doors to unlock the front doors in secure mode, or all the opening elements in access mode;
- press the **10** button on the handle of one of the sliding side doors or, on the **11** button of the rear hinged door to unlock the rear area in secure mode or all the opening elements in access mode.



The hazard lights and side repeaters **flash once** to indicate that the doors have unlocked and, on some vehicles, the door mirrors fold out automatically.



**Note:** “hands-free” unlocking will not work if the card is not present within the detection zone **12** of the button pressed.

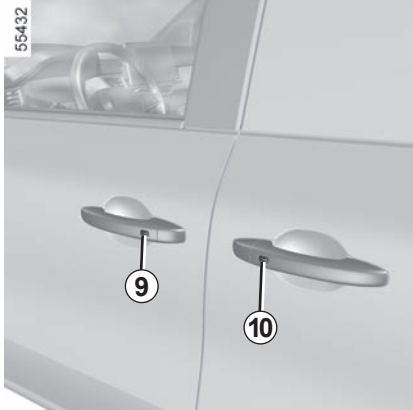
## “HANDS-FREE” CARD: use (8/11)

55433



### “Hands-free” locking

With the vehicle unlocked, all the opening elements closed, press button **9**, **10** or **11** once to lock all the opening elements.



#### Secure mode

If one of the front doors is open, press the **9**, **10** or **11** button to lock the rear area.

If one of the opening elements in the rear area is open, press the **9**, **10** or **11** button to lock the front doors.

#### Access mode

If a door or the boot is open or not properly shut, locking using the **9**, **10** or **11** button is not carried out.

55114



The hazard warning lights **flash twice** to indicate that the vehicle is locked and, depending on the vehicle, the door mirrors automatically fold in.

**Note:** “hands-free” locking will not work if the card is not present within the detection zone **12** of the button pressed.

#### Special features relating to “hands-free” locking

After locking in hands-free mode, you have to wait approximately three seconds before being able to unlock the vehicle again.

## “HANDS-FREE” CARD: use (9/11)

56784



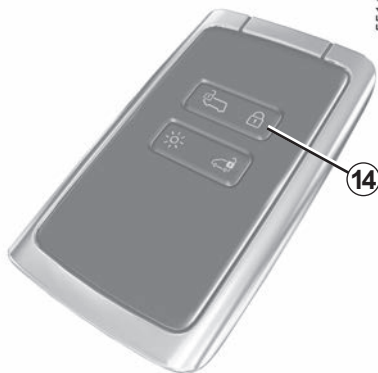
### Hands-free locking when moving away from the vehicle

With the card on you, doors and luggage compartment door closed, move away from the vehicle: it will lock automatically once you have left the access zone **13**.

**Note:** the distance at which the vehicle locks depends on the surroundings.

To indicate that the vehicle has been locked, the hazard warning lights **flash twice** and then **light up** for approximately four seconds, and a beep sounds in confirmation.

55145



If the card has been within the detection area **13** for approximately 15 minutes, remote locking is disabled. To lock the vehicle, press button **14** on the card.

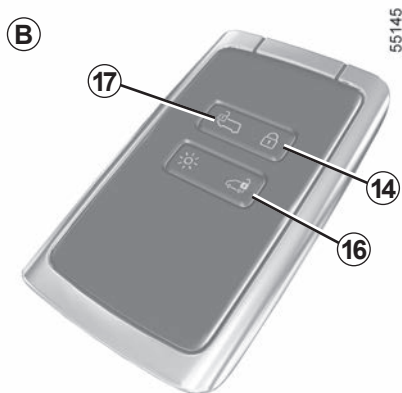
55945



The vehicle cannot be remotely locked if the card is within the area **15**.

**Note:** if an opening element is open or not properly shut, “hands-free” locking when moving away from the vehicle is not carried out. The hazard warning lights and indicator lights do not flash.

## “HANDS-FREE” CARD: use (10/11)



### Using the card as a remote control *B*

There are two modes of use: **Secure mode** and **Access mode**.

To switch between the card user modes, use the “Access” menu from the trip computer or, depending on the vehicle, from the multimedia screen.

The default mode is **Secure mode**.

The card buttons are deactivated when the engine is running.

### Unlocking with the card

Press button **16** to unlock the sliding side doors and the rear hinged doors.

#### Secure mode

Press button **17** to unlock the front doors.

#### Access mode

Press button **17** to unlock all the opening elements.

The hazard lights and side repeaters **flash once** to indicate that the doors have unlocked and, on some vehicles, the door mirrors fold out automatically.

### Locking using the card

With all the opening elements closed, press the **14** button: the vehicle locks.

The hazard warning lights **flash twice** to indicate that the vehicle is locked and, depending on the vehicle, the door mirrors automatically fold in.

#### Note:

- the maximum distance at which the vehicle locks depends on the surroundings;
- if a door or the boot is open or not properly shut, locking using the **14** button is not carried out. A beep sounds and the hazard warning lights and side repeaters do not flash.

## “HANDS-FREE” CARD: use (11/11)

56785



If, **while the engine is running**, a door is opened and closed, and the card is no longer in the zone **18**, the message “Keycard Not Detected” indicates that the card is not inside the vehicle. This will, for example, prevent you from driving away after dropping off a passenger who has kept the card on them.

The warning disappears when the card is detected again.



### **Driver’s responsibility when parking or stopping the vehicle**

Never leave an animal, child or adult who is not self-sufficient alone in your vehicle, even for a short time.

They may pose a risk to themselves or to others by starting the engine, activating equipment such as the electric windows or locking the doors, for example.

Also, in hot and/or sunny weather, please remember that the temperature inside the passenger compartment increases very quickly.

**RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY.**



## “HANDS-FREE” CARD: DEADLOCKING



If the vehicle is equipped with a deadlocking function, this allows you to lock the opening elements and to prevent the doors from being unlocked using the interior handles (for example, by breaking the window and then trying to open the door from the inside).

To do this, press button **1** twice in quick succession.

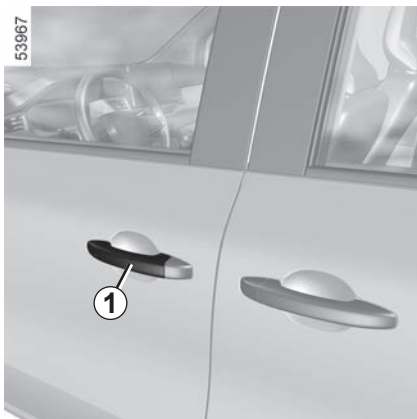
Locking is confirmed by **two slow flashes** and **three quick flashes** of the hazard warning lights and indicator lights.



Never use deadlocking if someone is still inside the vehicle.

Depending on the vehicle, the door mirrors fold in automatically when the vehicle is locked ➔ 1.125.

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE DOORS (1/6)



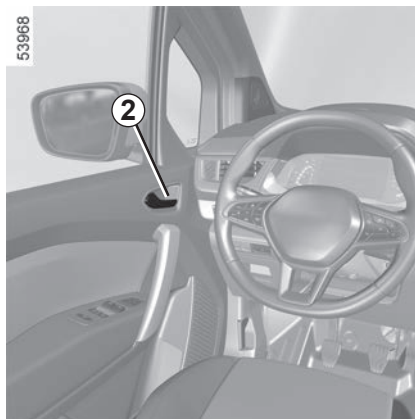
### Front doors

#### Opening from the outside

With the doors unlocked or, depending on the vehicle, the card on you, hold the handle **1** and pull it towards you.




As a safety precaution, the doors should only be opened or closed when the vehicle is stationary.



#### Opening from the inside

Unlock the door and pull handle **2**.

### Door/tailgate open buzzer

When the vehicle is stationary, the  warning light appears on the instrument panel accompanied by a warning light indicating which of the opening elements (door(s), luggage compartment) are open or incorrectly closed.

Once the vehicle reaches a speed of approximately 6 mph (10 km/h), a warning light indicates if the door(s) or luggage compartment are open or not properly closed, along with the message “WARNING: Boot Open” or “WARNING: Door Open” and a beep will sound for around 40 seconds or until the door/luggage compartment is closed.

### Lights-on reminder buzzer

If you have switched off the ignition and left the lights switched on, a reminder buzzer will sound when a door is opened.

### Special note

Depending on the vehicle, accessories (e.g. radio) stop working either when the engine is switched off or when the doors are locked, or when the driver's door is opened.

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE DOORS (2/6)

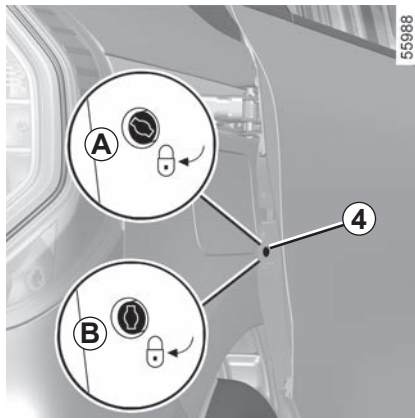


### Sliding side door

**Opening the doors from the outside**  
Unlock the door and pull handle **3**, then slide the door towards the rear of the vehicle until it locks in position. To unlock the doors ➡ 1.4 ➡ 1.11.

#### Sliding side door (fuel filler cap side)

Depending on the vehicle, opening the fuel filler flap prevents the sliding side door from opening fully.  
➡ 1.147.



### Child safety

(depending on the vehicle)

To make it impossible for the sliding side doors to be opened from the inside, use the key to turn the lock **4** (position **B**) and close the door.

Check from the inside that all the doors are locked. The door can only be opened from the outside of the vehicle.

To open the sliding side doors from the inside, turn the lock **4** (position **A**) using the key.

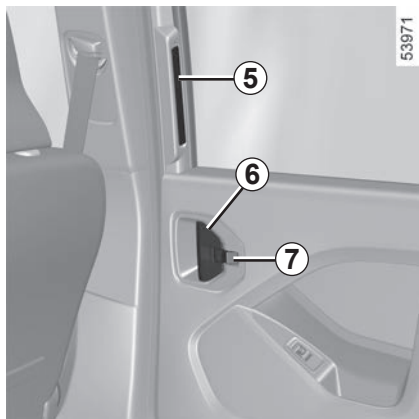


### Recommendations concerning the sliding side door

The following precautions must be taken when opening and closing the doors or any other opening element:

- Check that nobody, no animal or object is at risk of being harmed when you perform this manoeuvre.
- Never use anything but the handles on the inside and outside of the door to operate it.
- Take care when both opening and closing the door.
- Caution: when the vehicle is parked on a slope, open the door with care until it is fully open and latches into its locking position;
- Before moving off, always ensure that the sliding door is properly closed.
- Do not use the lower support as a step.

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE DOORS (3/6)

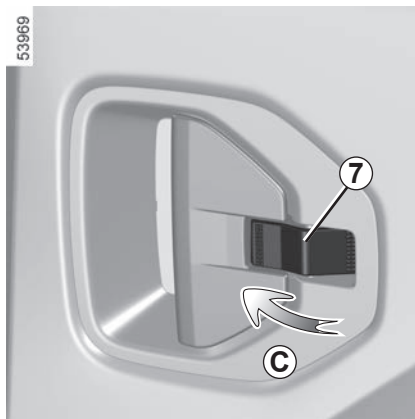


### Opening from the inside

With the door unlocked, pull the handle **6** or, depending on the vehicle, activate the control **8**, then slide the door towards the rear of the vehicle until it locks into the open position.

### Closing from the inside

Push handle **5** towards the front of the vehicle until the door is completely closed.

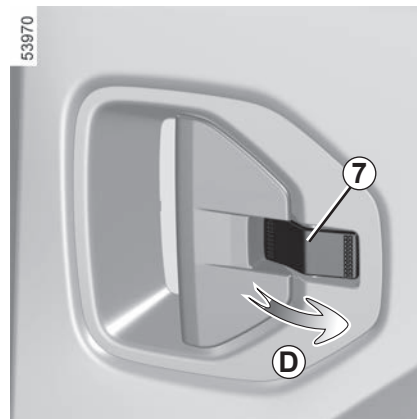


### Manual locking

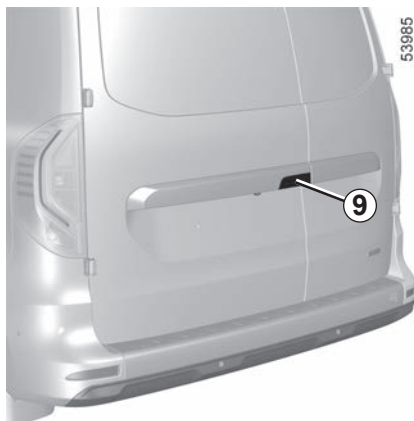
With the **7** button in the unlocked position, turn it towards the front of the vehicle (movement **C**).

### Manual unlocking

With the button **7** in the locked position, turn it towards the rear of the vehicle (movement **D**).



## OPENING AND CLOSING THE DOORS (4/6)

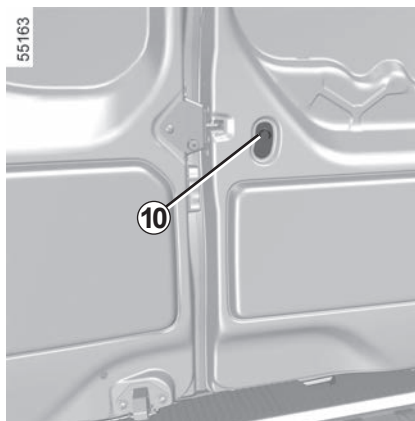


### Rear hinged doors

#### Opening the large door from the outside

Unlock the door and pull handle **9**. To unlock the doors ➡ 1.4 ➡ 1.11.

Before opening the rear hinged doors, ensure that there is enough space around to allow the doors to be opened.



#### Opening the large door from the inside

Depending on the vehicle, activate control **10**.



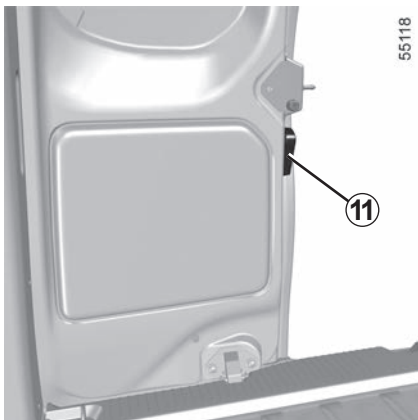
Do not leave the hinged rear doors open in case of strong winds.

**Risk of injury.**



For your safety, check that all the vehicle's doors are properly closed before starting the engine.

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE DOORS (5/6)



### Opening the small door

Move the lever **11** to open the small door.



If the vehicle is parked on the hard shoulder and a luggage compartment door is open, the rear lights may be obscured.

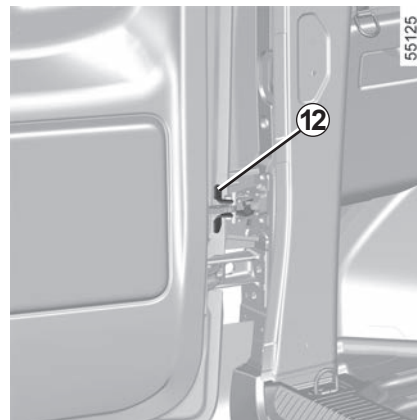
You should make other road-users aware of your vehicle by using a warning triangle or other equipment specified by the road traffic regulations of the country concerned.



### Driving with the small door open

While the small door is open, close the large door.

After use, open the large door using handle **9** and close the small door before closing the large door.



### Opening the doors to the maximum position

For each door, press lever **12** to release the door check strap. Open the door as far as possible.

### Closing manually from the outside

First close the small door and then close the large door.

Move the doors until the door check strap is fully engaged on the door striker plate. Make sure that the door check strap is properly engaged before closing the hinged doors.

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE DOORS (6/6)



### Tailgate

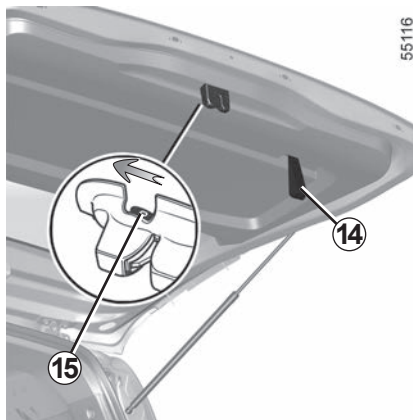
#### Opening

Unlock the door, press button **13** and lift the tailgate. To unlock the doors, ➔ 1.4 ➔ 1.11.

#### Closing

Lower the tailgate using the closure strap **14**.

When the tailgate reaches shoulder height, gently push it shut.



#### Opening manually from the inside

If it is not possible to unlock the tailgate, it can be unlocked manually from the inside.

Insert a pencil or similar object into cavity **15**, slide the assembly as shown in the diagram and push the tailgate to open it.

Before opening the tailgate, ensure that there is sufficient space around to allow the tailgate to open.



For your safety, check that all the vehicle's doors are properly closed before starting the engine.



#### Driver's responsibility when parking or stopping the vehicle

Never leave an animal, child or adult who is not self-sufficient alone on your vehicle, even for a short time.

They may pose a risk to themselves or to others by starting the engine, activating equipment such as the electric windows or by locking the doors.

Also, in hot and/or sunny weather, please remember that the temperature inside the passenger compartment increases very quickly.

**RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY.**

## LOCKING, UNLOCKING THE DOORS (1/3)

**If the remote control or, depending on the vehicle, the card does not work**

**In some cases**, the radio frequency remote control or the card may not work:

- card or radio frequency remote control battery worn or run flat, vehicle battery flat etc;
- use of appliances operating on the same frequency as the card (mobile phone, etc.);
- vehicle located in a high electromagnetic radiation zone.

It is then possible:

- to use the radio frequency remote control or the emergency key integrated in the card (depending on the vehicle) to unlock the driver's door;
- to use the interior door locking/unlocking control (refer to the following pages).

40303



### The card's built-in key

The **2** integrated key can be used to lock or unlock the driver's door when the card is not working.

### Access with key 2

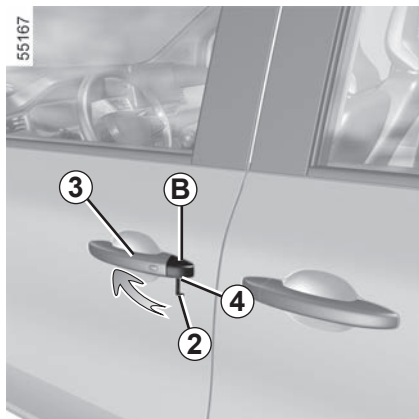
Slide the rear casing **1** downwards while pressing on zone **A**.

45673





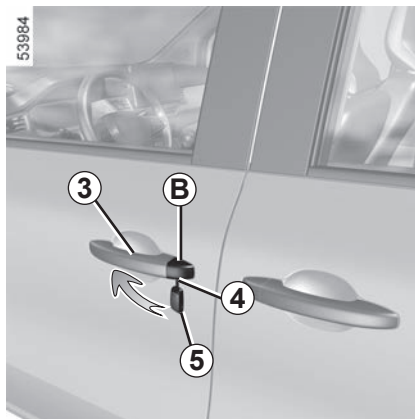
## LOCKING, UNLOCKING THE DOORS (2/3)



### Using the key integrated in the card

- Pull handle **3**;
- press the cover **B** on the driver's door down;
- insert the end of the key **2** in the notch **4** at the bottom of the cover **B**;
- rotate it upwards to remove the cover **B**;
- insert the key **2** into the lock of the driver's door, lock or unlock.

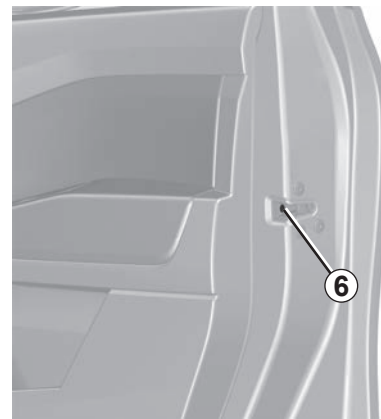
Once you are inside the vehicle, put the key back in its casing in the card.



### Vehicles with key/remote control

#### Using the key

- Pull handle **3**;
- press the cover **B** on the driver's door down;
- insert the end of the key **5** in the notch **4** at the bottom of the cover **B**;
- rotate it upwards to remove the cover **B**;
- insert the key **5** into the lock of the driver's door, lock or unlock.



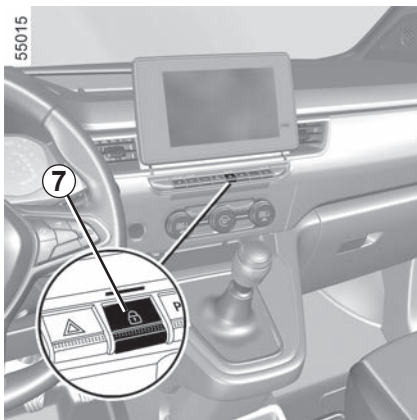
### Manually locking the front passenger door

Turn screw **6** with the door open (using the end of the key) and close the door.

This means that the doors are then locked from the outside.

The doors may then only be opened from the inside or by using the key in the driver's door.

## LOCKING, UNLOCKING THE DOORS (3/3)



### Interior locking/unlocking door control

Switch **7** controls the doors, the boot and the fuel filler flap simultaneously.

If a door or the tailgate is open or not closed properly, the doors and tailgate lock/unlock quickly.

If transporting an object with the tailgate open, you can still lock the doors: with the engine stopped, press and hold switch **7** to lock the other doors.

### Door and tailgate status indicator

**When the ignition is on**, the **7** switch warning light indicates the locking status of the opening elements:

- indicator light on, the doors and tailgate are locked;
- indicator light off, the doors and tailgate are unlocked.

When you lock the doors, the indicator light remains lit and then goes out.

### Locking the opening elements without the card or the key

For example, in the event of a discharged battery or the card or key temporarily not working etc.

**With the engine switched off and a door or tailgate open**, press and hold the **7** switch for more than five seconds.

When the door is closed, all the doors and the tailgate will be locked.

**Note:** unlocking the vehicle from the outside is only possible with the card in the vehicle's access zone or using the key.



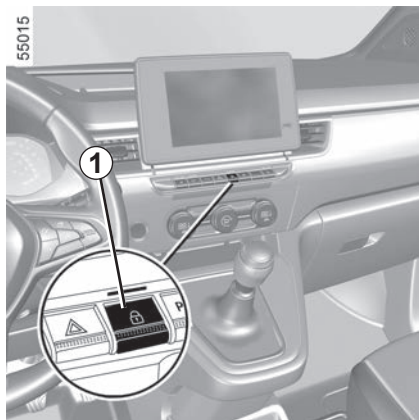
#### Driver's responsibility

If you decide to keep the doors locked when you are driving, remember that it may be more difficult for those assisting you to gain access to the passenger compartment in the event of an emergency.



Never leave your vehicle with the key or card inside.

# AUTOMATIC LOCKING WHEN DRIVING



## Operating principle

After the vehicle is started, the system automatically locks the doors when you are driving at approximately 6 mph (10 km/h) and over.

The door can be unlocked:

- by pressing the central door unlocking switch **1**;
- at a standstill, by opening a front door from inside the vehicle.

**NB:** if a door is opened or closed, it will automatically lock again when the vehicle reaches a speed of 6 mph (10 km/h).

## Activating/deactivating the function

**To activate:** with the vehicle stationary and the engine running, press the **1** switch until a beep sounds.

**To deactivate:** with the vehicle stationary and the engine running, press the switch **1** until you hear two beeps.

The function can also be activated and deactivated via the multimedia screen (depending on the vehicle). ➡ 1.119.

## Operating faults

If you experience an operating fault (no central locking, the indicator light **1** does not light up when trying to lock the doors and luggage compartment etc.), make sure that central locking has not been deactivated by mistake and check that the doors and luggage compartment are properly closed. If they are properly closed, contact an approved dealer.

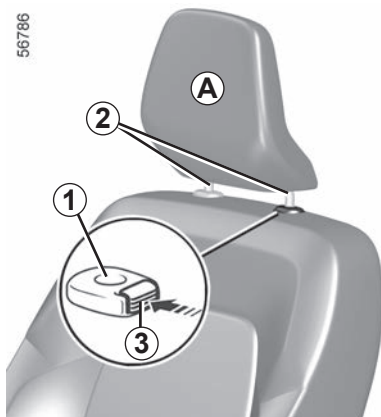


### Driver's responsibility

If you decide to keep the doors locked when you are driving, remember that it may be more difficult for those assisting you to gain access to the passenger compartment in the event of an emergency.

# FRONT HEADRESTS

56786



## To raise the headrest

Pull the headrest upwards to the desired height. Check that it is correctly locked.

## To lower the headrest

Press button **3** and guide the headrest down to the desired height. Check that the bonnet is correctly locked.

## To raise the headrest

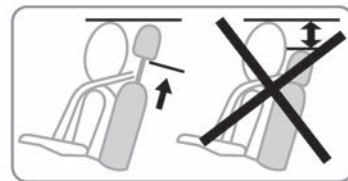
Raise it to its highest position (tilt the seatback backwards if necessary). Press button **3** and lift the headrest to release it.

## To refit the headrest

Check that the headrest rods are clean **2**.

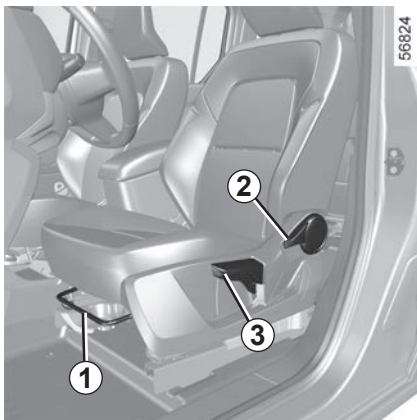
Insert the headrest rods into the holes **1** (tilt the seatback backwards if necessary). Lower the headrest until it locks and press button **3** to adjust to the desired height. Check that each rod **2** on the seatback is securely locked.

26342



The headrest is important for safety. Ensure that it is in place and in the correct position: the top of the headrest should be as close as possible to the top of the head and there must be a minimal distance between the head and the headrest **A**.

## FRONT SEATS (1/7)



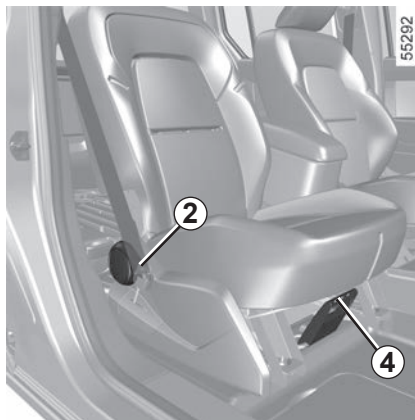
### To move forwards or backwards

Depending on the seat, lift the bar **1** or handle **4** to release the seat. Release the handle at the desired position and make sure that it is locked.

### Adjusting the height of the driver's seat

Move lever **3** as many times as necessary:

- upwards to raise the seat,
- downwards to lower the seat.



### To tilt the seatback

Depending on the seat, raise the lever **2** and tilt the seatback until it reaches the position required.



After making adjustments, make sure that the seatbacks are correctly locked in place.



To avoid all risk of injury, ensure that nobody is in the proximity of the moving parts. When moving the seat, make sure that nothing interferes with the moving parts and their locking.

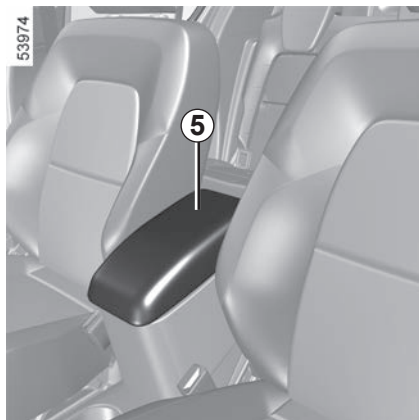


**For safety reasons, carry out any adjustments when the vehicle is not being driven.**

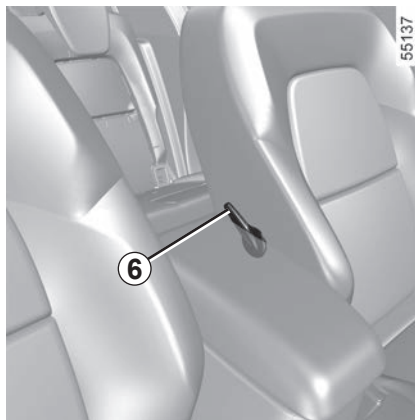
We would advise you not to recline the seatbacks too far to ensure that the effectiveness of the seat belts is not reduced.

Nothing should be placed on the floor (area in front of driver) as such objects may slide under the pedal during braking manoeuvres, thus obstructing its use.

## FRONT SEATS (2/7)

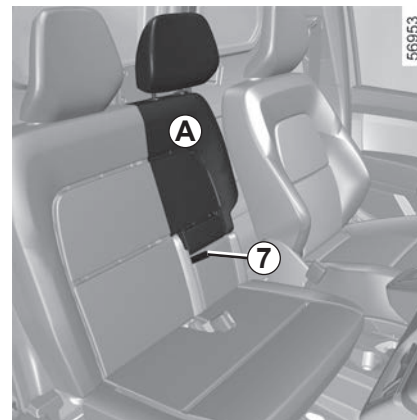


**Central armrest 5**  
(depending on the vehicle)



### **To adjust the seat's lumbar position**

Lower handle **6** to increase the support and lift it to decrease it.



### **Version with front bench seat for two**

Depending on the vehicle, the central seatbacks may be folded down.

#### **To fold down the seatback**

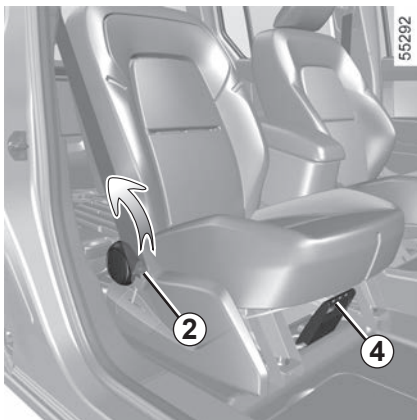
Pull the **7** tab to unlock the seatback and lower the seatback **A**.

When lowering, tilt the headrest so that it is positioned under the centre console.

#### **To raise the seatback**

Lift the seat back and click it into place. Check that the bonnet is correctly locked.

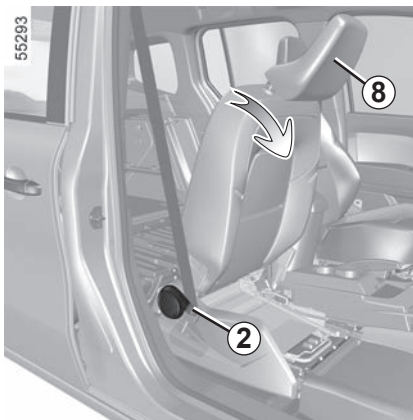
## FRONT SEATS (3/7)



### Estate version flat position

Depending on the vehicle, the seatback on the passenger side may be folded down onto the seat base to create a flat position.

- Deactivate the front passenger airbag ➔ 1.90;
- hold handle **4** and move the seat as far back as possible;
- hold the top of the seatback to lower it;



- pull the lever **2** and pull the seatback down and forwards. While lowering, tilt headrest **8** to position it under the dashboard. The seat base positions itself on the floor;
- make sure that there is nothing which will prevent the seat from moving;
- the seat locks automatically. Check that the bonnet is correctly locked.



Be sure to hold the seatback when placing it in the flat position.

**Risk of injury.**

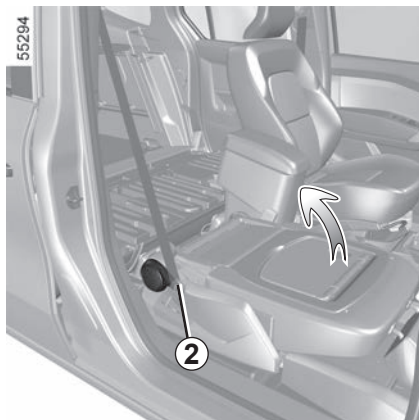


The label **B** on the seat base reminds you of these instructions.

Maximum weight on the seat in the flat position: 80 kg, with the weight evenly distributed.

The label **B** on the seat base reminds you of these instructions.

## FRONT SEATS (4/7)



### Repositioning the seat

Make sure that nothing prevents the seat from moving.

- Pull lever **2** and lift the seatback, ensuring it is correctly locked;
- reposition the seat base, placing your hand on the front of the seat base;
- refit the headrest.

When the rear bench seat is folded down, move the front seats carefully.

Remember to reactivate the front passenger airbag before a passenger occupies the seat ➔ 1.90.



Put your hand on the front of the seat base when repositioning it.

**Risk of trapping.**

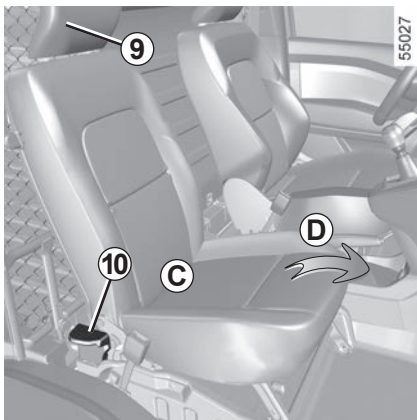


When the front seatback is in the flat position, you must deactivate the front passenger airbag.

Risk of serious injury if the airbag is deployed while objects are resting on the seatback in flat position.



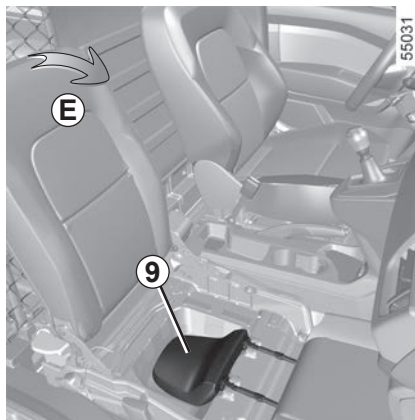
## FRONT SEATS (5/7)



### Van version flat position

The seatback on the passenger side may be folded down onto the seat base to create a flat position.

- Deactivate the front passenger airbag ➔ 1.90;
- check that the floor is clear of any objects;
- unlock the seat base by lifting the handle **10** and move the seat forwards, onto the floor (movement **D**) by taking it by the rear section **C**;



- press on the seat base to ensure that it is correctly positioned on the floor. There is a risk the seatback being scratched if it is incorrectly positioned;
- remove the headrest **9** from the seat;
- store the headrest **9** in its housing under the seat base;
- unlock the seatback by lifting handle **10** again and position it horizontally (movement **E**);



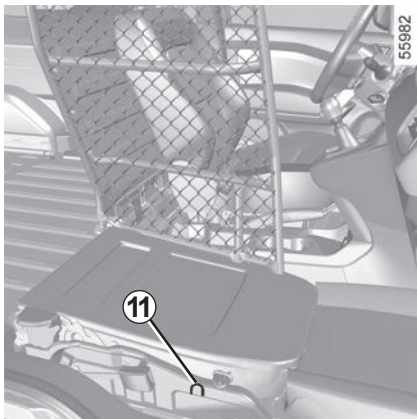
The label **F** on the side of the seat base reminds you of these instructions.



Do not use the headrest housing **9** to store any other objects.

**Risk of damage to the seat wiring.**

## FRONT SEATS (6/7)



The **11** rings located on each side of the front passenger seat can be used to secure the load placed on the seat in the flat-floor position.



For your safety, fasten down any objects transported with the seat in flat-floor position.



Maximum weight on the seat in the flat position: 80 kg, with the weight evenly distributed.

Maximum height limit for objects on the seat in flat-floor position: 50 cm.

The label **G** on the side of the seat base reminds you of these instructions.

55964

To put the seat back in the comfort position, proceed in the reverse order. Check that the headrest is positioned correctly.

Remember to reactivate the front passenger airbag before a passenger occupies the seat ➔ 1.90.

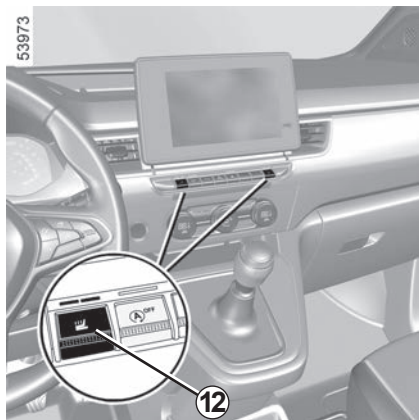


When the front seatback is in the flat position, you must deactivate the front passenger airbag.

Risk of serious injury if the airbag is deployed while objects are resting on the seatback in flat position.

The label **F** on the side of the seat base reminds you of these instructions.

## FRONT SEATS (7/7)



### Heated seats

With the ignition on:

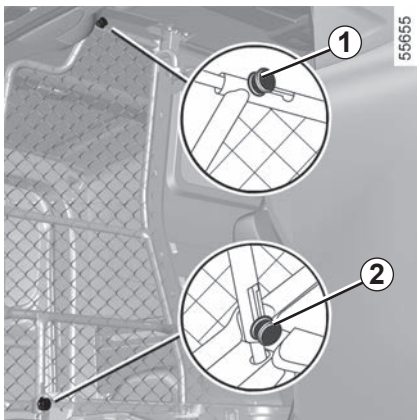
- pressing the switch **12** on the required seat for the first time activates the heating system on high. Both integrated switch warning lights come on;
- pressing the switch for the second time changes the heating to low. One integrated warning light comes on;
- pressing for the third time turns the heating off.

### Operating faults

When an operating fault is detected, the warning light of the **12** switch for the seat concerned switches-off after approximately five seconds.

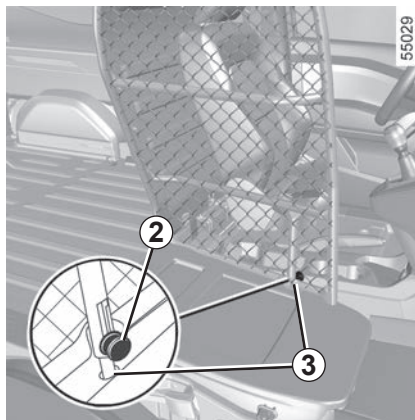
Consult an approved dealer.

## SWIVELLING PARTITION (1/2)



### To rotate the partition

- Deactivate the front passenger airbag ➔ 1.90;
- place the seat in the flat position ➔ 1.34;
- unlock the swivelling section of the partition by lifting catches **1** and **2**;
- before turning the mobile section, ensure that the **1** and **2** catches are in the unlocked position;



- pivot the moving section 90 degrees, lock it at point **3** and lower the catch **2**. Ensure that the catch is locked correctly **2**.

When handling, ensure that the seat belt does not become damaged.



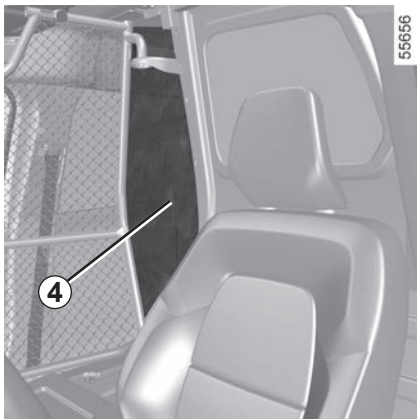
The swivelling section must always be locked when the vehicle is driven.

**Risk of injury.**



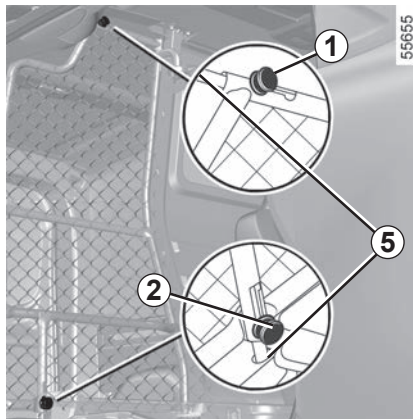
For your safety, fasten down any objects transported with the seat in flat-floor position.

## SWIVELLING PARTITION (2/2)



When using the pivoted partition, the protective net **4** must not be removed or disassembled, even partially.

**Risk of injury due to the projection of objects from the rear load area during braking.**



Before returning the partition to its initial position, set catches **1** and **2** to the unlocked position.

Reset the swivelling section to the initial position, lock the **2** catch and then, the **1** catch. Make sure that catches **1** and **2** are locked correctly.

**Note:** before returning the swivelling section to its initial position, check that the locking points **5** are clean.

## SEAT BELTS (1/7)

Always wear your seat belt when travelling in your vehicle. You must also comply with the legislation of the particular country you are in.

**Before starting, first adjust your driving position, then ask all occupants to adjust their seat belts to ensure optimum protection.**

### Adjusting your driving position

- **Sit well back in your seat** (having first removed your coat or jacket). This is essential to ensure your back is positioned correctly;
- **adjust the distance between the seat and the pedals.** Your seat should be as far back as possible while still allowing you to fully depress the pedals. The seatback should be adjusted so that your arms are slightly bent when you hold the steering wheel;
- **adjust the position of your headrest.** For maximum safety, your head must be as close as possible to the headrest;
- **adjust the height of the seat.** This adjustment allows you to select the seat position which offers you the best possible view;
- **adjust the position of the steering wheel.**

Make sure that the rear bench seat is locked in position correctly so that the rear seat belts will operate correctly. ➡ 3.34.



Incorrectly adjusted or twisted seat belts may cause injuries in the event of an accident.

Use one seat belt per person, whether child or adult.

Even pregnant women should wear a seat belt. In this case, ensure that the lap belt is not exerting too much pressure on the abdomen, but do not allow any slack.

## SEAT BELTS (2/7)



### Adjusting the seat belts

Sit with your back firmly against the seatback.

Shoulder strap **1** should be as close as possible to the base of the neck but not on it.

Lap belt **2** should be worn flat over the thighs and against the pelvis.

The belt should be worn so that it is as close as possible to your body, i.e.: avoid wearing heavy clothing or keeping bulky objects under the belts, etc.

### Locking

Unwind the belt **slowly and smoothly** and ensure that buckle **3** locks into catch **5** (check that it is locked by pulling on buckle **3**).

If the belt jams, allow it to return slightly before attempting to unwind it again.

If your seat belt is completely jammed, pull slowly, but firmly, so that just over 3 cm unwinds. Allow it to return slightly before attempting to unwind it again.

If there is still a problem, contact an approved dealer.

### Unlocking

Press button **4** and the seat belt will be rewound by the inertia reel. Guide the belt.




### Driver's seat belt reminder and, depending on the vehicle, front passengers' seat belt reminder

This appears on the central display **A** when the ignition is switched on and if the driver's and/or front passenger's seat belt(s) (if the passenger seat is occupied) is not fastened.



Depending on the vehicle, if the seat is occupied and one of these seat belts is not fastened or becomes unfastened while the vehicle is moving at a speed over approximately 12 mph (20 km/h),

the  warning light flashes and a beep sounds for approximately 120 seconds.

**Note:** an object placed on the passenger seat may activate the warning light in some cases, depending on the vehicle.

## SEAT BELTS (3/7)

### Rear seat belt reminder


(depending on the vehicle)

The **6** graphic is displayed on the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on. This informs the driver of the fastening status of each of the rear seat belts every time:

- the ignition is switched on;
- opening a door;
- fastening or unfastening of a rear seat belt.

#### Understanding the graphic 6:

- indicator green: seatbelt fastened;
- indicator red: seatbelt unfastened;
- indicator grey: seat not occupied.

Depending on the vehicle, the  warning light on the central display also appears when the ignition is switched on, if a rear seat is occupied and the seat belt is not fastened




When the vehicle speed is less than approximately 12 mph (20 km/h), the



warning light on the central display appears if a rear seat is occupied and the seat belt is not fastened. It is accompanied by the **6** symbol which appears for approximately 60 seconds each time one of the rear seat belts is fastened or unfastened.

When the vehicle speed exceeds 12 mph (20 km/h), if one of the rear seat belts is or becomes unfastened during the journey:

- the  warning light flashes on the central display;
- and
- a beep sounds for around 120 seconds;
- and
- the **6** symbol is displayed for approximately 180 seconds and the symbol for the seat concerned changes to red.

Always make sure that the rear passengers are properly fastened in and that the number of seat belts indicated corresponds to the number of rear seats occupied.

**Note:** in some cases, the warnings may be triggered if an object is placed on one of the rear seats.



## SEAT BELTS (4/7)

### Rear seat belt reminder

(continued)

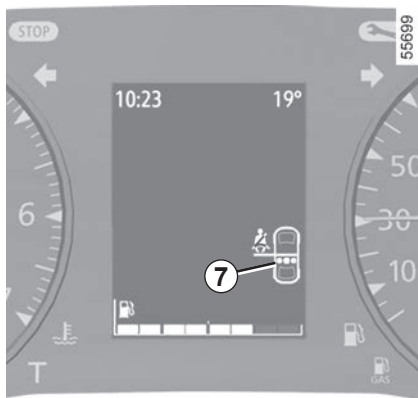
The **7** graphic is displayed on the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on. This informs the driver of the fastening status of each of the rear seat belts every time:

- the ignition is switched on;
- opening a door;
- fastening or unfastening of a rear seat belt.


#### Understanding the graphic 7:

- white symbol: seatbelt fastened;
- black symbol: seatbelt unfastened;

When the vehicle speed is below approximately 12 mph (20 km/h), the graphic **7** appears during approximately 60 seconds every time one of the rear seat belts is fastened or unfastened.



When the vehicle speed reaches or exceeds 12 mph (20 km/h), if one of the rear seat belts is unfastened during the journey:

- the  warning light flashes on the central display;
- and
- a beep sounds for around 30 seconds;
- and
- the **7** symbol is displayed for at least 60 seconds and the symbol for the seat concerned changes to black.

Always make sure that the rear passengers are properly fastened in and that the number of seat belts indicated corresponds to the number of rear seats occupied.

## SEAT BELTS (5/7)



### Adjusting the height of the front seat belts

Use button **8** to adjust the seat belt height so that the shoulder strap is worn as shown previously. Press button **8** and raise or lower the seat belt. Make sure that the seat belt is locked in position correctly after you have adjusted it.



### “Open Sesame” version front passenger seat belt

Slowly unwind belt **9**.

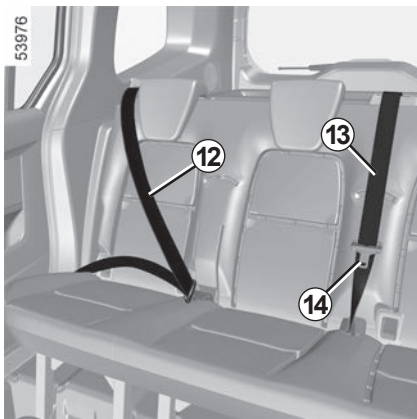
Fasten the sliding buckle **10** into the catch **11**.



### Version with front bench seat for two

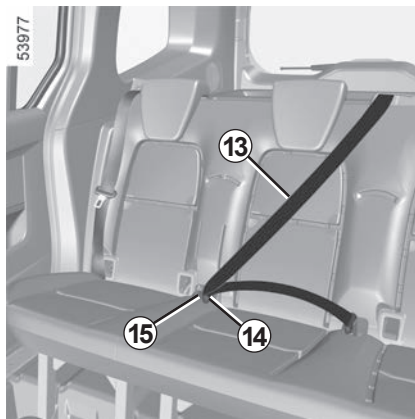
In normal use conditions, fasten the centre seat belt when no one is seated there.

## SEAT BELTS (6/7)



### Rear side seat belts 12

The belts are locked, unlocked and adjusted in the same way as the front belts.



### Rear centre seat belt

Slowly unwind belt 13.

Fasten the tongue 14 in the red buckle 15.



Check that the rear seat belts are positioned and operating correctly each time the rear bench seat is moved.

## SEAT BELTS (7/7)

The following information applies to the vehicle's front and rear seat belts.



- No modification may be made to the component parts of the originally fitted restraint system: seat belts, seats and their mountings. For special operations (e.g. fitting child seats), contact an authorised dealer.
- Do not use devices which allow any slack in the belts (e.g. clothes pegs, clips, etc.): a seat belt which is worn too loosely may cause injury in the event of an accident.
- Never wear the shoulder strap under your arm or behind your back.
- Never use the same belt for more than one person and never hold a baby or child on your lap with your seat belt around them.
- The belt should never be twisted.
- Following an accident, have the seat belts checked and replaced if necessary. Always replace your seat belts as soon as they show any signs of wear.
- When the rear bench seat is being put back, make sure that the seat belts and buckles are correctly positioned so that they can be used properly.
- Make sure that the buckle is inserted into the appropriate catch.
- Ensure that no objects are placed in the area around the seat belt catch as they could prevent it from being properly secured.
- Make sure the seat belt catch is properly positioned (it should not be hidden away, crushed or flattened by people or objects).

## METHODS OF RESTRAINT IN ADDITION TO THE FRONT SEAT BELTS (1/6)

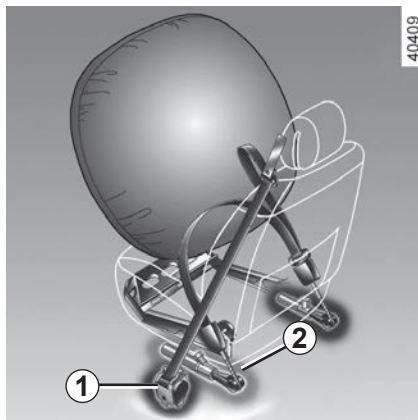
Depending on the vehicle, they will consist of:

- **seat belt inertia reel pretensioners;**
- **central seat belt pretensioners;**
- **chest-level load limiters;**
- **airbags driver and passenger front.**

These systems are designed to act independently or together when the vehicle is subjected to a frontal impact.

Depending on the severity of the impact, the system can trigger:

- seat belt locking;
- the seat belt inertia reel pretensioner (which engages to correct seat belt slack);
- lap seat belt pretensioners to hold the occupant in their seat;
- the front airbag.



### Pretensioners

The pretensioners hold the seat belt against the body, holding the occupant more securely against the seat, thus increasing the seat belt's efficiency.

In the event of a severe frontal impact and if the ignition is switched on, the system may engage the following depending on the force of the impact:

- the seat belt inertia reel pretensioner **1** which instantly retracts the seat belt;
- the lap seat belt inertia reel pretensioner **2** on the front seats.



– Have the entire restraint system checked following an accident.

– No operation whatsoever is permitted on any part of the system (pretensioners, airbags, computers, wiring) and the system components must not be reused on any other vehicle, even if identical.

– Only qualified personnel from our Network may work on the airbags; otherwise the system may trigger accidentally and cause injury.

– The electric trigger system may only be tested by a specially trained technician using special equipment.

– When the vehicle is scrapped, contact an approved dealer for disposal of the pretensioner and airbags gas generators.

## METHODS OF RESTRAINT IN ADDITION TO THE FRONT SEAT BELTS (2/6)

### Load limiter


Above a certain severity of impact, this mechanism is used to limit the force of the belt against the body so that it is at an acceptable level.

### driver and passenger front Airbags

Fitted to the driver and passenger sides.

A symbol on the lower section of the windscreen indicates if this equipment is present (depending on the vehicle).

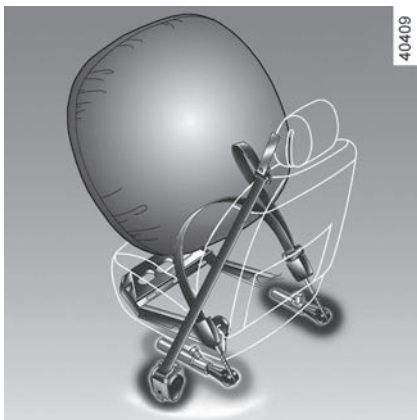
Each airbag system consists of:

- an airbag and gas generator fitted on the steering wheel for the driver and in the dashboard for the passenger;
- an electronic unit for system monitoring which controls the gas generator electrical trigger system;
- remote sensors;
- a single warning light  on the instrument panel.



The airbag system uses pyrotechnic principles. This explains why, when the airbag inflates, it will generate heat, produce smoke (this does not mean that a fire is about to start) and make a banging noise. In a situation where an airbag is required, it will inflate immediately and this may cause some minor, superficial grazing to the skin or other problems.

## METHODS OF RESTRAINT IN ADDITION TO THE FRONT SEAT BELTS (3/6)



### Operation

This system is only operational when the ignition is switched on.

In a severe frontal impact, the airbags inflate rapidly, cushioning the impact of the driver's head and chest against the steering wheel and of the front passenger against the dashboard. The airbags then deflate immediately so that the passengers are not in any way hindered from leaving the vehicle.

### Operating faults



This warning light comes on when the engine is started and then goes out after approximately three seconds.

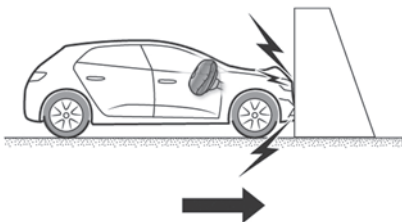
If it does not come on when the ignition is switched on or if it stays on, there is a fault in the system.

Contact your approved Dealer as soon as possible.

Your protection will be reduced until this fault is rectified.

## METHODS OF RESTRAINT IN ADDITION TO THE FRONT SEAT BELTS (4/6)

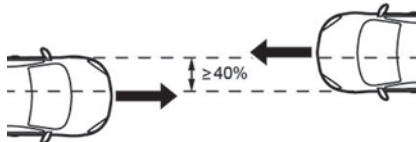
44446



**The following conditions will trigger the pretensioners or airbags.**

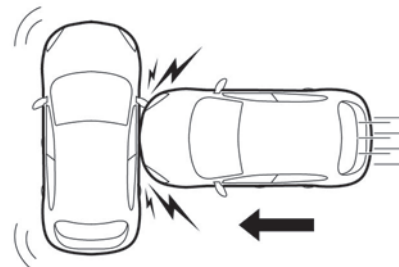
**In a frontal impact** against a rigid (non-deformable) surface at an impact speed equal to or greater than **16 mph (25 km/h)**.

44448



**In a frontal impact** with another vehicle of an equivalent or higher category, with an impact area equal to or greater than 40%, where the speed of both vehicles is equal to or greater than **25 mph (40 km/h)**.

44452



**In a side impact** with another vehicle of an equivalent or higher category, at an impact speed equal to or greater than **31 mph (50 km/h)**.



## METHODS OF RESTRAINT IN ADDITION TO THE FRONT SEAT BELTS (5/6)



44449

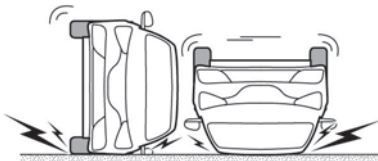


**In the following examples, the pretensioners or the airbags could operate:**

- impact under vehicle such as pavement;
- potholes;
- drop or hard landing;
- stones;
- ...

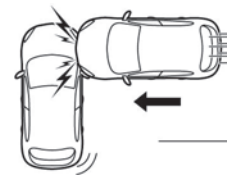


44450

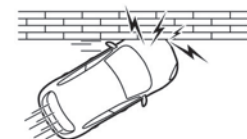


**In the following examples, there is a risk that pretensioners or airbags may not be triggered:**

- rear impact, however severe;
- the vehicle overturning;



44451



- side impact, affecting the front of the vehicle;
- frontal impact, under the tail of a lorry;
- frontal impact against an obstacle with a sharp angle;
- ...

## METHODS OF RESTRAINT IN ADDITION TO THE FRONT SEAT BELTS (6/6)

All of the warnings below are given so that the airbag is not obstructed in any way when it is inflated and also to prevent the risk of serious injuries caused by items which may be dislodged when it inflates.



### Warnings concerning the driver's airbag

- Do not modify the steering wheel or the steering wheel boss.
- Do not cover the steering wheel boss under any circumstances.
- Do not attach any objects (badge, logo, clock, telephone holder, etc.) to the steering wheel boss.
- The steering wheel must not be removed (except by qualified personnel from our Network).
- Do not sit too close to the steering wheel when driving: sit with your arms slightly bent (see “Adjusting your driving position” ➡ 1.43). This will allow sufficient space for the airbag to deploy correctly and be fully effective.

### Warnings concerning the passenger airbag

- Do not attach or glue any objects (badge, logo, clock, telephone holder, etc.) to the dashboard on or near the **airbag**.
- Do not place anything between the dashboard and the passenger (pet, umbrella, walking stick, parcels, etc.).
- The passenger must not put his or her feet on the dashboard or seat as there is a risk that serious injuries may occur. In general, parts of the body should be kept away from the dashboard (knees, hands, head, etc.).
- The devices in addition to the front passenger seat belt should be reactivated as soon as a child seat is removed, to ensure the protection of the passenger in the event of an impact.

**A REAR-FACING CHILD SEAT MUST NOT BE FITTED TO THE FRONT PASSENGER SEAT UNLESS THE RESTRAINT SYSTEMS IN ADDITION TO THE FRONT PASSENGER SEATBELT ARE DEACTIVATED ➡ 1.90.**

## METHODS OF RESTRAINT IN ADDITION TO THE REAR SEAT BELTS

Depending on the vehicle, they will consist of:

- **side seat belt inertia reel pretensioners;**
- **chest force limiters.**

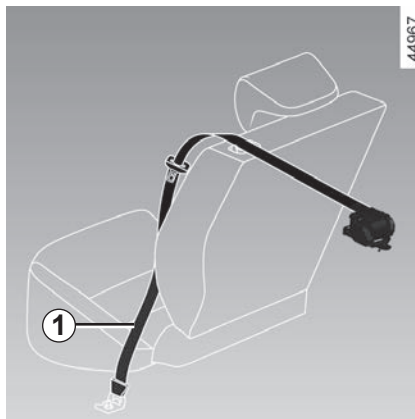
These systems are designed to act independently or together when the vehicle is subjected to a frontal impact.

Depending on the severity of the impact, the system can trigger:

- seat belt locking;
- the seat belt inertia reel pretensioner (which engages to correct seat belt slack).

### Force limiter

Above a certain severity of impact, this mechanism is used to limit the force of the belt against the body so that it is at an acceptable level.



### Side seat belt pretensioners

The pretensioners hold the seat belt against the body, holding the occupant more securely against the seat, thus increasing the seat belt's efficiency.

With the ignition on, following a significant frontal impact and depending on the severity of the impact, the system may trigger the seat belt inertia reel pretensioner **1**, which instantly retracts the seat belt.



– Have the entire restraint system checked following an accident.

– No operation whatsoever is permitted on any part of the system (pretensioners, airbags, computers, wiring) and the system components must not be reused on any other vehicle, even if identical.

- Only qualified personnel from our Network may work on the airbags; otherwise the system may trigger accidentally and cause injury.
- The electric trigger system may only be tested by a specially trained technician using special equipment.
- When the vehicle is scrapped, contact an approved dealer for disposal of the pretensioner and airbags gas generators.

# SIDE PROTECTION DEVICES

## Side Airbag

This airbag may be fitted to each of the front seats and is activated at the sides of the seats (door side) to protect the occupants in the event of a severe side impact.

## Curtain Airbag

This is an airbag fitted (depending on the vehicle) along the upper sides of the vehicle – they inflate along the front and rear door side windows to protect the passengers in the event of a severe side impact.



### Warning relating to the side airbag

- **Fitting seat covers:** seats equipped with an airbag require covers specifically designed for your vehicle. Contact an approved dealer to find out if these covers are available. The use of any covers other than those designed for your vehicle (including those designed for another vehicle) may affect the operation of the airbag and reduce your protection.
- Do not place any accessories, objects or even pets between the seatback, the door and the internal fittings. Do not cover the seatback with any items such as clothes or accessories. This may prevent the air bag from operating correctly or cause injury when the airbag is deployed.
- No work or modification whatsoever may be carried out on the seat or internal fittings, except by qualified personnel from an approved Dealer.
- This airbag operates through slits in the front seatbacks (door side): never insert any objects in these slits.

## ADDITIONAL METHODS OF RESTRAINT

All of the warnings below are given so that the airbag is not obstructed in any way when it is inflated and also to prevent the risk of serious injuries caused by items which may be dislodged when it inflates.



The airbag is designed to complement the action of the seat belt. Both the airbag and the seat belt are integral parts of the same protection system. It is therefore essential to wear seat belts at all times. If seat belts are not worn, the occupants are exposed to the risk of serious injury in the event of an accident. It may also increase the risk of minor superficial injuries occurring when the airbag is deployed, although such minor injuries are always possible with airbags.

If the vehicle should overturn or in the event of a rear impact, however severe, the pretensioners and airbags are not always triggered. Impacts to the underside of the vehicle, e.g. from pavements, potholes or stones, can all trigger these systems.

- No work or modification **whatsoever** may be carried out on any part of the airbag system (airbags, pretensioners, computer, wiring harness, etc.), except by qualified Network personnel.
- To ensure that the system is in good working order and to avoid accidental triggering of the system which may cause injury, only qualified Network personnel may work on the airbag system.
- As a safety precaution, have the airbag system checked if your vehicle has been involved in an accident, or is stolen or broken into.
- When selling or lending the vehicle, inform the user of these points and hand over this handbook with the vehicle.
- When scrapping your vehicle, contact your approved Dealer for disposal of the gas generator(s).

## CHILD SAFETY: General information (1/2)

### Carrying children

Please ensure that you comply with the legislation of your country.

Children, and adults, must be correctly seated and strapped in for all journeys. The children being carried in your vehicle are your responsibility.

A child is not a miniature adult. Children are at risk of specific injuries as their muscles and bones have not yet finished growing. The seat belt alone would not provide suitable protection. Use an approved child seat and ensure you use it correctly.



To prevent the sliding side doors from being opened, use the "Child lock" feature ➔ 1.23.



A collision at 30 mph (50 km/h) is the same as falling a distance of 10 metres. Transporting a child without a restraint is the equivalent of allowing him or her to play on a fourth-floor balcony without railings.

Never travel with a child held in your arms. In the event of an accident, you will not be able to keep hold of the child, even if you yourself are wearing a seat belt.

If your vehicle has been involved in a road accident, replace the child seat and have the seat belts and ISOFIX anchorage points checked.



### **Driver's responsibility when parking or stopping the vehicle**

Never leave an animal, child or adult who is not self-sufficient alone on your vehicle, even for a short time.

They may pose a risk to themselves or to others by starting the engine, activating equipment such as the electric windows or by locking the doors.

Also, in hot and/or sunny weather, please remember that the temperature inside the passenger compartment increases very quickly.

**RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY.**

## CHILD SAFETY: General information (2/2)

### Using a child seat

The level of protection offered by the child seat depends on its ability to restrain your child and on its installation. Incorrect installation compromises the protection it offers the child in the event of harsh braking or an impact.

Before purchasing a child seat, check that it complies with the regulations for the country you are in and that it can be fitted in your vehicle. Consult an approved dealer to find out which seats are recommended for your vehicle.

Before fitting a child seat, read the manual and respect its instructions. If you experience any difficulties during installation, contact the manufacturer of the equipment. Keep the instructions with the seat.

Set a good example by always fastening your seat belt and teaching your child:

- to strap themselves in correctly;
- to always get in and out of the car at the kerb, away from busy traffic.

Do not use a second-hand child seat or one without an instruction manual.

Check that there are no objects in the vicinity of the child seat which could impede its operation.



Never leave a child unattended in the vehicle.

Check that your child is always strapped in and that the belt or safety harness used is correctly set and adjusted. Avoid wearing bulky clothing which could cause the belts to slacken.

Never let your child put their head or arms out of the window.

Check that the child is in the correct position for the entire journey, especially if asleep.

## CHILD SAFETY: choosing a child seat



31235

### Rear-facing child seats

A baby's head is, proportionally, heavier than that of an adult and its neck is very fragile. Transport the child in this position for as long as possible (until the age of 2 at the very least). It supports both the head and the neck.

Choose a bucket type seat for best side protection and change it as soon as the child's head is higher than the shell.



38824

### Forward-facing child seats

Up to 18 kg or 4 years, the child may travel on a forward-facing seat.

Choose your seat according to the child's size: their head and abdomen are the areas which must be most protected. A forward-facing child seat which is firmly attached to the vehicle will reduce the risk of impact to the head. Ensure your child travels in a forward-facing seat with a harness for as long as their size permits.

Choose a bucket type seat for optimum side protection.



31234

### Booster cushions

From 15 kg or 4 years, the child can travel using a booster seat, which will enable the seat belt to be adapted to suit his size and shape. The booster seat cushion must be fitted with guides to position the seat belt on the child's thighs rather than the stomach. It is recommended that you use a seat-back which can be adjusted in terms of height to position the seat belt in the centre of the shoulder. It must never rest on the neck or on the arm.

Choose a bucket type seat for optimum side protection.



## CHILD SAFETY: choosing a child seat mounting (1/3)

There are two ways of attaching child seats: via the seat belt or using the ISOFIX system.

### Attachment via the seat belt

The seat belt must be adjusted to ensure that it is effective in the event of harsh braking or an impact.

Ensure that the strap paths indicated by the child seat manufacturer are respected.

Always check that the seat belt is correctly fastened by pulling it up, then pulling it out fully whilst pressing on the child seat.

Check that the seat is correctly held by moving it from side to side and back to front: the seat should remain firmly fixed.

Check that the child seat has not been installed at an angle and that it is not resting against a window.



Do not use the child seat if it may unfasten the seat belt restraining it: the base of the seat must not rest on the buckle and/or catch of the seat belt.



The seat belt must never be twisted or the tension relieved. Never pass the shoulder strap under the arm or behind the back. Check that the seat belt has not been damaged by sharp edges. If the seat belt does not operate normally, it will not protect the child. Consult an approved dealer. Do not use this seat until the seat belt has been repaired.

## CHILD SAFETY: choosing a child seat mounting (2/3)

### Attachment using the ISOFIX system

Approved child seats ISOFIX are standardised in accordance with current regulations if any of the four cases below applies:

- ISOFIX universal 3-point forward-facing seat;
- ISOFIX semi-universal 2-point seat;
- specific;
- i-Size which has either:
  - a strap which attaches to the third ring of the seat concerned;
  - or a strut that rests on the vehicle floor, compatible with the approved seat i-Size, the role of which is to prevent the child seat from moving in the event of a collision.

In the latter three cases check that your child seat can be installed by consulting the list of compatible vehicles.



No modifications may be made to the component parts of the restraint system (seat belts, ISOFIX and seats and their mountings) originally fitted.

Attach the child seat with the ISOFIX locks, if these are provided. The ISOFIX system allows quick, easy, safe fitting.

The ISOFIX system consists of 2 rings and, in some cases, a third ring.



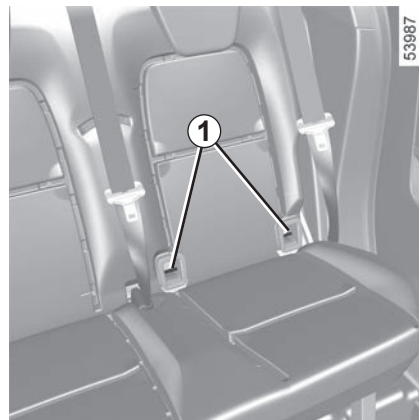
The ISOFIX anchorage points have been exclusively designed for child seats with the ISOFIX system. Never fit a different type of child seat, seat belt or other objects to these anchorage points.


Check that nothing is obstructing the anchorage points.

If your vehicle has been involved in a road accident, have the ISOFIX anchorage points checked and replace your child seat.

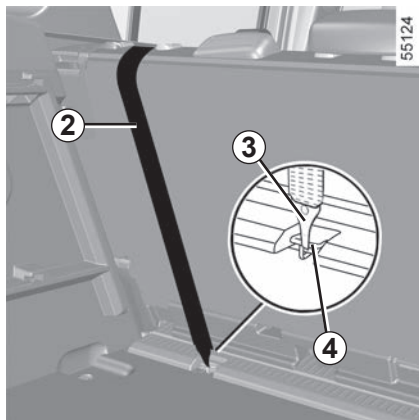


Before using an ISOFIX child seat that you purchased for another vehicle, check that its installation is authorised. Consult the list of vehicles which can be fitted with the seat from the equipment manufacturer.



The two rings **1** are located between the seatback and the seat base of the seat and are identified by a  symbol.

## CHILD SAFETY: choosing a child seat mounting (3/3)




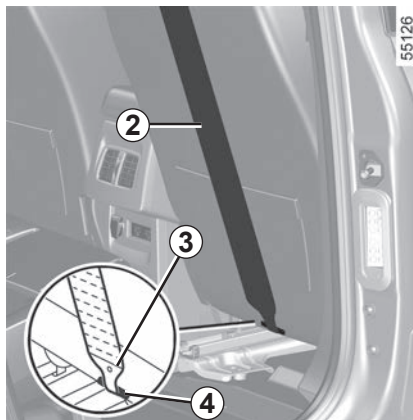
### Attachment using the ISOFIX system (continued)

The third ring **4** is used to attach the upper strap **2** on some child seats.


### Rear seats

The upper strap **2** should be positioned between the seatback and the rear parcel shelf. To do so, remove the rear parcel shelf ➔ 3.36.

Attach the **3** hook on one of the **4** rings marked with the  symbol.



### Front passenger seat

Attach the **3** hook of the upper strap **2** to the ring **4** marked with the  symbol.

### All seats

Pull the upper strap **2** so that the back of the child seat comes into contact with the back of the vehicle seat.



The ISOFIX anchorage points have been exclusively designed for child seats with the ISOFIX system. Never fit a different type of child seat, seat belt or other objects to these anchorage points.

Check that nothing is obstructing the anchorage points.

If your vehicle has been involved in a road accident, have the ISOFIX anchorage points checked and replace your child seat.



Check that the seatback of the forward-facing child seat is in contact with the back of the vehicle seat.

In this case, the child seat may not always rest on the base of the vehicle seat.

## CHILD SAFETY: fitting a child seat, general information (1/2)

Some seats are not suitable for fitting child seats. The diagram on the following page shows you how to attach a child seat.



Fit the child seat in a rear seat wherever possible.

Make sure the child seat or the child's feet do not prevent the front seat from locking correctly. ➔ 1.34.

Check that when installing the child seat in the vehicle it is not at risk of coming loose from its base.

If you have to remove the headrest, check that it is correctly stored so that it does not come loose under harsh braking or impact.

Always attach the child seat to the vehicle even if it is not in use so that it does not come loose under harsh braking or impact.

The types of child seat indicated may not be available. Before using a different child seat, check with the manufacturer that it can be fitted.

### In the front seat

The laws concerning children travelling in the front passenger seat differ in every country. Consult the legislation in force and follow the indications on the diagram on the following page.

Before fitting a child seat in this seat (if authorised):

- lower the seat belt as far as possible;
- move the seat as far back as possible;
- gently tilt the seatback away from vertical (approximately 25°);
- on equipped vehicles, raise the seat base as far as possible.

Always fully raise the seat headrest so that it does not interfere with the child seat ➔ 1.33.

After installing the child seat, when this is possible, you can move the vehicle seat forward if necessary (so as to leave enough space in the rear seats for passengers or other child seats). For a rear-facing child seat, do not let it touch the dashboard or move it to the furthest forward position.

Do not change other settings after installing the child seat.



**RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY:** before fitting a rear-facing child seat in this seat, make sure that the front passenger airbag has been deactivated. ➔ 1.90.

## CHILD SAFETY: fitting a child seat, general information (2/2)

### In the rear side seat

A carrycot can be installed across the vehicle and will take up at least two seats. Position the child with his or her feet nearest the door.

Move the front seat as far forward as possible to install a rear-facing child seat, then move back the seat in front as far as it will go, although without allowing it to come into contact with the child seat.

For the safety of the child in the forward-facing position:

- move the relevant seat backwards as far as possible;
- move the seat in front of the child forwards, and set the position of the seatback to avoid contact between the seat and the child's legs.



Ensure that the child seat or the child's feet do not prevent the front seat from locking correctly. ➔ 3.34.

Always remove the headrest from the rear seat on which the child seat is positioned. ➔ 3.33. If necessary, position the rear seat as far back as possible. This must be done before fitting the child seat. Check that the child seat is resting against the back of the rear seat.



Fitting a seat ISOFIX in the rear-left seat means the middle seat cannot be used. The central seat belt will no longer be either accessible or useable.



When fitting a child seat (Group 2 or 3 booster seat), check that the seat belts operate (wind) correctly ➔ 1.43. If necessary, adjust the position of the vehicle seat.

### In rear centre seat

Check that the belt is suitable for securing your child seat. Consult an approved dealer.



An ISOFIX or a child seat with a floor support must never be installed on the rear centre seat.

**RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY.**

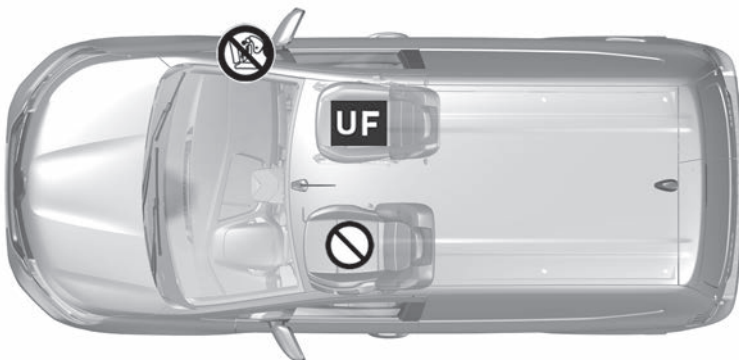


Fit the child seat in a rear seat wherever possible.

To install an ISOFIX seat in this seat, unbuckle the seat belt by hand before engaging the bolts.

## CHILD SEATS: attachment by seat belt (1/14)

“Open Sesame” version




55042

### Child seat attached using the belt

**UF** Seat enabling **only** a **forward-facing seat** with “Universal” approval to be fitted.

 Seat not suitable for fitting child seats.

 Check the status of the airbag before fitting a child seat or allowing a passenger to use the seat.



Using a child safety system which is not approved for this vehicle will not correctly protect the baby or child. They risk serious or even fatal injury.



**RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY:** never install a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat.

## CHILD SEATS: attachment by seat belt (2/14)

The table below summarises the information already shown on the diagram on the previous page, to ensure the regulations in force are respected.

“Open Sesame” version			
Type of child seat	Weight of the child	Front passenger seat	
		airbag activated on passenger side (1)	without passenger airbag or with it deactivated (1)
<b>Carrycot fitted across the vehicle</b> Group 0	< 10 kg	X	X
<b>Rear-facing shell seat</b> Groups 0 or 0 +	< 13 kg	X	X
<b>Shell seat/rear-facing seat</b> Groups 0+ and 1	< 13 kg 9 to 18 kg	X	X
<b>Forward-facing seat</b> Group 1	9 to 18 kg	UF (2)	X
<b>Booster seat</b> Groups 2 and 3	15 to 25 kg 22 to 36 kg	UF (2)	X

**Refer to the “Child safety equipment” booklet (available from the network) to choose a seat suited to your child and recommended for your vehicle.**

**X** = Seat not suitable for fitting child seats of this type.

**UF** = Seat which enables **only** a **forward-facing seat** with "Universal" approval to be fitted: check if it can be fitted.

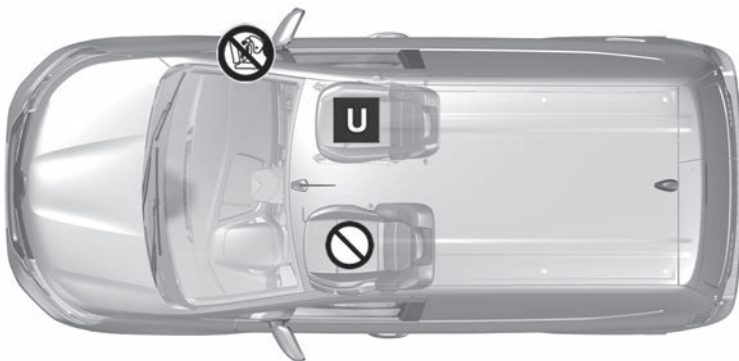
**(2)** Depending on the vehicle, raise the seat to the maximum and position it as far back as possible, tilting the seatback slightly (approximately 25°).



**(1) RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY:** never install a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat.

## CHILD SEATS: attachment by seat belt (3/14)

Van version with foldable passenger seat




55041

### Child seat attached using the belt

**U** Seat which allows a child seat with “Universal” approval to be attached by a seat belt.

 Seat not suitable for fitting child seats.

 Check the status of the airbag before fitting a child seat or allowing a passenger to use the seat.



Using a child safety system which is not approved for this vehicle will not correctly protect the baby or child. They risk serious or even fatal injury.



**RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY:** before fitting a rear-facing child seat in this seat, make sure that the front passenger airbag has been deactivated. ➔ 1.90.



## CHILD SEATS: attachment by seat belt (4/14)

The table below summarises the information already shown on the diagram on the previous page, to ensure the regulations in force are respected.

Van version with foldable passenger seat			
Type of child seat	Weight of the child	Front passenger seat	
		airbag activated on passenger side (1)	without passenger airbag or with it deactivated (2)
<b>Carrycot fitted across the vehicle</b> Group 0	< 10 kg	X	X
<b>Rear-facing shell seat</b> Groups 0 or 0 +	< 13 kg	X	U
<b>Shell seat/rear-facing seat</b> Groups 0+ and 1	< 13 kg 9 to 18 kg	X	U
<b>Forward-facing seat</b> Group 1	9 to 18 kg	U	X
<b>Booster seat</b> Groups 2 and 3	15 to 25 kg 22 to 36 kg	U	X

Refer to the “Child safety equipment” booklet (available from the network) to choose a seat suited to your child and recommended for your vehicle.

**X** = Seat not suitable for fitting child seats of this type.

**U** = Seat allowing a child seat with “Universal” approval to be attached by the seat belt; check that it can be fitted.

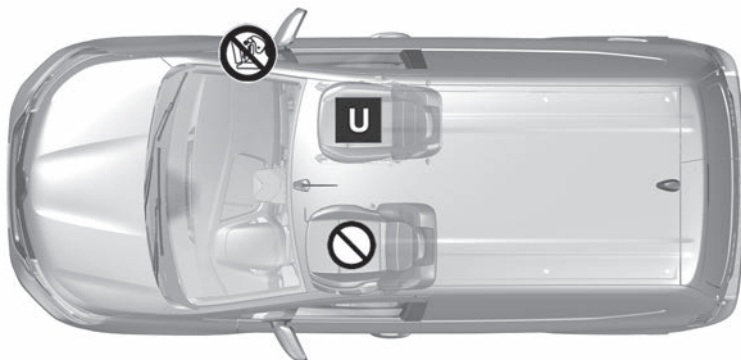


**(1) RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY:** never install a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the vehicle is equipped with a passenger airbag that cannot be deactivated.

**(2) RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY:** before fitting a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat, ensure that the airbag has been deactivated ➡ 1.90.

## CHILD SEATS: attachment by seat belt (5/14)

Van version with unfoldable passenger seat




55041

### Child seat attached using the belt

**U** Seat which allows a child seat with “Universal” approval to be attached by a seat belt.

 Seat not suitable for fitting child seats.

 Check the status of the airbag before fitting a child seat or allowing a passenger to use the seat.



Using a child safety system which is not approved for this vehicle will not correctly protect the baby or child. They risk serious or even fatal injury.



**RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY:** before fitting a rear-facing child seat in this seat, make sure that the front passenger airbag has been deactivated. ➔ 1.90.

## CHILD SEATS: attachment by seat belt (6/14)

The table below summarises the information already shown on the diagram on the previous page, to ensure the regulations in force are respected.

Van version with unfoldable passenger seat			
Type of child seat	Weight of the child	Front passenger seat	
		airbag activated on passenger side (1)	without airbag passenger or with it deactivated (2) (3)
<b>Carrycot fitted across the vehicle</b> Group 0	< 10 kg	X	X
<b>Rear-facing shell seat</b> Groups 0 or 0 +	< 13 kg	X	U
<b>Shell seat/rear-facing seat</b> Groups 0+ and 1	< 13 kg 9 to 18 kg	X	U
<b>Forward-facing seat</b> Group 1	9 to 18 kg	U (3)	X
<b>Booster seat</b> Groups 2 and 3	15 to 25 kg 22 to 36 kg	U (3)	X

Refer to the “Child safety equipment” booklet (available from the network) to choose a seat suited to your child and recommended for your vehicle.

**X** = Seat not suitable for fitting child seats of this type.

**U** = Seat allowing a child seat with “Universal” approval to be attached by the seat belt; check that it can be fitted.

**(3)** Depending on the vehicle, raise the seat to the maximum and position it as far back as possible, tilting the seatback slightly (approximately 25°).

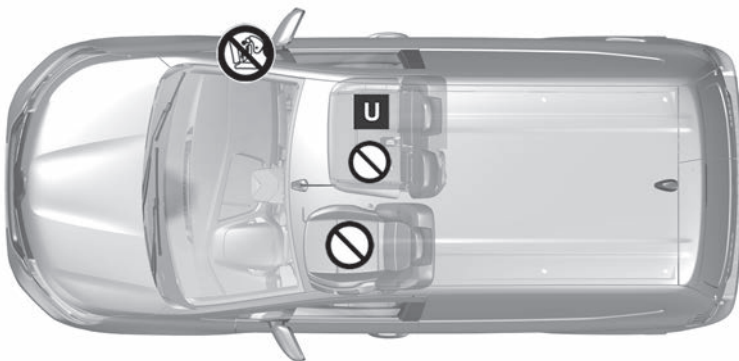


**(1) RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY:** never install a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the vehicle is equipped with a passenger airbag that cannot be deactivated.

**(2) RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY:** before fitting a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat, ensure that the airbag has been deactivated ➡ 1.90.

## CHILD SEATS: attachment by seat belt (7/14)


Van version with three front seats



### Child seat attached using the belt

**U** Seat which allows a child seat with “Universal” approval to be attached by a seat belt.

 Seat not suitable for fitting child seats.

 Check the status of the airbag before fitting a child seat or allowing a passenger to use the seat.



Using a child safety system which is not approved for this vehicle will not correctly protect the baby or child. They risk serious or even fatal injury.



**RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY:** before fitting a rear-facing child seat in this seat, make sure that the front passenger airbag has been deactivated. ➔ 1.90.

## CHILD SEATS: attachment by seat belt (8/14)

The table below summarises the information already shown on the diagram on the previous page, to ensure the regulations in force are respected.

Van version with three front seats				
Type of child seat	Weight of the child	Side front passenger seat		Central front passenger seat
		airbag activated on passenger side (1)	without airbag passenger or with it deactivated (2)	
<b>Carrycot fitted across the vehicle</b> Group 0	< 10 kg	X	X	X
<b>Rear-facing shell seat</b> Groups 0 or 0 +	< 13 kg	X	U	X
<b>Shell seat/rear-facing seat</b> Groups 0+ and 1	< 13 kg 9 to 18 kg	X	U	X
<b>Forward-facing seat</b> Group 1	9 to 18 kg	U	X	X
<b>Booster seat</b> Groups 2 and 3	15 to 25 kg 22 to 36 kg	U	X	X

Refer to the “Child safety equipment” booklet (available from the network) to choose a seat suited to your child and recommended for your vehicle.

**X** = Seat not suitable for fitting child seats of this type.

**U** = Seat allowing a child seat with “Universal” approval to be attached by the seat belt; check that it can be fitted.

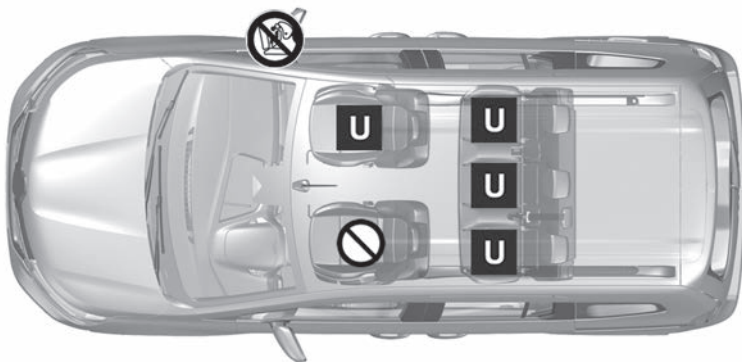


**(1) RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY:** never install a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the vehicle is equipped with a passenger airbag that cannot be deactivated.

**(2) RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY:** before fitting a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat, ensure that the airbag has been deactivated ➡ 1.90.

## CHILD SEATS: attachment by seat belt (9/14)

Estate version with unfoldable front passenger seat




53094

### Child seat attached using the belt

**U** Seat which allows a child seat with “Universal” approval to be attached by a seat belt.

 Seat not suitable for fitting child seats.

 Check the status of the airbag before fitting a child seat or allowing a passenger to use the seat.



Using a child safety system which is not approved for this vehicle will not correctly protect the baby or child. They risk serious or even fatal injury.



**RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY:** before fitting a rear-facing child seat in this seat, make sure that the front passenger airbag has been deactivated. ➔ 1.90.

## CHILD SEATS: attachment by seat belt (10/14)

The table below summarises the information already shown on the diagram on the previous page, to ensure the regulations in force are respected.

Estate version with unfoldable front passenger seat					
Type of child seat	Weight of the child	Front passenger seat		Rear seats	
		airbag activated on passenger side (1)	without passenger airbag or with it deactivated (2) (3)	Side seats	Centre seat
<b>Carrycot fitted across the vehicle</b> Group 0	< 10 kg	X	X	U (4)	X
<b>Rear-facing shell seat</b> Groups 0 or 0 +	< 13 kg	X	U	U (5)	U (5) (7)
<b>Shell seat/rear-facing seat</b> Groups 0+ and 1	< 13 kg 9 to 18 kg	X	U	U (5)	U (5) (7)
<b>Forward-facing seat</b> Group 1	9 to 18 kg	U (3)	X	U (6)	U (6) (7)
<b>Booster seat</b> Groups 2 and 3	15 to 25 kg 22 to 36 kg	U (3)	X	U (6)	U (6)



**(1) RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY:** never install a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the vehicle is equipped with a passenger airbag that cannot be deactivated.

**(2) RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY:** before fitting a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat, ensure that the airbag has been deactivated ➡ 1.90.

## CHILD SEATS: attachment by seat belt (11/14)

Refer to the “Child safety equipment” booklet (available from the network) to choose a seat suited to your child and recommended for your vehicle.

**X** = Seat not suitable for fitting child seats of this type.

**U** = Seat allowing a child seat with “Universal” approval to be attached by the seat belt; check that it can be fitted.

- (3) Raise the seat to the maximum and position it as far back as possible, tilting the seatback slightly (approximately 25°).
- (4) A carrycot can be installed across the vehicle and will take up at least two seats. Position the child with his or her feet nearest the door.
- (5) In order to install a rear-facing child seat, move the front seat as far forward as possible, then move the front seat back as far as it will go, without allowing it to come into contact with the child seat.
- (6) In all situations, remove the rear headrest of the seat on which the child seat is positioned. This must be done before fitting the child seat. ➡ 3.33. Move the seat in front of the child forwards, move the seatback forward to avoid contact between the seat and the child's legs.



**(7) RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY:** a child seat with a floor support must never be fitted on the rear centre seat.



## CHILD SEATS: attachment by seat belt (12/14)

The table below summarises the information already shown on the diagram on the following pages, to ensure the applicable regulations are respected.

Estate version with foldable front passenger seat					
Type of child seat	Weight of the child	Front passenger seat		Rear seats	
		airbag activated on passenger side (1)	without passenger airbag or with it deactivated (2) (3)	Side seats (8)	Centre seat
<b>Carrycot fitted across the vehicle</b> Group 0	< 10 kg	X	X	U (4)	X
<b>Rear-facing shell seat</b> Groups 0 or 0 +	< 13 kg	X	U	U (5)	U (5) (7)
<b>Shell seat/rear-facing seat</b> Groups 0+ and 1	< 13 kg 9 to 18 kg	X	U	U (5)	U (5) (7)
<b>Forward-facing seat</b> Group 1	9 to 18 kg	U (3)	X	U (6)	U (6) (7)
<b>Booster seat</b> Groups 2 and 3	15 to 25 kg 22 to 36 kg	U (3)	X	U (6)	U (6)



**(1) RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY:** never install a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the vehicle is equipped with a passenger airbag that cannot be deactivated.

**(2) RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY:** before fitting a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat, ensure that the airbag has been deactivated ➡ 1.90.

## CHILD SEATS: attachment by seat belt (13/14)

Refer to the “Child safety equipment” booklet (available from the network) to choose a seat suited to your child and recommended for your vehicle.

**X** = Seat not suitable for fitting child seats of this type.

**U** = Seat allowing a child seat with “Universal” approval to be attached by the seat belt; check that it can be fitted.

- (3) Raise the seat to the maximum and position it as far back as possible, tilting the seatback slightly (approximately 15°).
- (4) A carrycot can be installed across the vehicle and will take up at least two seats. Position the child with his or her feet nearest the door.
- (5) In order to install a rear-facing child seat, move the front seat as far forward as possible, then move the front seat back as far as it will go, without allowing it to come into contact with the child seat.
- (6) In all situations, remove the rear headrest of the seat on which the child seat is positioned. This must be done before fitting the child seat. ➡ 3.33. Move the seat in front of the child forwards, move the seatback forward to avoid contact between the seat and the child's legs.

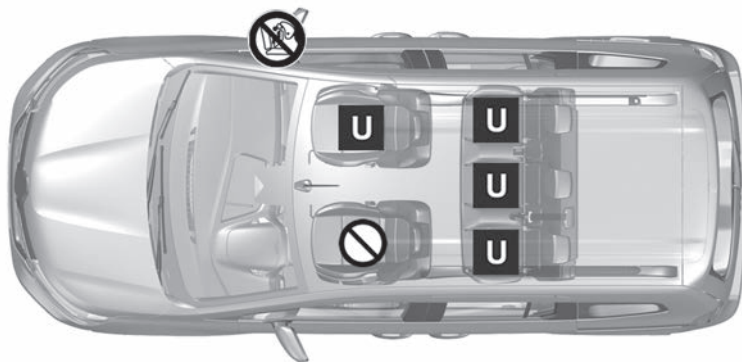


**(7) RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY:** a child seat with a floor support must never be fitted on the rear centre seat.

**(8) RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY:** it is forbidden to fit a child seat behind a folded front seat.

## CHILD SEATS: attachment by seat belt (14/14)

Estate version with foldable front passenger seat




53994

### Child seat attached using the belt

**U** Seat which allows a child seat with “Universal” approval to be attached by a seat belt.

 Seat not suitable for fitting child seats.

 Check the status of the airbag before fitting a child seat or allowing a passenger to use the seat.



Using a child safety system which is not approved for this vehicle will not correctly protect the baby or child. They risk serious or even fatal injury.



**RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY:** before fitting a rear-facing child seat in this seat, make sure that the front passenger airbag has been deactivated. ➔ 1.90.

## CHILD SEATS: fitted using the ISOFIX SYSTEM (1/9)

### Van version unfoldable passenger seat




56982

### Child seat fitted using the ISOFIX mounting



Seat which allows an ISOFIX child seat to be fitted.

The anchorage point  is located on the back of the front passenger seat.



Seat which does not allow a child seat to be fitted.



Check the status of the airbag before fitting a child seat or allowing a passenger to use the seat.



Using a child safety system which is not approved for this vehicle will not correctly protect the baby or child. They risk serious or even fatal injury.



### **RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY:**

before fitting a rear facing child seat on the front passenger seat, check that the airbag has been deactivated ➔ 1.90.

## CHILD SEATS: fitted using the ISOFIX SYSTEM (2/9)

The table below summarises the information already shown on the diagram on the previous page, to ensure the regulations in force are respected.

Van version unfoldable passenger seat					
Type of child seat		Weight of the child	Size of ISOFIX seat [Size]	Front passenger seat	
				airbag activated on passenger side	without passenger airbag or with it deactivated
<b>Carrycot fitted across the vehicle</b> Group 0		< 10 kg	F, G [L1, L2]	X	X
<b>Rear-facing shell seat</b> Groups 0 or 0 +		< 13 kg	E [R1]	X	IL (1) (2)
<b>Shell seat/ rear-facing seat</b>	Group 0 +	< 13 kg	C [R3]	X	IL (1) (2)
	Group 1	9 to 18 kg	D [R2, R2X]	X	IL (1) (2)
<b>Forward-facing seat</b> Group 1		9 to 18 kg	A, B, B1 [F3, F2, F2X]	IUF - IL (1)	X
<b>Booster seat</b> Groups 2 and 3		15 to 25 kg 22 to 36 kg	B2, B3	IUF - IL (1)	X
<b>Seat i-Size</b>				i-UF (1)	i-U (1) (2)

## CHILD SEATS: fitted using the ISOFIX SYSTEM (3/9)

**X** = Seat not suitable for fitting child seats of this type.

**IUF/IL** = On equipped vehicles, seat which allows a child seat with "Universal/Semi-universal or vehicle-specific" approval to be fitted using the ISOFIX system; check that it can be fitted.

**i-U** = Suitable for "universal" front-facing and rear-facing i-Size restraint devices.

**i-UF** = Suitable only for "universal" front-facing and rear-facing i-Size restraint devices.

**(1)** Raise the seat to the maximum and position it as far back as possible, tilting the seatback slightly (approximately 25°).

The size of the ISOFIX child seat is indicated by a letter:

- A, B, B1 [F3, F2, F2X]: for forward-facing seats in group 1 (9 to 18 kg);
- C, D [R3, R2, R2X]: rear-facing seats or shell seats in group 0+ (less than 13 kg) or group 1 (9 to 18 kg);
- E [R1]: rear-facing shell seats in group 0 (less than 10 kg) or 0+ (less than 13 kg);
- F, G [L1, L2]: carrycots in group 0 (under 10 kg);
- B2, B3: boosters in groups 2 and 3 (15 to 25 kg and 22 to 36 kg).



**(2) RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY:** before fitting a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat, ensure that the airbag has been deactivated. ➔ 1.90.

## CHILD SEATS: fitted using the ISOFIX SYSTEM (4/9)

The table below summarises the information already shown on the diagram on the following pages, to ensure the applicable regulations are respected.

Estate version unfoldable front passenger seat						
Type of child seat	Weight of the child	Size of ISOFIX seat [Size]	Front passenger seat		Rear seats	
			airbag activated on passenger side	without passenger airbag or with it deactivated	Side seats	Centre seat
<b>Carrycot fitted across the vehicle</b> Group 0	< 10 kg	F, G [L1, L2]	X	X	IL (1)	X
<b>Rear-facing shell seat</b> Groups 0 or 0 +	< 13 kg	E [R1]	X	IL (2) (5)	IL (3)	X
<b>Shell seat/ rear-facing seat</b>	Group 0 +	C [R3]	X	IL (2) (5)	IL (3)	X
	Group 1	D [R2, R2X]	X	IL (2) (5)	IL (3)	X
<b>Forward-facing seat</b> Group 1	9 to 18 kg	A, B, B1 [F3, F2, F2X]	IUF - IL (2)	X	IUF - IL (3) (4)	X
<b>Booster seat</b> Groups 2 and 3	15 to 25 kg 22 to 36 kg	B2	IUF - IL (2)	X	IUF - IL (3) (4)	X
		B3	IUF - IL (2)	X	X	X
<b>Seat i-Size</b>			i-UF (2)	i-U (2) (5)	i-U	X

## CHILD SEATS: fitted using the ISOFIX SYSTEM (5/9)

**X** = Seat not suitable for fitting child seats of this type.

**IUF/IL** = On equipped vehicles, seat which allows a child seat with "Universal/Semi-universal or vehicle-specific" approval to be fitted using the ISOFIX system; check that it can be fitted.

**i-U** = Suitable for "universal" front-facing and rear-facing i-Size restraint devices.

**i-UF** = Suitable only for "universal" front-facing and rear-facing i-Size restraint devices.

- (1) A carrycot can be installed across the vehicle and will take up at least two seats. Position the child with his or her feet nearest the door.
- (2) Raise the seat to the maximum and position it as far back as possible, tilting the seatback slightly (approximately 25°).
- (3) If necessary, position the vehicle seat as far back as possible. In order to install a rear-facing child seat, move the front seat as far forward as possible, then move the front seat back as far as it will go, without allowing it to come into contact with the child seat.
- (4) In all situations, remove the rear headrest of the seat on which the child seat is positioned. This must be done before fitting the child seat. ➡ 3.33. Move the seat in front of the child forwards, move the seatback forward to avoid contact between the seat and the child's legs.

The size of the ISOFIX child seat is indicated by a letter:

- A, B, B1 [F3, F2, F2X]: for forward-facing seats in group 1 (9 to 18 kg);
- C, D [R3, R2, R2X]: rear-facing seats or shell seats in group 0+ (less than 13 kg) or group 1 (9 to 18 kg);
- E [R1]: rear-facing shell seats in group 0 (less than 10 kg) or 0+ (less than 13 kg);
- F, G [L1, L2]: carrycots in group 0 (under 10 kg);
- B2, B3: boosters in groups 2 and 3 (15 to 25 kg and 22 to 36 kg).

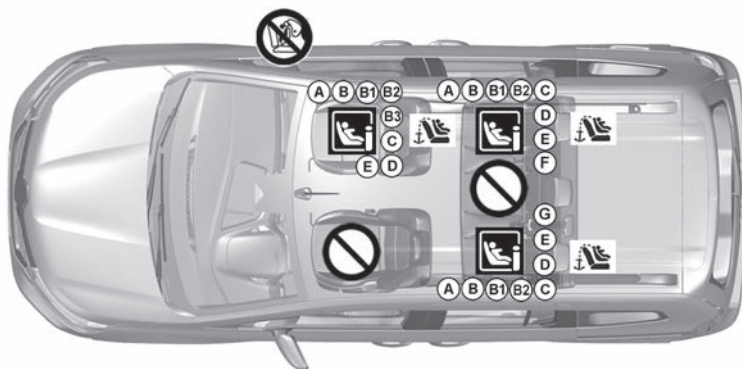


**(5) RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY:** before fitting a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat, ensure that the airbag has been deactivated. ➡ 1.90.



## CHILD SEATS: fitted using the ISOFIX SYSTEM (6/9)

### Estate version unfoldable front passenger seat



56983



Using a child safety system which is not approved for this vehicle will not correctly protect the baby or child. They risk serious or even fatal injury.



Seat which does not allow a child seat to be fitted.



Check the status of the airbag before fitting a child seat or allowing a passenger to use the seat.

### Child seat fitted using the ISOFIX mounting



Seat which allows an ISOFIX child seat to be fitted.

The rear side seats are equipped with an anchorage point allowing a forward-facing ISOFIX child seat with "Universal" approval to be attached. The anchoring points are located on the passenger seatback for the front seat and on the luggage compartment floor for the rear seats.



#### RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY:

before fitting a rear facing child seat on the front passenger seat, check that the airbag has been deactivated ➔ 1.90.

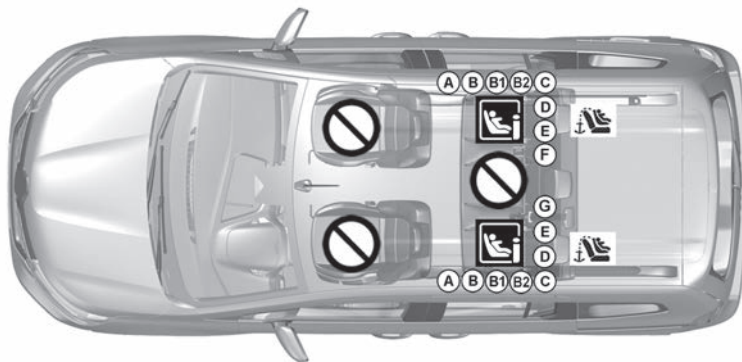


Fit the child seat in a rear seat wherever possible.

To install an ISOFIX seat in this seat, detach the central seat belt by hand before engaging the bolts.

## CHILD SEATS: fitted using the ISOFIX SYSTEM (7/9)

### Estate version foldable front passenger seat





56948

#### Child seat fitted using the ISOFIX mounting



Seat which allows an ISOFIX child seat to be fitted.

 The rear side seats are equipped with an anchorage point allowing a forward-facing ISOFIX child seat with "Universal" approval to be attached. The anchorage points  are located on the boot floor for the rear seats.



Seat which does not allow a child seat to be fitted.



Using a child safety system which is not approved for this vehicle will not correctly protect the baby or child. They risk serious or even fatal injury.



To install a seat ISOFIX, detach the central seat belt by hand before engaging the bolts.

## CHILD SEATS: fitted using the ISOFIX SYSTEM (8/9)

The table below summarises the information already shown on the diagram on the previous page, to ensure the regulations in force are respected.

Estate version foldable front passenger seat					
Type of child seat	Weight of the child	Size of ISOFIX seat [Size]	Front passenger seat	Rear seats	
				Side seats (4)	Centre seat
<b>Carrycot fitted across the vehicle</b> Group 0	< 10 kg	F, G [L1, L2]	X	IL (1)	X
<b>Rear-facing shell seat</b> Groups 0 or 0 +	< 13 kg	E [R1]	X	IL (2)	X
<b>Shell seat/ rear-facing seat</b>	Group 0 +	C [R3]	X	IL (2)	X
	Group 1	D [R2, R2X]	X	IL (2)	X
<b>Forward-facing seat</b> Group 1	9 to 18 kg	A, B, B1 [F3, F2, F2X]	X	IUF - IL (2) (3)	X
<b>Booster seat</b> Groups 2 and 3	15 to 25 kg 22 to 36 kg	B2	X	IUF - IL (2) (3)	X
		B3	X	X	X
<b>Seat i-Size</b>			X	i-U	X

## CHILD SEATS: fitted using the ISOFIX SYSTEM (9/9)

**X** = Seat not suitable for fitting child seats of this type.

**IUF/IL** = On equipped vehicles, seat which allows a child seat with "Universal/Semi-universal or vehicle-specific" approval to be fitted using the ISOFIX system; check that it can be fitted.

**i-U** = Suitable for "universal" front-facing and rear-facing i-Size restraint devices.

**i-UF** = Suitable only for "universal" front-facing and rear-facing i-Size restraint devices.

- (1) A carrycot can be installed across the vehicle and will take up at least two seats. Position the child with his or her feet nearest the door.
- (2) If necessary, position the vehicle seat as far back as possible. In order to install a rear-facing child seat, move the front seat as far forward as possible, then move the front seat back as far as it will go, without allowing it to come into contact with the child seat.
- (3) In all situations, remove the rear headrest of the seat on which the child seat is positioned. This must be done before fitting the child seat. ➡ 3.33. Move the seat in front of the child forwards, move the seatback forward to avoid contact between the seat and the child's legs.

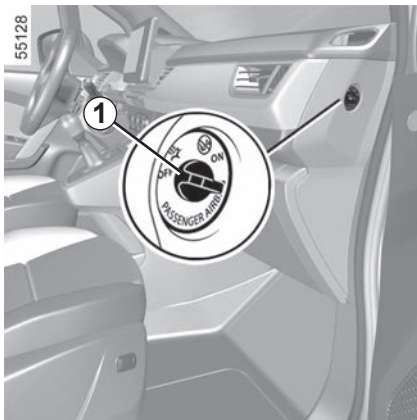
The size of the ISOFIX child seat is indicated by a letter:

- A, B, B1 [F3, F2, F2X]: for forward-facing seats in group 1 (9 to 18 kg);
- C, D [R3, R2, R2X]: rear-facing seats or shell seats in group 0+ (less than 13 kg) or group 1 (9 to 18 kg);
- E [R1]: rear-facing shell seats in group 0 (less than 10 kg) or 0+ (less than 13 kg);
- F, G [L1, L2]: carrycots in group 0 (under 10 kg);
- B2, B3: boosters in groups 2 and 3 (15 to 25 kg and 22 to 36 kg).



**(4) RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY:** it is forbidden to fit a child seat behind a folded front seat.

## CHILD SAFETY: deactivating, activating AIRBAG front passenger (1/3)

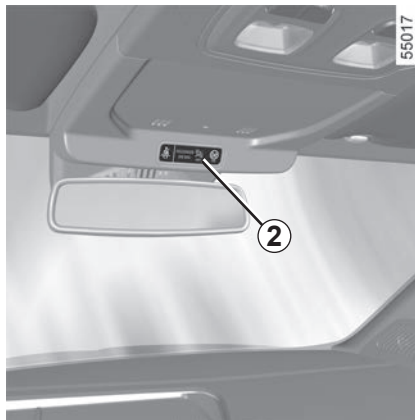


### Deactivating the front passenger airbag


(depending on the vehicle)

Before installing a child seat on the front passenger seat:

- check that the child seat can be installed on this seat;
- it is essential **to deactivate** the airbag for a rear-facing child seat.



**To deactivate the airbag: stationary vehicle, ignition off**, push and turn lock **1** to the OFF position.

With the ignition on, you **must** check that the warning light  is lit on the display **2**.

**This light remains permanently lit to let you know that you can fit a child seat.**



The passenger airbag must only be activated or deactivated when the **vehicle is stationary with the ignition off**.

If it is interfered with when the vehicle is being driven, indicator lights



and  will come on.

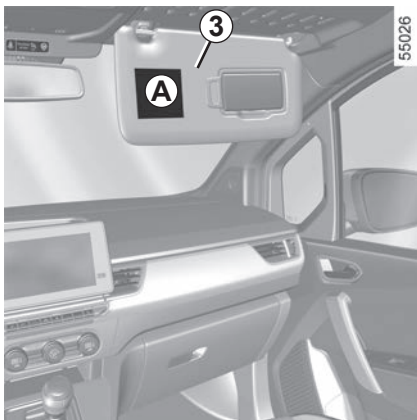
Switch the ignition off then on again to reset the airbag in accordance with the lock position.



### **DANGER**

Since operation of the front passenger airbag is not compatible with the position of a rear-facing child seat, **NEVER** fit a rear-facing child restraint system in a seat protected by an **ACTIVATED** front **AIRBAG**. This can lead to the **DEATH** of the **CHILD** or **SERIOUS INJURY**.

## CHILD SAFETY: deactivating, activating AIRBAG front passenger (2/3)



58  
A



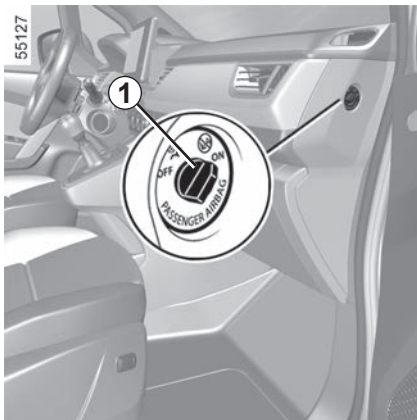
The markings on the dashboard and labels **A** on each side of the passenger sun visor **3** (example: label shown above) remind you of these instructions.



### DANGER

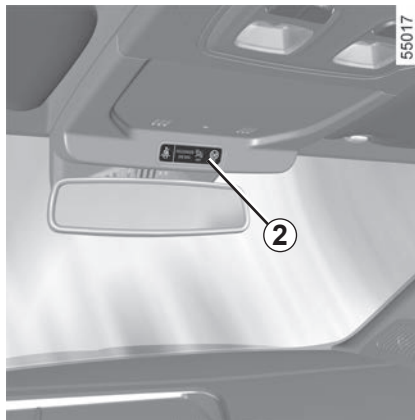
Since operation of the front passenger airbag is not compatible with the position of a rear-facing child seat, **NEVER** fit a rear-facing child restraint system in a seat protected by an **ACTIVATED** front **AIRBAG**. This can lead to the **DEATH** of the **CHILD** or **SERIOUS INJURY**.



## CHILD SAFETY: deactivating, activating AIRBAG front passenger (3/3)



### Activating the front passenger airbag (depending on the vehicle)

You should reactivate the airbag as soon as you remove the child seat from the front passenger seat to ensure the protection of the front passenger in the event of an impact.



**To reactivate the airbag: with the vehicle stopped and the ignition off,** push and turn lock **1** to the **ON** position. With the ignition switched on, you **must** check that the warning light  is out and that the warning light  comes on the display **2** after each start-up for around 60 seconds.

The front passenger airbag is activated.

### Operating faults

It is forbidden to fit a rear-facing child seat to the front passenger seat if the airbag activation/deactivation system is faulty.

Allowing any other passenger to sit in that seat is not recommended.

Contact your approved dealer as soon as possible.



The passenger airbag must only be activated or deactivated when the **vehicle is stationary with the ignition off**.

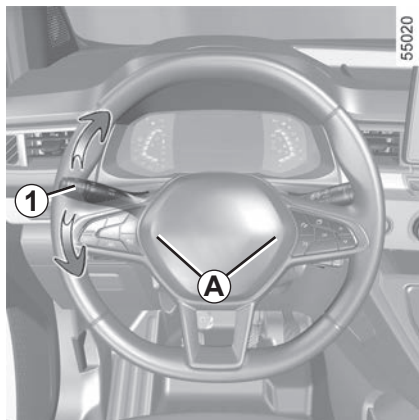
If it is interfered with when the vehicle is being driven, indicator lights



and  will come on.

Switch the ignition off then on again to reset the airbag in accordance with the lock position.

## AUDIBLE AND VISUAL SIGNALS



### Horn

Press the steering wheel boss **A** to activate the horn.

### Headlight flasher

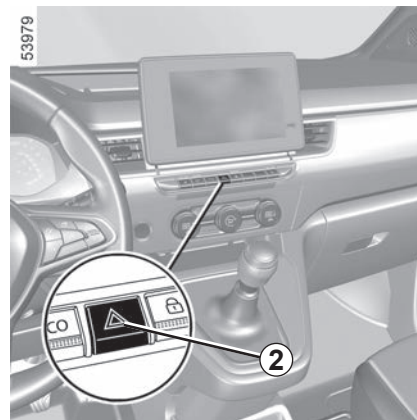
Pull stalk **1** towards you then release it to flash the headlights.

### Direction indicators

Move the stalk **1** in the same direction as you want to move the steering wheel.

#### One-touch mode

Briefly shift the stalk **1** upwards or downwards, not exceeding the point of resistance, then release it: the stalk will return to its original position and the direction indicator light concerned will flash three times.



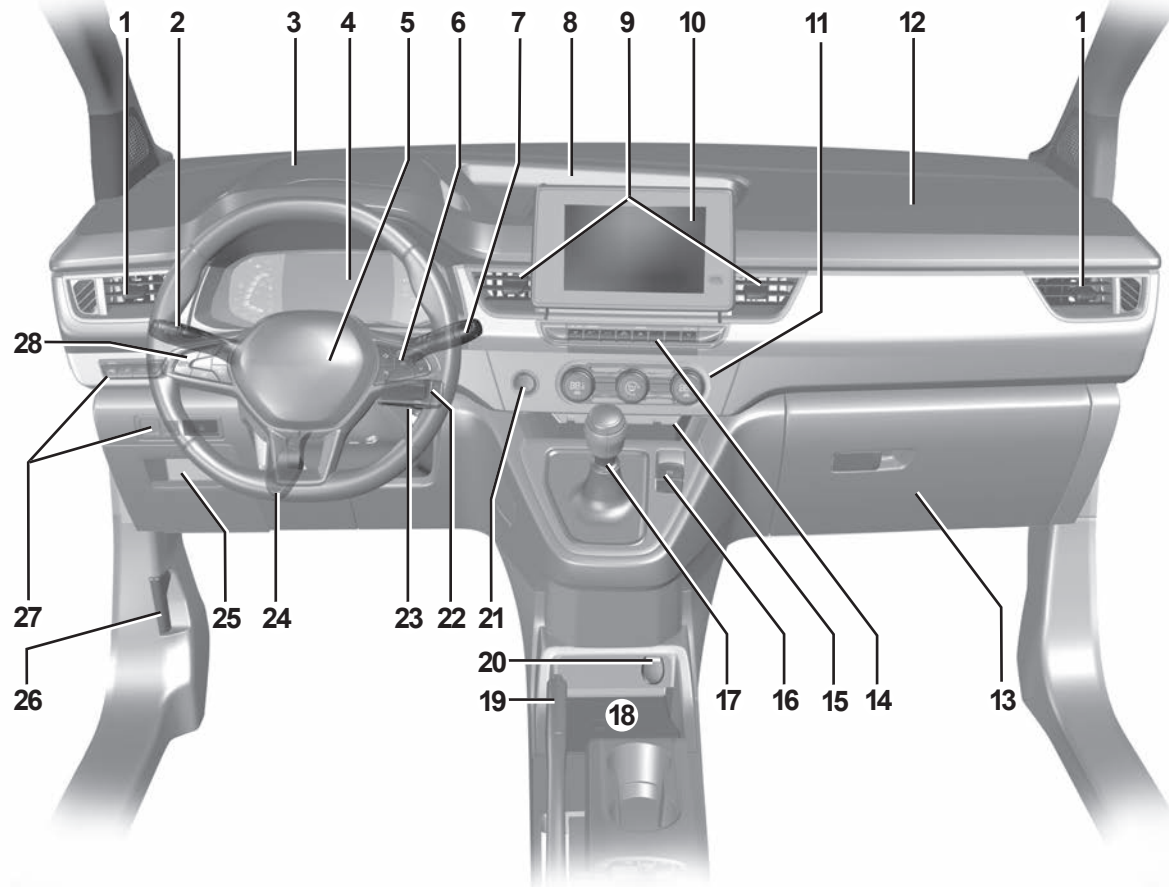
### Hazard warning lights

Press switch **2**.

This switch activates all four direction indicators and the side indicator lights simultaneously. It must only be used in an emergency to warn drivers of other vehicles that you have had to stop in an area where stopping is prohibited or unexpected, or that you are obliged to drive under special conditions.



## DRIVING POSITION: LEFT-HAND DRIVE (1/2)



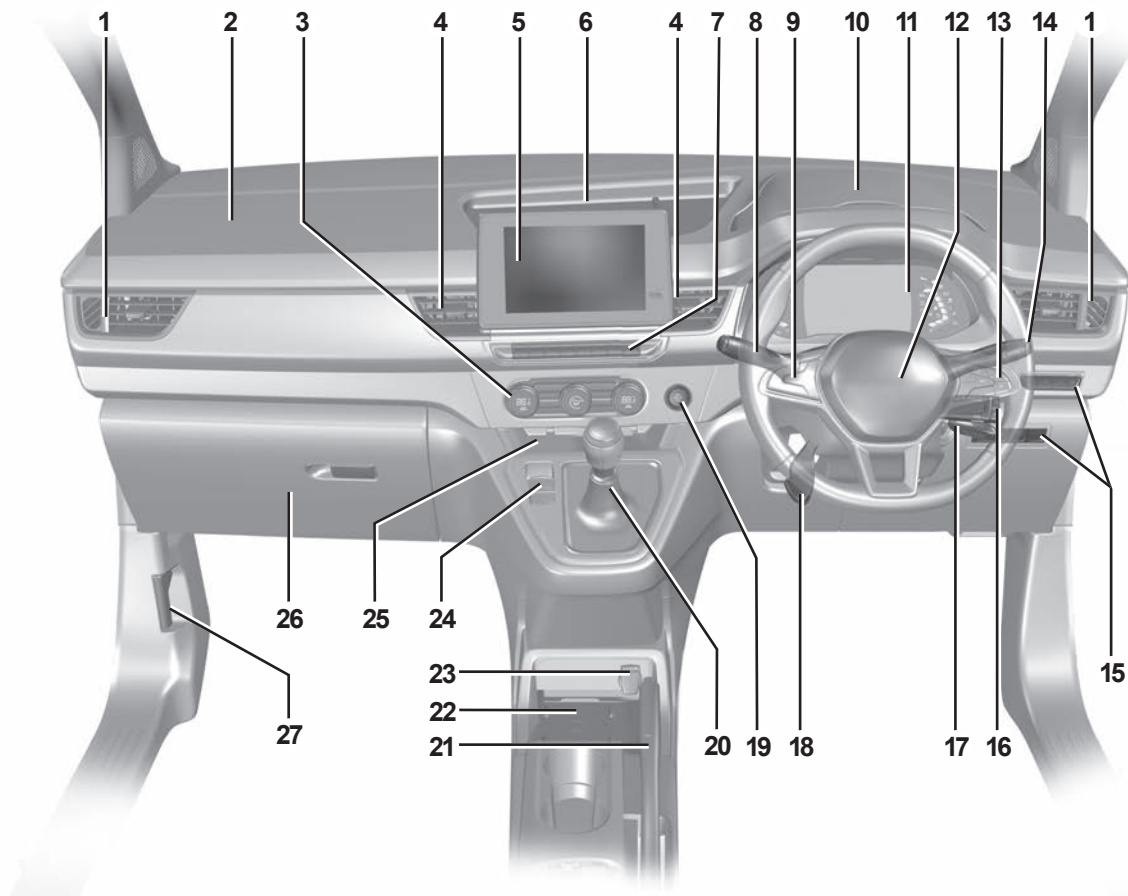
56835

## DRIVING POSITION: LEFT-HAND DRIVE (2/2)

The equipment fitted, described below, **DEPENDS ON THE VERSION AND COUNTRY.**

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>1</b> Side air vent.</li><li><b>2</b> Stalk for:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– direction indicator lights;</li><li>– exterior lights;</li><li>– fog lights.</li></ul></li><li><b>3</b> Dashboard storage compartment sockets USB and accessories socket.</li><li><b>4</b> Instrument panel.</li><li><b>5</b> Driver airbag and horn location.</li><li><b>6</b> Controls for:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– on-board computer information read-out and vehicle settings customisation menu,</li><li>– remote radio and navigation system.</li></ul></li><li><b>7</b> Steering column stalk for wind-screen and rear screen wash/wiper.</li><li><b>8</b> Dashboard central storage compartment.</li><li><b>9</b> Centre air vents.</li><li><b>10</b> Multimedia screen.</li><li><b>11</b> Heating or air conditioning controls.</li><li><b>12</b> Passenger airbag location.</li><li><b>13</b> Glovebox.</li></ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>14</b> Controls for:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– front seat heating;</li><li>– activation/deactivation of the Stop and Start function;</li><li>– activation/deactivation of ECO mode;</li><li>– activation/deactivation of the driving mode;</li><li>– hazard warning lights;</li><li>– electric door locking;</li><li>– activation/deactivation of the parking distance control;</li><li>– Park Assist.</li></ul></li><li><b>15</b> Storage compartment.</li><li><b>16</b> Electronic parking brake.</li><li><b>17</b> Gearstick.</li><li><b>18</b> Smartphone induction charging area.</li><li><b>19</b> Handbrake.</li><li><b>20</b> Accessories socket.</li><li><b>21</b> Engine start/stop button.</li><li><b>22</b> Radio remote control.</li><li><b>23</b> Ignition switch.</li></ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>24</b> Control for adjusting steering wheel height and reach.</li><li><b>25</b> Storage compartment and fuse box.</li><li><b>26</b> Bonnet release control.</li><li><b>27</b> Controls for:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– lighting rheostat for control instruments;</li><li>– headlight beam height remote adjustment;</li><li>– activation/deactivation of Lane Keeping Assist/Lane Departure Warning;</li><li>– activation/deactivation of ESC;</li><li>– activation/deactivation of the traction control - Extended grip;</li><li>– activation/deactivation of fast idle speed.</li></ul></li><li><b>28</b> Main switch and controls for cruise control/speed limiter and adaptive cruise control.</li></ul> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

## DRIVING POSITION: RIGHT-HAND DRIVE (1/2)



58161

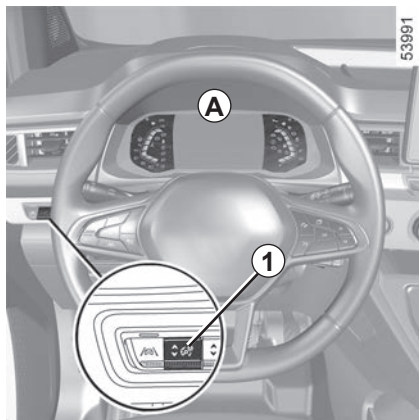
## DRIVING POSITION: RIGHT-HAND DRIVE (2/2)

The equipment fitted, described below, **DEPENDS ON THE VERSION AND COUNTRY.**

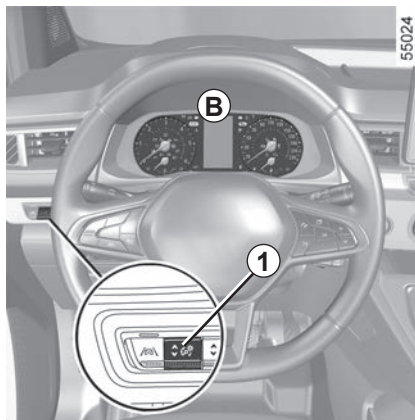
- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>1</b> Side air vent.</li><li><b>2</b> Passenger airbag location.</li><li><b>3</b> Heating or air conditioning controls.</li><li><b>4</b> Centre air vents.</li><li><b>5</b> Multimedia screen.</li><li><b>6</b> Dashboard central storage compartment.</li><li><b>7</b> Controls for:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– front seat heating;</li><li>– activation/deactivation of the Stop and Start function;</li><li>– activation/deactivation of ECO mode;</li><li>– activation/deactivation of the driving mode;</li><li>– hazard warning lights;</li><li>– electric door locking;</li><li>– activation/deactivation of the parking distance control;</li><li>– park assist.</li></ul></li><li><b>8</b> Stalk:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– direction indicator lights;</li><li>– exterior lights;</li><li>– fog lights.</li></ul></li><li><b>9</b> Main switch and controls for cruise control/speed limiter and adaptive cruise control.</li></ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>10</b> Dashboard storage compartment sockets USB and accessories socket.</li><li><b>11</b> Instrument panel.</li><li><b>12</b> Driver airbag and horn location.</li><li><b>13</b> Controls for:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– on-board computer information read-out and vehicle settings customisation menu,</li><li>– remote radio and navigation system.</li></ul></li><li><b>14</b> Steering column stalk for wind-screen and rear screen wash/wiper.</li><li><b>15</b> Controls for:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– lighting rheostat for control instruments;</li><li>– headlight beam height remote adjustment;</li><li>– activation/deactivation of Lane Keeping Assist/Lane Departure Warning;</li><li>– activation/deactivation of ESC;</li><li>– activating/deactivating the traction control - Extended grip;</li><li>– activation/deactivation of fast idle speed.</li></ul></li></ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>16</b> Radio remote control.</li><li><b>17</b> Ignition switch.</li><li><b>18</b> Control for adjusting steering wheel height and reach.</li><li><b>19</b> Engine start/stop button.</li><li><b>20</b> Gearstick.</li><li><b>21</b> Handbrake.</li><li><b>22</b> Charging zone/telephone storage.</li><li><b>23</b> Accessories socket.</li><li><b>24</b> Electronic parking brake.</li><li><b>25</b> Storage compartment.</li><li><b>26</b> Glovebox.</li><li><b>27</b> Bonnet release control.</li></ul> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

## WARNING LIGHTS (1/5)

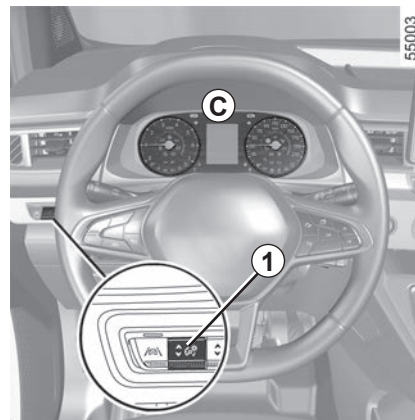
The display of information shown below **DEPENDS ON THE VEHICLE EQUIPMENT AND COUNTRY.**




Instrument panel **A**, **B** or **C**: it illuminates when the ignition is switched on. Press or lift the **1** switch as many times as required to adjust the intensity.



In some cases, the appearance of a warning light is accompanied by a message on the instrument panel.



Warning light  means you should drive **very carefully to an authorised dealer as soon as possible**. If you fail to follow this recommendation, you risk damaging your vehicle.



For your safety, the warning light **STOP** requires you to stop immediately as soon as traffic conditions allow. Switch off the engine and do not restart it. Call an approved Dealer.



If no lights or sounds are apparent, this indicates a fault in the instrument panel. This indicates that it is essential to stop immediately (as soon as traffic conditions allow). Ensure that the vehicle is correctly immobilised and contact an approved Dealer.

## WARNING LIGHTS (2/5)

The display of information shown below **DEPENDS ON THE VEHICLE EQUIPMENT AND COUNTRY.**



**Side light warning light**



**Main beam headlight tell-tale**



**Dipped beam headlight tell-tale**



**Rear fog lights tell-tale**



**Front fog light tell-tale**



**Automatic main beam headlight indicator light** ➔ 1.133



**Left-hand direction indicator tell-tale**



**Right-hand direction indicator tell-tale light**



**Indicator light/airbag**

It lights up when the ignition or the engine is switched on and goes off after a few seconds.

If it does not come on when the ignition is switched on, or comes on when the engine is running, there is a fault in the system.

Contact your approved Dealer as soon as possible.



**STOP light**

This lights up when the ignition or engine is switched on and goes out as soon as the engine is running. It comes on with other warning lights and/or messages, and is accompanied by a beep.

It requires you to stop immediately, for your own safety, as soon as traffic conditions allow. Switch off the engine and do not restart it.

Contact an approved Dealer.



**Brake circuit fault warning light**

It lights up when the ignition or the engine is switched on and goes off after a few seconds.

If it comes on during braking and is accompanied by the **STOP** warning light and a beep, it indicates that the fluid level in the circuit is low or that there is a braking system fault.

Stop as soon as traffic conditions allow and consult an approved dealer.



**Battery charge warning light**

It lights up when the ignition or the engine is switched on and goes off after a few seconds.

If it comes on on the road, accompanied by the **STOP** warning light and a beep, this indicates an overload or discharge in the electrical circuit.

Stop as soon as traffic conditions allow and contact an approved Dealer.

## WARNING LIGHTS (3/5)

The display of information shown below **DEPENDS ON THE VEHICLE EQUIPMENT AND COUNTRY.**



### Oil pressure warning light

It lights up when the ignition or the engine is switched on and goes off after a few seconds.

If it comes on on the road, accompanied by the **STOP** warning light and a beep, stop immediately and cut the ignition.

Check the oil level. If the level is normal, the warning light is related to something else.

Call an approved Dealer.



### Variable power-assisted steering warning light

It lights up when the ignition or the engine is switched on and goes off after a few seconds.

If it comes on while driving, alongside the warning light **STOP**, this means there is a system fault.

Contact an authorised dealer.




### Warning light

This lights up when the ignition or engine is switched on and goes out as soon as the engine is running. It can light up in conjunction with other warning lights and/or messages on the instrument panel. It means you should **drive very care- fully** to an approved Dealer as soon as possible. If you fail to follow this recommendation, you risk damaging your vehicle.



### Warning light

If it appears in red during driving and is accompanied by the **STOP** indicator light, you must, for your safety, stop as soon as traffic conditions allow. Switch off the engine and do not restart it. Call an approved Dealer. If it appears in yellow during driving and is accompanied by the  warning light, visit an approved dealer as soon as possible. **Meanwhile, drive with care.** If you fail to follow this recommendation, you risk damaging your vehicle.



### Handbrake “on” or electronic parking brake warning light ➔ 2.16, ➔ 2.17



### Brake pedal warning light

This lights up when the brake pedal should be depressed ➔ 2.150.



### Gear change indicators

This lights up to advise you to change to a higher gear (arrow pointing upwards) or lower gear (arrow pointing downwards) ➔ 2.21.



### Warning light for the electronic stability program (ESC) and traction control system

It lights up when the ignition or the engine is switched on and goes off after a few seconds.

There are several reasons for the warning light to appear: ➔ 2.42.



### Warning light for non-availability of the electronic stability program (ESC) and traction control system



### Side winds assistance warning light ➔ 2.42

## WARNING LIGHTS (4/5)

The display of information shown below **DEPENDS ON THE VEHICLE EQUIPMENT AND COUNTRY.**



### Anti-lock braking warning light

It lights up when the ignition or the engine is switched on and goes off after a few seconds.

If it lights up when you are driving, it indicates a fault in the anti-lock braking system.

Braking will then be as normal, without the ABS. Contact an approved Dealer as soon as possible.



### Particle filter system warning light ➔ 2.12 ➔ 2.14



### Warning light for reagent level and faults in the exhaust gas reduction system ➔ 1.150



### Tyre pressure loss warning ➔ 2.31



### Preheating warning light (Diesel version)

This should come on when the ignition is switched on. It indicates that the heater plugs are in operation.

It goes out when preheating is complete. The engine can be started.



### Toxic Fume Filter System Warning Light

On vehicles that are equipped, this light comes on when the engine is started and, depending on the vehicle, when the ignition is switched off while the engine is in the standby phase ➔ 2.8 then it goes out.

- If it lights up continuously, consult your approved dealer as soon as possible;
- If it flashes, reduce the engine speed until the light stops flashing. Contact your approved Dealer as soon as possible ➔ 2.29.



### Mode warning light ECO

It comes on when ECO mode is active ➔ 2.21.



### Low fuel level warning light

It lights up orange when the ignition or the engine is switched on and goes off after a few seconds.

If the light becomes orange while driving and a beep sounds, fill up with fuel as soon as possible. There is only approximately 31 miles (50 km) worth of fuel left.



### Coolant temperature warning light

This lights up blue when you switch on the ignition or start the engine.

If it turns red, stop and let the engine idle for a minute or two.

The temperature should lower and the warning light should return to a blue colour. If not, stop the engine. Let the engine cool down before checking the coolant.

Contact an approved Dealer.



### Door status warning light



## WARNING LIGHTS (5/5)

The display of information shown below **DEPENDS ON THE VEHICLE EQUIPMENT AND COUNTRY.**



**Speed limiter warning light**  
➔ 2.96



**Cruise control warning light**  
➔ 2.100



**Adaptive cruise control warning light** ➔ 2.105



**Engine standby warning light** ➔ 2.8



**Unavailability of engine standby warning light** ➔ 2.8



**Assisted parking brake fault light** ➔ 2.145



**Overspeed warning light**  
➔ 1.103



**Freewheel indicator light**

It activates when the parameter "Free-wheel" is activated (ON) in the user settings ➔ 1.119, ➔ 2.21.

This warning light is displayed when the function is activated:

- in grey when the vehicle is not in freewheel mode;
- in green or, depending on the vehicle, when the vehicle is in freewheel mode (automatic neutral).



**Lane departure system warning light** ➔ 2.48



**Lane Keeping Assist system warning light** ➔ 2.53



(Depending on the vehicle) **Advanced Safety**

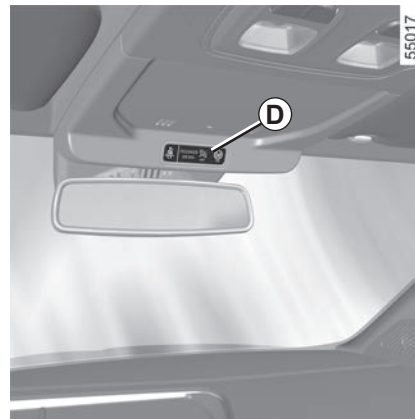
**warning light, fault light or not available** ➔ 2.73



**Hands off steering wheel detection warning light** ➔ 2.53



**"Lane Centring" function warning light** ➔ 2.118



**On display D**



**Passenger Airbag ON**  
➔ 1.90

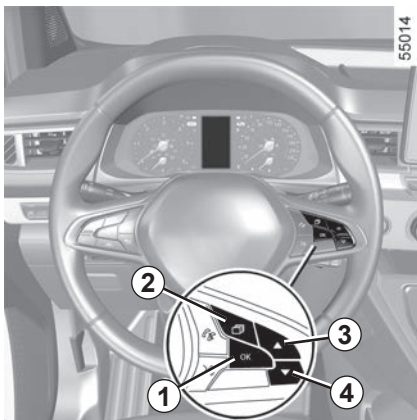


**Passenger Airbag OFF**  
➔ 1.90



**Seat belt reminder warning lights** ➔ 1.41.

## DISPLAYS AND INDICATORS (1/6)



### Engine oil level low warning

When the engine is started, the instrument panel display alerts you if the minimum oil level is reached. ➔ 4.4.

The first time the warning appears, it can be cleared by pressing **1** "OK".

Subsequent warnings will disappear automatically after around 30 seconds.



### Instrument panel in miles

(option to switch to km/h)

#### Vehicles not fitted with a multimedia screen

- With the ignition off, press the **2** switch as many times as required to reach the vehicle tab **5**;
- press **3** or **4** repeatedly to access "Settings", then press **1** "OK";
- repeat the same operation to access "DASHBOARD", then "Units".

#### Vehicles fitted with a multimedia screen.

Please refer to the multimedia instructions to select the audio system.

**Note:** in both cases, once the battery is switched off, the on-board computer automatically returns to the original unit of measurement.

To return to the previous mode, repeat the same operation.

Please refer to the multimedia instructions for more information.

## DISPLAYS AND INDICATORS (2/6)



### Instrument panel A

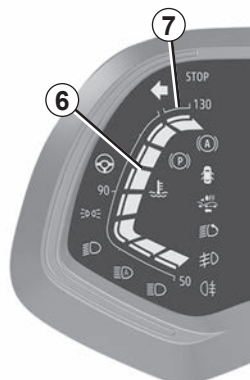
It lights up when the ignition is switched on. In some cases, the appearance of a warning light is accompanied by a message.

Depending on the vehicle, you can customise your instrument panel with the content and colours of your choice.

For vehicles fitted with a multimedia screen, refer to the multimedia instructions.

For vehicles not fitted with a multimedia screen ➡ 1.119.

55365



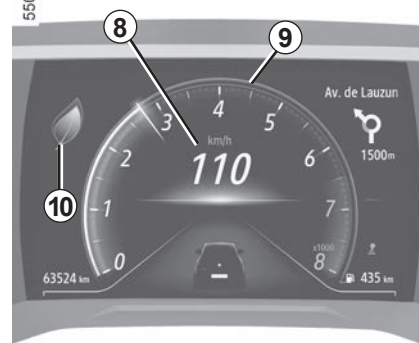
### Coolant temperature indicator 6

In normal use, indicator **6** should be before area **7**. Under "intensive" operating conditions, the needle may approach this zone. This is not serious unless the warning light **STOP** comes on accompanied by a message on the instrument panel and a beep.


### Speedometer 8

Depending on the style selected, the display varies.

55008



### Overspeed buzzer

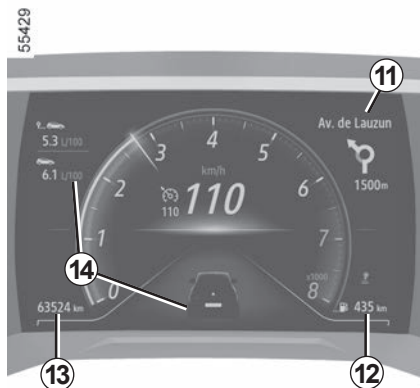
Depending on the vehicle and country, the  warning light is displayed and a beep sounds. This beep sounds as soon as the vehicle is travelling at over 75 mph (120 km/h). This warning light remains lit for as long as the vehicle is travelling at over 74 mph (120 km/h).

### Rev counter 9 (graduations x 1000)

This is displayed differently according to how the instrument panel is customised. Depending on the style selected, it may not be displayed.

### Driving style indicator 10 ➡ 2.21

## DISPLAYS AND INDICATORS (3/6)



### Multimedia information 11

Depending on the vehicle, you can display information from the multimedia screen (the compass, telephone, navigation, etc.). Please refer to the multimedia instructions for more information.

### Estimated mileage with remaining fuel 12


The value is displayed after driving 400 metres. ➡ 1.112.

### Total mileage recorder 13 ➡ 1.112

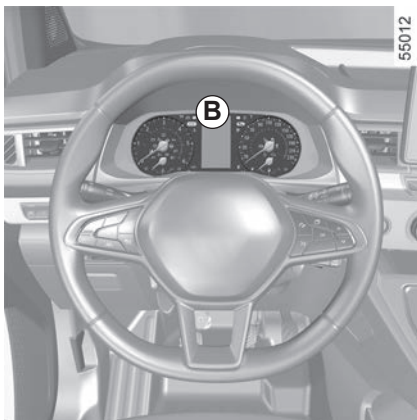
### Trip computer 14 ➡ 1.109



### Fuel gauge 15

If the level is at the minimum, warning light  integrated in the indicator comes on orange, accompanied by a beep. Fill up as soon as possible.

## DISPLAYS AND INDICATORS (4/6)



### Instrument panel **B**

It lights up when the ignition is switched on. In some cases, the appearance of a warning light is accompanied by a message.

Depending on the vehicle, you can customise your instrument panel with colours of your choice. For vehicles fitted with a multimedia screen, refer to the multimedia instructions.

For vehicles not fitted with a navigation system, refer to the information on "Vehicle settings customisation menu" in Section 1.



### Rev counter **16** (graduations x 1000)

### Coolant temperature indicator **18**

In normal use, the indicator **18** should be before the red zone **17**. Under "intensive" operating conditions, the needle may approach this zone. This is not serious unless the warning light **STOP** comes on accompanied by a message on the instrument panel and a beep.



### Trip computer **19**

➔ 1.109

### Estimated mileage with remaining fuel **20**

The value is displayed after driving 400 metres.

➔ 1.112

### Total mileage recorder **21**


➔ 1.112

## DISPLAYS AND INDICATORS (5/6)



**Driving style indicator 22** ➔ 2.21

### Fuel gauge 24

If the level is at the minimum, warning light  integrated in the indicator comes on orange, accompanied by a beep. Fill up as soon as possible.




**Speedometers 23 and, depending on the vehicle, 25**  
(km or miles per hour)

Control your speed according to the approved speedometer only **23**.

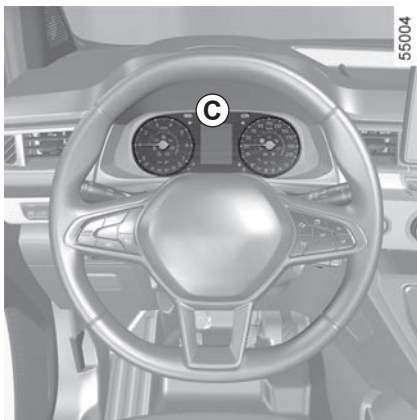
The indicator **25** is provided as an indication.



### Overspeed buzzer

Depending on the vehicle and country, the  warning light is displayed and a beep sounds. This beep sounds as soon as the vehicle is travelling at over 75 mph (120 km/h). This warning light remains lit for as long as the vehicle is travelling at over 74 mph (120 km/h).

## DISPLAYS AND INDICATORS (6/6)



### Instrument panel C

It lights up when the ignition is switched on. In some cases, the appearance of a warning light is accompanied by a message.

### Rev counter 25

(scale x 1,000)

### Speedometers 26 and, depending on the vehicle, 27

(km or miles per hour)

Control your speed according to the approved speedometer only 26.


The indicator 27 is provided as an indication.



### Gear change indicator 28 ➔ 2.21

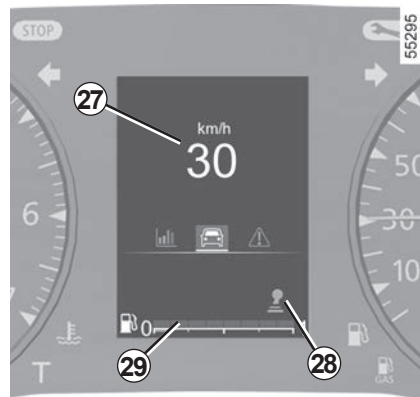
### Overspeed buzzer

Depending on the vehicle and country,

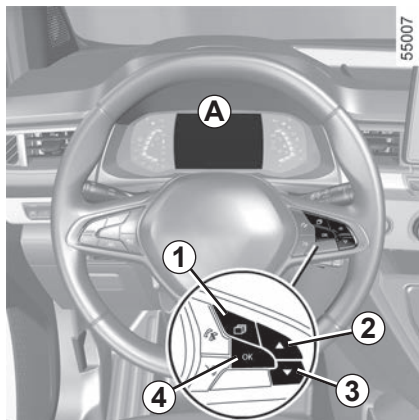
the  warning light is displayed and a beep sounds. This beep sounds as soon as the vehicle is travelling at over 75 mph (120 km/h). This warning light remains lit for as long as the vehicle is travelling at over 74 mph (120 km/h).

### Fuel gauge 29

The number of squares lit shows the fuel level. When it is at minimum, the squares disappear and the low fuel level warning light comes on, depending on the vehicle.




## TRIP COMPUTER: general information (1/3)

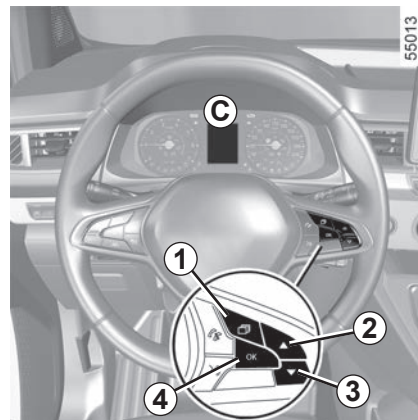
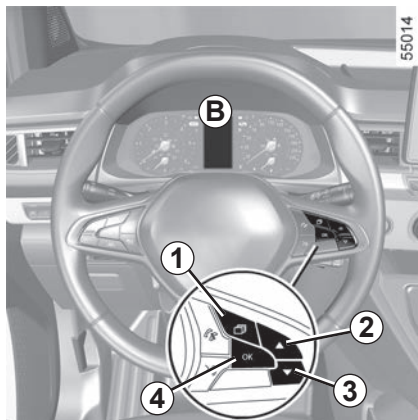


### Trip computer A, B or C

Depending on the vehicle, this includes the following functions:

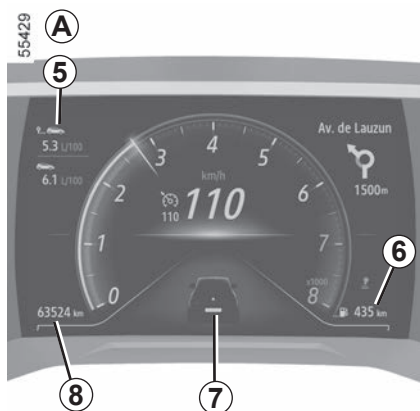
- distance travelled;
- journey settings;
- information messages;
- operating fault messages (connected to the  warning light);
- warning messages (connected to the **STOP** warning light);
- vehicle settings customisation menu  
➔ 1.119.

All these functions are described on the following pages.





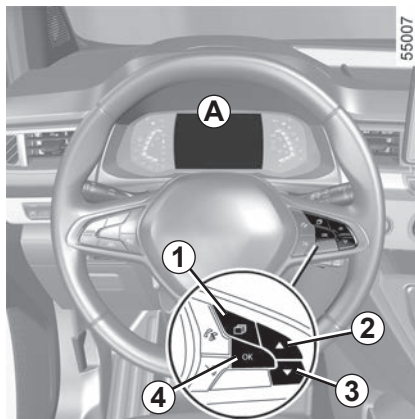
## TRIP COMPUTER: general information (2/3)



### Vehicle fitted with Ainstrument panel

The functions are distributed in zones 5, 6, 7, and 8.

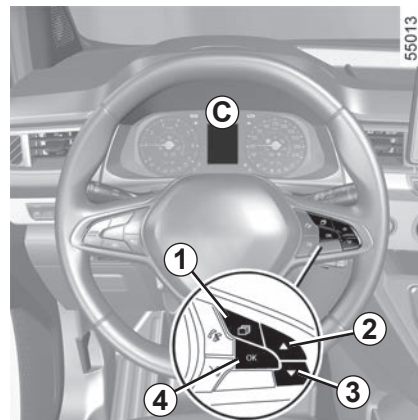
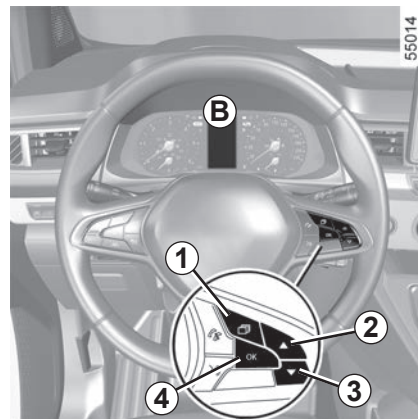
Press the **1** switch to browse between menus and select functions by repeatedly pressing switch **2** or **3**, then if necessary use the **4** switch to confirm "OK".



### Vehicle fitted with instrument panel B or C

Press the **1** switch as many times as required to reach the "Vehicle" tab.

Press repeatedly using the **2** or **3** control, then if necessary use the **4** switch to confirm "OK".

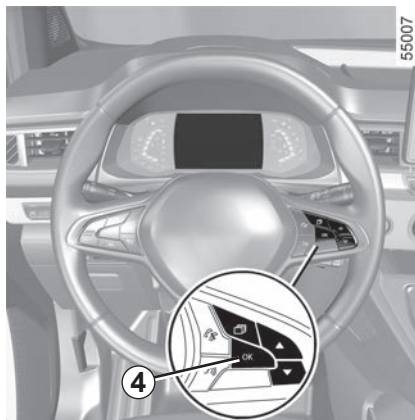


## TRIP COMPUTER: general information (3/3)

### Selections

(the display depends on the vehicle equipment and country)

- a) Trip log, operating faults and information message readout;
- b) current fuel consumption and average fuel consumption;
- c) trip mileage recorder and average speed;
- d) Reset the tyre pressure;
- e) set the time;
- f) distance before service;
  - Distance before service;
  - Distance before oil change;
- g) Estimated range with remaining reagent.



### Resetting the trip mileage recorder and journey parameters (reset button)

With one of the trip parameters selected as the display, press and hold the **4** switch "OK" until the display resets to zero.

### Automatic resetting of the journey parameters

Resetting occurs automatically when the maximum value of any of the parameters is exceeded.

### Interpreting some of the values displayed after resetting











The values showing average fuel consumption, range and average speed will become more stable and reliable the further you travel after pressing the reset button.

For the first few miles after pressing the reset key you will notice that the range increases as you travel. This range takes into account the average fuel consumption since the last time the reset button was pressed. Therefore, the average fuel consumption may decrease when:

- the vehicle stops accelerating;
- the engine reaches its operating temperature (if the engine was cold when the reset key was pressed);
- when driving from an urban area onto the open road.



## TRIP COMPUTER AND WARNING SYSTEM: journey parameters (1/4)

The display of information shown below **DEPENDS ON THE VEHICLE EQUIPMENT AND COUNTRY.**

Examples of selections	Interpreting the display selected
	 <b>a) Trip log.</b> Successive display: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– information messages (passenger airbag OFF etc.);</li><li>– operating fault messages (“Check injection” etc.).</li></ul>
 7.4 L/100	 <b>b) Current fuel consumption.</b> This value is displayed after a speed of approximately 20 mph (30 km/h) is reached.
 5.8 L/100	 <b>Average fuel consumption</b> since the last reset. The value is displayed after having travelled at least 400 metres since the last reset.
 112,4 km	 <b>c) Mileage recorder: Distance travelled</b> since the last reset.
 123.4 km/h	 <b>Average speed</b> since the last reset. The value is displayed after driving 400 metres.


# TRIP COMPUTER AND WARNING SYSTEM: journey parameters (2/4)

The display of information shown below **DEPENDS ON THE VEHICLE EQUIPMENT AND COUNTRY.**

Examples of selections	Interpreting the display selected
<div>Tyre pressure init. long press</div>	<div> <b>d) Reset the tyre pressure.</b>     ↳ 2.31</div>
<div>16:30</div>	<div> <b>e) Setting the time.</b>     ↳ 1.122</div>


## TRIP COMPUTER AND WARNING SYSTEM: journey parameters (3/4)

The display of information shown below **DEPENDS ON THE VEHICLE EQUIPMENT AND COUNTRY.**

Examples of selections	Interpreting the display selected
On-board computer with mileage-before-service message	
<div>Service Due in 30 000 km / 24 months</div> <div>Service Due in 300 km / 24 days</div> <div>Service Required</div>	<p><b>f) Mileage before service and oil change.</b></p> <p><b>Mileage before service</b> <b>With the ignition on and engine not running</b>, access the “Mileage before service” information. When the distance value approaches its limit, there are several possible scenarios:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– range less than <b>930 miles (1,500 km)</b> or <b>one month</b>: the message “Service Due in” is displayed accompanied by the nearest term (distance or time);</li><li>– range equal to <b>0 miles (0 km)</b> or <b>date of service reached</b>: the message “Service Required” is displayed accompanied by the warning light .</li></ul> <p>The vehicle requires a service as soon as possible.</p>
<p><b>Reset:</b> to reset the distance before the next service, press and hold button OK for approximately 10 seconds until the display shows the mileage before service permanently.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If a service is performed without changing the engine oil, only the mileage before the next service should be reset. In the event of an oil change, both the distance before the next service and the next oil change should be reset.</p>	

## TRIP COMPUTER AND WARNING SYSTEM: journey parameters (4/4)

The display of information shown below **DEPENDS ON THE VEHICLE EQUIPMENT AND COUNTRY.**


Examples of selections	Interpreting the display selected
On-board computer with distance before next service message (cntd.)	
<div>Oil Change in 30 000 km / 24 months</div> <p>Depending on the vehicle, the mileage before an oil change varies according to the driving style (frequent driving at low speed, door-to-door journeys, extensive use at idling speed, towing a trailer, etc.). The distance remaining until the next oil change can therefore decrease more quickly in some cases than the actual distance travelled.</p> <p><b>Reset:</b> to reset the distance before the next service, press and hold button OK for approximately 10 seconds until the display shows the mileage before oil change permanently.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If a service is performed without changing the engine oil, only the mileage before the next service should be reset. In the event of an oil change, both the distance before the next service and the next oil change should be reset.</p>	<p>f) <b>Mileage before service or oil change.</b></p> <p><b>Mileage before service</b></p> <p><b>With the ignition on and the engine not running</b>, access the mileage information to display the mileage before the next oil change.</p>
<div>Top Up AdBlue before 2400 km</div>	<p></p> <p><b>g) Estimated range with remaining reagent.</b></p>


# TRIP COMPUTER AND WARNING SYSTEM: information messages


These can help in the vehicle starting phase, or give information about a selection or a driving status.  
Examples of information messages are given in the following pages.

Examples of messages	Interpreting the display selected
<b>“Parking Brake ON”</b>	Indicates that the parking brake has been applied.
<b>“Turn Steering Wheel + START”</b>	Turn the steering wheel slightly whilst pressing the vehicle start button to unlock the steering column.
<b>“Vehicle Checks in Progress”</b>	Displayed with the ignition on when the vehicle is running self-diagnostics.

## TRIP COMPUTER AND WARNING SYSTEM: operating fault messages

These appear with the  warning light and mean that you should drive very carefully to an authorised dealer as soon as possible. If you fail to follow this recommendation, you risk damaging your vehicle.

They disappear when the display selection key is pressed or after several seconds and are stored in the computer log. The  warning light stays on. Examples of operating fault messages are given in the following pages.

Examples of messages	Interpreting the display selected
<b>“Clean Diesel Filter”</b>	Indicates the presence of water in the diesel filter; contact an approved Dealer as soon as possible.
<b>“Check vehicle”</b>	Indicates a fault in one of the pedal sensors, battery management system or oil level sensor.
<b>“WARNING: Check Airbag”</b>	Indicates a fault in the restraint system in addition to the seat belts. In the event of an accident, it is possible that they may not be triggered.
<b>“Check Anti- Pollution System”</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Indicates a fault in the vehicle’s particle filter system.</li><li>– Indicates a fault in the emissions reduction system when it is accompanied by the  warning light. ➔ 1.150.</li></ul>
<b>“WARNING: Check SOS Call”</b>	Indicates a fault in the emergency call system.



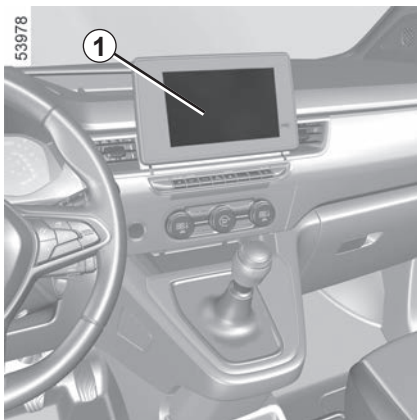
# TRIP COMPUTER AND WARNING SYSTEM: warning message

These appear with the **STOP** warning light and require you to stop immediately, for your own safety, as soon as traffic conditions allow. Stop your engine and do not restart it. Contact an approved Dealer.

Examples of warning messages are given in the following pages. **Note:** the messages appear on the display either individually or alternately (when there are several messages to be displayed), and may be accompanied by a warning light and/or a beep.

Examples of messages	Interpreting the display selected
“WARNING: Engine Failure Risk”	Indicates an injection fault, the vehicle’s engine has overheated or there is a serious engine fault.
“WARNING: Braking System”	Indicates a fault in the braking system.
“WARNING: Electric System”	Indicates a fault in the vehicle battery charging circuit (alternator etc.).
“Puncture”	Indicates that at least one wheel is punctured or severely underinflated.
“WARNING: Power Steering”	Indicates a problem with the steering.
“WARNING: Gearbox Failure Risk”	Indicates an automatic gearbox fault.

# VEHICLE SETTINGS CUSTOMISATION MENU (1/3)



Depending on the vehicle equipment, this function allows you to activate/deactivate and adjust some of the vehicle's functions.

## Vehicles fitted with a multimedia screen 1

### Accessing the settings menu

Refer to the various multimedia instructions for information on accessing the settings.

### Adjusting the settings

Select a menu then the function to be modified (the display depends on the vehicle equipment and country):

- a) "Driving":
  - Indicator volume;
- b) "Access":
  - Release driver's door;
  - Lock doors during driving;
  - Opening/closing in "hands-free" mode;
  - Remote locking/Approach unlocking;
  - Distance locking sound;
  - Silent mode;
  - Automatic locking;
- c) "Wiping and lighting":
  - Follow-me-home lighting;
  - Wiping in reverse;
  - Automatic front wiping;
  - Wiping after washing;

d) "Welcome":

- External welcome;
- Automatic fold-out of mirrors;
- Interior welcome;
- Courtesy light auto mode.

Depending on the function, select:

- "ON" or "OFF" to activate or deactivate,

or

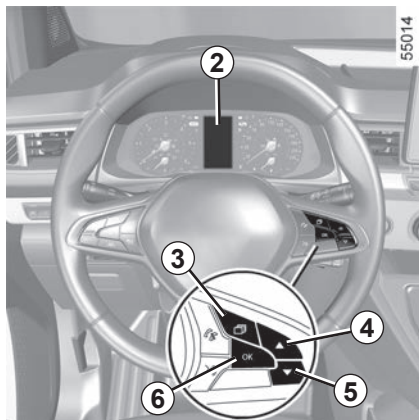
- a duration to adjust the time the lights are switched on (for the "Follow-me-home lighting" function for example).

Please refer to the multimedia instructions for further information.



For safety reasons, carry out any adjustments when the vehicle is not being driven.

## VEHICLE SETTINGS CUSTOMISATION MENU (2/3)



### Vehicles not fitted with a multimedia screen

#### Accessing the settings menu on display 2

With the vehicle stopped, press the **3** switch as many times as required to reach the "Vehicle" tab; Press repeatedly on the **4** or **5** switch to access the "Settings" menu, then confirm by pressing **6** "OK".

#### Adjusting the settings

Navigate using the **4** or **5** control to select the function to be modified and press **6** "OK" to confirm (display may vary according to vehicle equipment and country):

##### a) "DASHBOARD":

- Language;
- Unit;
- Style;
- Colour;

##### b) "VEHICLE":

- Rear windscreen wiping in reverse gear;
- Automatic windscreen wiping;
- Front/rear drip wiping function;
- Free-wheel;
- External welcome;

##### c) "PARKING ASSIST":

- Beep sound volume;

##### d) "DRIVING ASSIST":

- Lane departure warning sound volume;
- Lane departure warning sensitivity;
- Lane departure warning vibration;
- Lane keeping assist sensitivity;
- Blind spot warning;
- Active braking sensitivity;
- Advanced safety;
- Overspeed warning;
- Distance warning;

##### e) "LIGHTING":

- Courtesy light auto mode;
- Automatic follow-me-home lighting;
- Follow-me-home lighting: XX seconds;

##### f) "ACCESS":

- Lock doors during driving;
- Opening/Closing in "hands-free" mode;
- Unlock the driver's door only;
- Automatic re-locking;
- Silent locking;
- Automatic opening/closing;
- Automatic fold-out of mirrors;

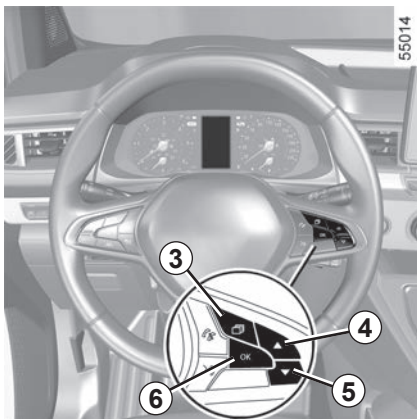
##### g) "RESET".



function activated

function deactivated

## VEHICLE SETTINGS CUSTOMISATION MENU (3/3)



Once a line has been selected, press **6** “OK” to adjust the function.

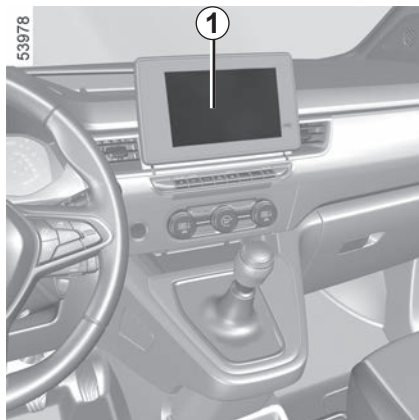
If you select either “PARKING ASSIST” then “VOLUME”, or “DASHBOARD” then “LANGUAGE”, you will have to make a further selection (sound volume of the parking distance control or instrument panel language). In this case, make your selection and confirm it by pressing “**6** OK”, the selected value is

shown by a ☒ in front of the line.

To exit the menu, press **4** or **5** to access “BACK” and confirm by pressing **6** “OK”. It may be necessary to carry out this operation more than once.

The vehicle settings personalisation menu cannot be used when driving. At a speed exceeding 12 mph (20 km/h), the instrument panel display switches automatically back to trip computer and warning system mode.

## CLOCK AND EXTERIOR TEMPERATURE (1/2)

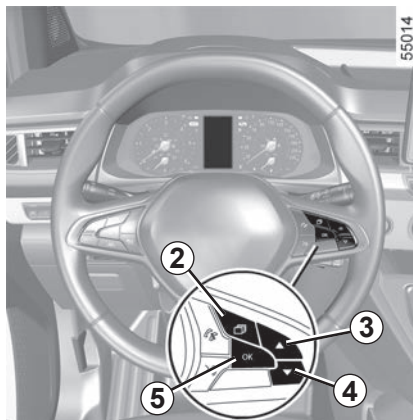


### Vehicles fitted with a multimedia screen

The time and exterior temperature are displayed on the multimedia screen **1**.

Refer to the multimedia instructions.

Depending on the vehicle, If the electrical supply is cut (battery disconnected, broken supply wire, etc.), the clock will automatically go back to the right time after a few minutes once the system is capable of receiving information GPS.



### Vehicles not fitted with a multimedia screen

Press the **2** switch as many times as required to reach the "Vehicle" tab.

Repeatedly press control **3** or **4** to set the **6** clock.

Press and hold switch **5** "OK" until the time display flashes.



Set the clock using control **3** or **4**, then press switch **5** "OK" to confirm.

Set the minutes using control **3** or **4**, then press switch **5** "OK" to confirm.

## CLOCK AND EXTERIOR TEMPERATURE (2/2)



### Exterior temperature indicator 7

#### Special note:

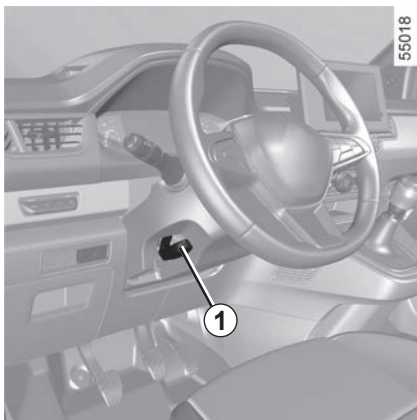
When the external temperature is between  $-3^{\circ}\text{C}$  and  $+3^{\circ}\text{C}$ , the  $^{\circ}\text{C}$  figures flash (indicates risk of ice).



#### External temperature indicator

As ice formation is related to climatic exposure, local air humidity and temperature, the external temperature alone is not sufficient to detect ice.

# STEERING WHEEL, POWER-ASSISTED STEERING



## Adjusting the steering wheel height and depth

Lower the lever **1** and position the steering wheel in the required position.

Then, raise the lever fully, beyond the point of resistance to lock the steering wheel.

Make sure that the steering wheel is correctly locked.



For safety reasons, only adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is stationary.

## Power-assisted steering

Never drive with an inadequately charged battery.

### Variable power-assisted steering

The variable power assisted steering system is equipped with an electronic control system which alters the level of assistance to suit the vehicle speed.

Steering is made easier during parking manoeuvres (for added comfort) while the force needed to steer increases progressively as the speed rises (for enhanced safety at high speeds).

### Special feature of Stop and Start

With the engine on standby, power-assisted steering is no longer operational. In this case, it returns to its original state when the engine is restarted or when the speed exceeds 1 mph (1 km/h) (hill, slope etc.).

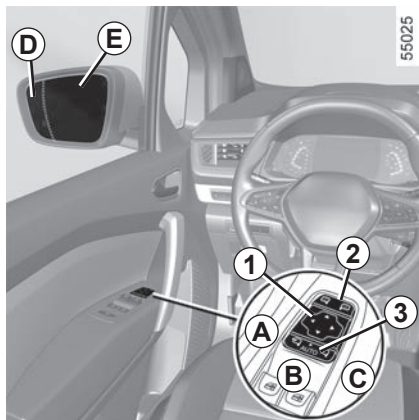
Never leave the steering wheel on full lock when the vehicle is stationary.

With the engine switched off, or if there is a system fault, it is still possible to turn the steering wheel. The force required will be greater.



Never switch off the ignition when travelling downhill, and avoid doing so in normal driving (assistance is not provided).

## REAR VIEW MIRRORS (1/4)



### Exterior rear view mirrors

#### Adjustment

Select the rear view mirror using switch **2**, then use button **1** to adjust it to the desired position.

#### Heated door mirrors

Mirror de-icing is carried out at the same time as rear screen de-icing.  
➡ 3.5 ➡ 3.9.



For safety reasons, carry out any adjustments when the vehicle is not being driven.

### Folding rear view mirrors

(depending on the vehicle)

The door mirrors automatically fold in when the vehicle is locked (switch **3** in position **B**).

In any case, you can make the door mirrors fold in (switch **3** in position **C**) or fold out (switch **3** in position **A**). Automatic mode is then deactivated. To reactivate it, set the switch **3** to position **B**.



Objects observed in the door mirror glass are actually closer than they appear. For your safety, take this into account in order to correctly assess the distance before any manoeuvre.

### Welcome and goodbye function

(depending on the vehicle)

Refer to the multimedia instructions to access the welcome and goodbye function.

Activate or deactivate the function by selecting (ON or OFF).

Depending on the selected choice, the door mirrors will fold out:

- when the ignition is next switched on (function deactivated);
- when the card is detected or the vehicle is unlocked (function activated).



The driver's exterior rear view mirror may have two clearly defined zones. Zone **E** shows what can normally be seen in an ordinary rear view mirror. Zone **D** increases rear side visibility.



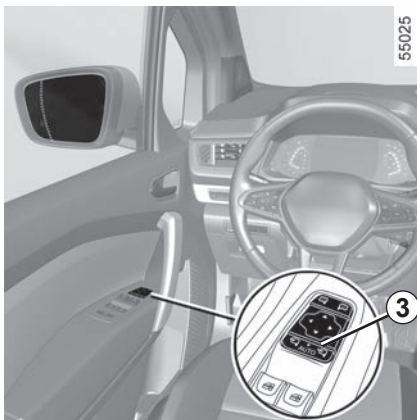
## REAR VIEW MIRRORS (2/4)



### Manually folding door mirrors

To fold down the door mirror, pull it towards the door window until you hear a mechanical click.

To return the door mirror to its operating position, proceed in the reverse order. Ensure that it is correctly locked in position.

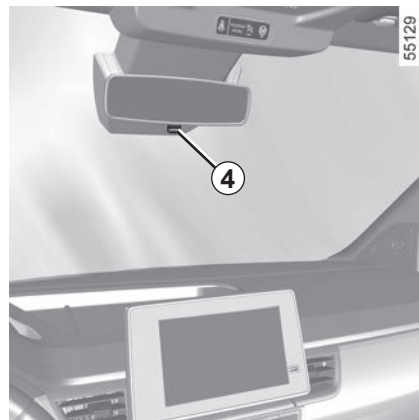


### Special case

When the rear view mirror has been manually deployed or folded back, it is possible to reset it to a usage position.

To do this, press the **3** switch. A mechanical tapping noise can be heard from the door mirror.

If a tapping noise cannot be heard, press once again on **3** switch until the tapping noise can be heard from the door mirror.



### Interior rear view mirror

Its position can be adjusted.

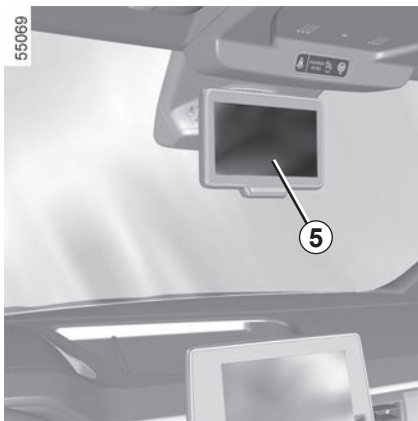
### Rear view mirror with lever **4**

When driving at night, to avoid being dazzled by the headlights of the vehicle behind, depress the little lever located behind rear view mirror **4**.

### Rear view mirror without lever **4**

The rear view mirror automatically darkens when you are being followed by a vehicle which illuminates you or in very bright lighting.

## REAR VIEW MIRRORS (3/4)

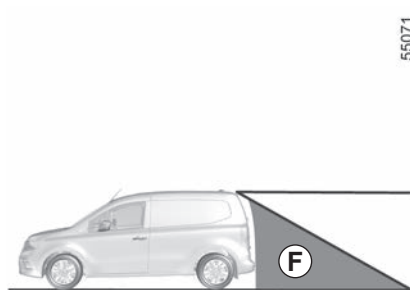


### Camera rear view system screen

The screen **5** can be positioned left to right and upwards and downwards  
➡ 1.129.

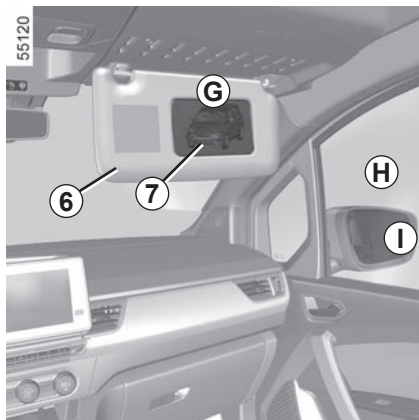


For safety reasons, carry out any adjustments when the vehicle is not being driven.



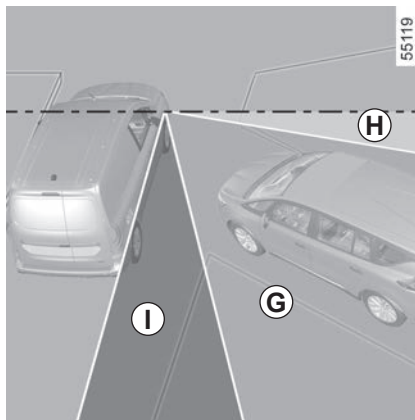
The camera's field of vision does not cover the entire area behind the vehicle, particularly the blind spot area **F**.

## REAR VIEW MIRRORS (4/4)



**Wide angle rear view mirror 7**  
(depending on the vehicle)

Lower the sun visor **6** to access the special mirror to increase side vision when manoeuvring.



The various zones seen by the driver are:

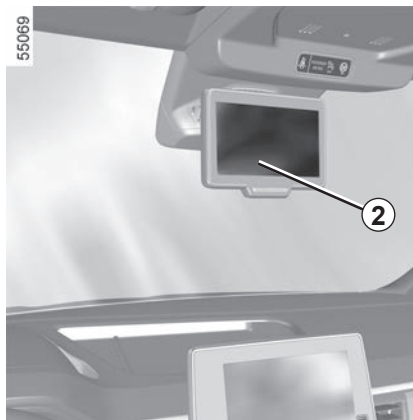
- **G** in the wide-angle rear view mirror;
- **H** via the front passenger window;
- **I** in the exterior rear view mirror.

## CAMERA REAR VIEW (1/4)



When the ignition is switched on, the **2** screen on the roof centre console displays the view behind the vehicle that is transmitted by the camera **1**.

**Note:** the screen **2** can be positioned left to right or top to bottom.



### De-icing the rear camera

In cold weather, this function enables rapid electrical de-icing of the camera.

De-icing is carried out simultaneously with electrical rear view mirror de-icing  
➡ 3.5 ➡ 3.9.

Make sure that the **1** camera is not obscured (by dirt, mud, snow, condensation etc.).



This function is an additional aid. It cannot, therefore, under any circumstances replace the vigilance or the responsibility of the driver.

The driver should always be ready for sudden incidents while driving: always ensure that there are no small, narrow moving obstacles (such as a child, animal, pushchair, bicycle, stone, post, etc.) in the blind spot when manoeuvring.

## CAMERA REAR VIEW (2/4)



### Operation

The camera's field of vision does not cover the entire area behind the vehicle, particularly the blind spot area **A**.

On vehicles equipped with the Stop and Start function, the display remains active when the engine is in standby.  
➔ 2.8.



### Switching off the function

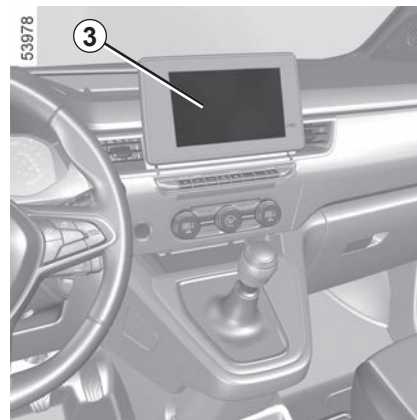
The display switches off:

- at least two minutes after the ignition is switched off;
- immediately after locking the vehicle.

Objects which appear on the edge of screen **2** may be deformed.

In very bright light (snow, vehicle in sunshine, etc.), the camera view may be partially disturbed.

In low brightness or poor weather, the image on the screen may be distorted.



### Special features related to the reverse gear

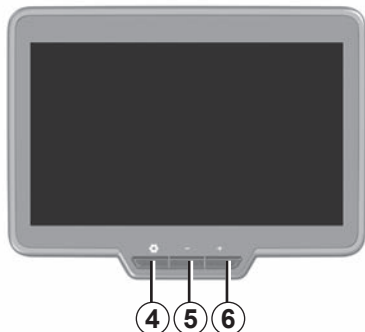
When the reverse gear is engaged, the camera located on the rear-end door displays the area to the rear of the vehicle. ➔ 2.142.

### Vehicles fitted with a multimedia screen 3

When the vehicle is reversing, consider the images transmitted by the rear view camera (multimedia screen) in addition to the information available through the rear view mirror as there remains a rear view blind spot **A** ➔ 2.142.

## CAMERA REAR VIEW (3/4)

55072



### Adjusting the display and the camera

Press the **4** button once to access the settings menu.

Repeatedly press the **4** button to scroll through the setting options until you reach the desired setting option.

Use the **5** “-” and **6** “+” buttons to adjust or activate/deactivate the desired setting.

### Selecting the settings:

- a) adjusting the brightness;
- b) adjusting the vertical viewing angle;
- c) adjusting the horizontal viewing angle;
- d) activating/deactivating automatic adjustment of the vertical angle according to the vehicle speed;
- e) depending on the vehicle, activating/deactivating the reversing camera display;
- f) reset, to reset the default settings.

Exit the settings menu:

- automatically after approximately five seconds and without pressing any buttons;
- or
- by pressing the **5** “-” or **6** “+” buttons on the “X” tab.

**Note:** the vertical angle will not be automatically adjusted according to the vehicle speed if the vertical viewing angle has been set to the maximum.

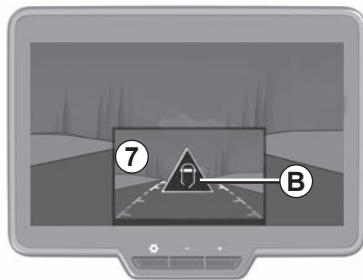
Each time the vehicle is started, the function returns to the settings saved at the last engine stop.



**For safety reasons, carry out any adjustments while the vehicle is stationary.**

Adjust the field of vision for the system and the door mirrors before driving the vehicle (especially after changing the vehicle load).

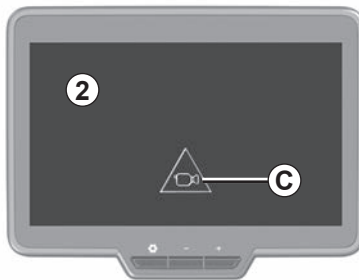
## CAMERA REAR VIEW (4/4)



55689

### Special feature

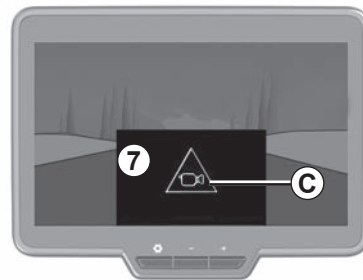
When the vehicle is reversing, on vehicles not equipped with the multimedia system, when the rear door is opened or incorrectly closed the warning light **B** appears on the display **7**.



55687

### Operating faults

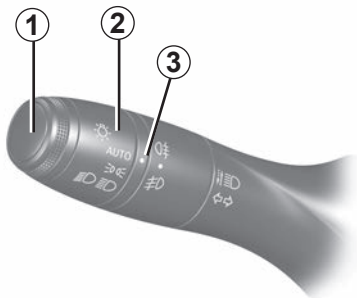
If the system detects an operating fault, the warning light **C** appears on a black background on the screen **2** or, depending on the vehicle, on the display **7** for the reversing camera. This may be caused by a fault affecting the camera or screen (clearness, fixed image, delayed communication etc.).



55688

If the warning light **C** continues to appear on a black background, please consult an approved dealer.

## EXTERIOR LIGHTING AND SIGNALS (1/6)



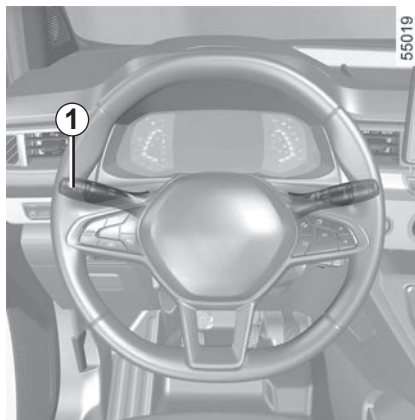
### Side lights

Turn ring **2** until the symbol is opposite mark **3**.

This indicator light on the instrument panel comes on.

### Daytime running lights function

The daytime running lights come on automatically with no action on stalk **1** when the engine is started, and they go off once the engine is switched off.



### Dipped beam headlights

#### Manual operation

Turn ring **2** until the symbol is opposite mark **3**. This indicator light on the instrument panel comes on.

#### Automatic operation (depending on the vehicle)

Turn ring **2** until the **AUTO** symbol is opposite mark **3**: with the engine running, the dipped beam headlights switch on or off automatically depending on the brightness of the light outside, without any action on stalk **1**.

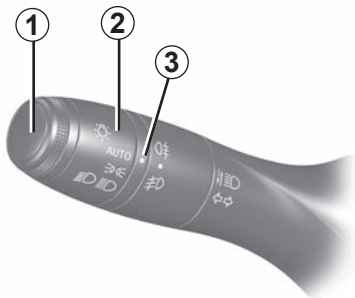
Depending on the vehicle, the dipped beam headlights will appear automatically after several sweeps of the wind-screen wiper blades.



Before driving at night, check that the electrical equipment is operating correctly and adjust the headlight beams (if your vehicle is not carrying its normal load). ➔ 1.139. As a general precaution, check that the lights are not obscured (by dirt, mud, snow or objects being transported).



## EXTERIOR LIGHTING AND SIGNALS (2/6)



55023



### Main beam headlights

With the engine running and the dipped beam headlights lit, push stalk **1**. This indicator light on the instrument panel comes on.

To return to the dipped headlight position, pull stalk **1** towards you again.

### “Raise lights during driving” function

(depending on the vehicle)

When the main beam headlights are activated, the “Raise lights during driving” function improves driver visibility by automatically raising the dipped beam headlight and the main beam headlights.

During deactivation of the main beam headlights, the dipped beam headlights return to their original position.



### Automatic main beam headlights

Depending on the vehicle, this system switches the main beam headlights on and off automatically. It uses a camera located behind the interior rear-view mirror to detect vehicles that are being followed and those coming in the opposite direction.

The system may encounter difficulties under certain conditions, including:

- extreme weather conditions (rain, snow, fog, etc.);
- obstruction in front of the windscreen or camera;
- when a following or oncoming vehicle has weak or hidden lighting;
- incorrect settings for the front headlights;
- reflective systems;
- ...

The main beam headlights come on automatically if:

- exterior light is weak;
- no other vehicles or lighting are detected;
- the vehicle speed is above approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).

If any of the above conditions are not fulfilled, the system switches to dipped beam headlights.

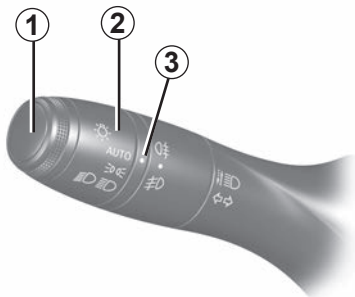
**Note:** make sure the windscreen is not obscured (dirt, mud, snow, condensation etc.).

### To activate automatic main beam headlights:

- turn the ring **2** until the **AUTO** symbol is opposite the mark **3**;
- push the stalk **1**.

Warning light  comes on the instrument panel.

## EXTERIOR LIGHTING AND SIGNALS (3/6)



55023



### Automatic main beam headlights (continued)

#### To deactivate automatic main beam headlights:

- turn ring **2** to a position other than **AUTO**;
- or
- pull the stalk **1**.

Warning light  goes out on the instrument panel.

**Note:** the main beam headlights will be activated upon deactivation of the automatic main beam headlights function.

### Operating faults

When the message “Check Automatic Lighting” appears on the instrument panel, the system is deactivated. Consult an approved dealer.

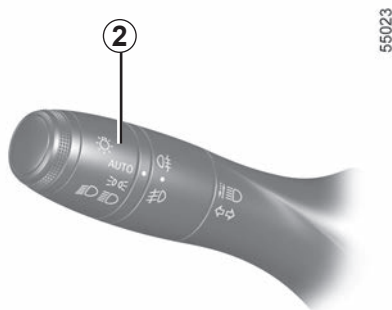


Using the portable navigation system at night in the windscreen area below the camera may disturb the operation of the “automatic main beam headlights” system (risk of reflection on the windscreen).



The “automatic main beam headlights” system should under no circumstances be used to replace driver attention and responsibility with regard to vehicle lighting and adapting to light, visibility and traffic conditions.

## EXTERIOR LIGHTING AND SIGNALS (4/6)



### Switching off the lights

The lights will go out automatically when the engine is switched off, the driver's door is opened or the vehicle is locked. In this case, the next time the engine is started the lights will be switched back on according to the position of the ring **2**.

**Note:** if the fog lights are lit, the lights are not switched off automatically.

### Welcome and goodbye function

(depending on the vehicle)

Once the function is activated, the day-time running lights and the rear side lights will light up automatically upon detection of the card or when the vehicle is unlocked.

They switch off automatically:

- approximately one minute after lighting up;
  - when starting the engine based on the position of the lighting stalk;
- or
- upon locking the vehicle.

### Activating/deactivating the function

For activation or deactivation of the external reception, refer to the multimedia manual.

Select **“ON”** or **“OFF”**.

### Lights-on reminder buzzer

If the lights are on after the engine is switched off, a warning beep sounds when the driver's door is opened to warn you that the lights are still on.

### Operating faults

When the message “WARNING: Check Lighting” with warning light



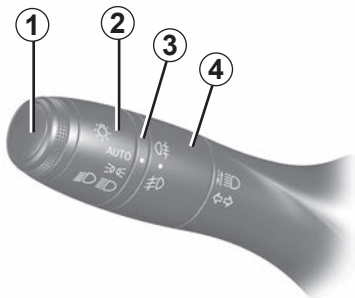
is displayed and warning light



flashes on the instrument panel, this indicates that there is a lighting fault.

Consult an authorised dealer.

## EXTERIOR LIGHTING AND SIGNALS (5/6)



55023

### “See-me-home lighting” function

This function enables you to briefly switch on the side lights and dipped beam headlights (e.g. to provide light when opening a gate).

With the engine lights switched off, the 2 ring in **AUTO**, pull the lever 1 towards you: the side lights and dipped beam headlights will switch on for approximately 30 seconds along with the

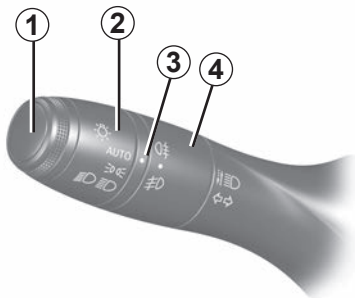


warning lights on the instrument panel.

To increase this duration, you may pull the stalk up to four times (total time restricted to approximately two minutes). The message “Follow-me Home for \_ \_ \_” along with the time the lights will be on for is displayed on the instrument panel to confirm this action. You can then lock your vehicle.

To switch off the lights before they go out automatically, turn ring 2 to any position, then return it to position **AUTO**.

## EXTERIOR LIGHTING AND SIGNALS (6/6)



55023



### Front fog lights

(depending on the vehicle)

Turn centre ring **4** on the stalk **1** until the symbol faces mark **3**, then release it.

Operation of the fog lights depends on the exterior lighting position selected, and an indicator light will light up on the instrument panel.



### Rear fog lights

Turn centre ring **4** on the stalk until the symbol faces mark **3**, then release it.

Operation of the fog lights depends on the exterior lighting selected, and an indicator light will light up on the instrument panel.

Do not forget to switch off the fog lights when they are no longer needed, to avoid inconveniencing other road users.

### Switching off the lights

Turn the centre ring **4** again until the **3** symbol is opposite the symbol for the fog lights. The corresponding indicator light on the instrument panel goes out.

The rear fog lights switch off when the exterior lights are switched off.

### Cornering lights

(depending on vehicle)

**When driving in forward gear**, with the vehicle speed below approximately 25 mph (40 km/h), whenever the dipped beam headlights are on: under certain conditions (the steering wheel at an angle, the indicator lights on etc.), when turning a corner one of the front fog lights will switch on to light the inside of the bend.

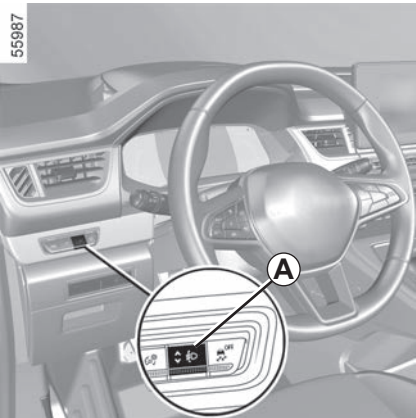
**When reverse gear is engaged** and the dipped beam headlights are on the two front fog lights illuminate automatically.

**Note:** when shifting from reverse gear into forward gear (for example during a parking manoeuvre), the two fog lights are activated until the vehicle exceeds approximately 6 mph (10 km/h).

When driving in fog or snow, or when transporting objects which are higher than the roof, the headlights do not come on automatically.

Switching on the fog lights remains the responsibility of the driver: the indicator lights on the instrument panel inform you whether the fog lights are lit (indicator light on) or not (indicator light not on).

# HEADLIGHT BEAM ADJUSTMENT (1/2)



Switch **A** is used to adjust the height of the headlight beams according to the load.

With the dipped beam headlights lit, press or lift switch **A** as many times as is necessary to select the required position on the instrument panel.

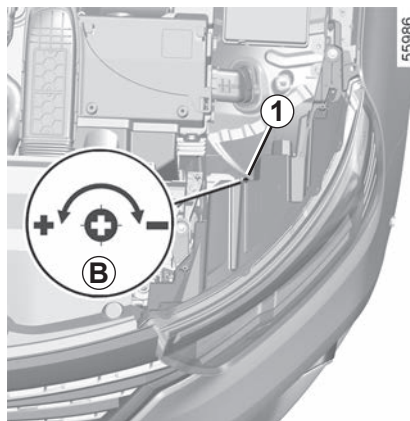
**Note:** depending on the vehicle, when the engine is started, the position selected is displayed on the instrument panel for approximately 30 seconds and for 5 seconds each time switch **A** is pressed.

	Examples of positions for adjusting control <b>A</b> according to the load	
	Van version	Estate versions
<b>Driver alone or with front passenger</b>	0	0
<b>All seats occupied</b>	-	1
<b>Driver with passengers and luggage (or load) reaching the maximum permissible all-up weight</b>	-	2
<b>Driver without passengers and luggage (or load) reaching the maximum permissible all-up weight</b>	4	3

The table below gives some examples. In all cases, adjust control **A** according to the vehicle load so that the road can be seen and other drivers are not dazzled.

## HEADLIGHT BEAM ADJUSTMENT (2/2)

When driving on the left in a left-hand drive vehicle (or vice versa), you must adjust your lights temporarily during your stay.



### Temporary adjustment

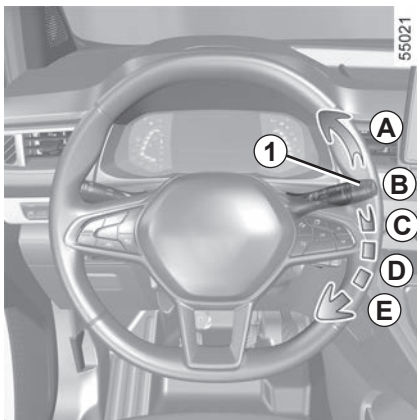
Open the bonnet and identify the marking **B** next to one of the front headlight projectors.

### Operating principle

Using a screwdriver or similar, turn the bolt **1** a half turn towards the - symbol to lower the beams.

Return to the original position once your trip is over: turn the bolt **1** by a half turn towards the + symbol to raise the beams.

## WINDSCREEN WASH, WIPE (1/4)



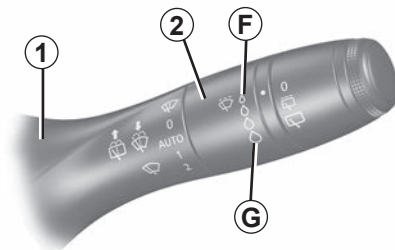
### Your vehicle is fitted with a front windscreen wiper equipped with a rain sensor

The rain sensor is located on the windscreen, in front of the interior rear-view mirror.

#### **A** single sweep

A short push will trigger one sweep of the wipers.

#### **B** stop



#### **C** automatic wiper function

When this position is selected, the system detects water on the windscreen and triggers the wipers at a suitable wiping speed. It is possible to change the triggering threshold and the time sweeps by turning ring 2:

- **F**: minimum sensitivity
- **G**: maximum sensitivity

The higher the sensitivity, the quicker the wipers will react and the faster the wipe.

When activating automatic wiping or when increasing sensitivity, one sweep of the blades is performed.

#### **Note:**

- the rain sensor is only intended as a driving aid. In the event of reduced visibility, the driver should manually activate the wipers. In foggy weather or during snowfalls, wiping is not automatically triggered and remains under the driver's control;
- in the event of temperatures below zero, automatic wiping is not activated when the vehicle is started. It is automatically activated as soon as the vehicle exceeds a certain speed (approximately 5 mph (8 km/h));
- do not activate automatic wiping in dry weather;
- fully de-ice the windscreen before activating automatic wiping.



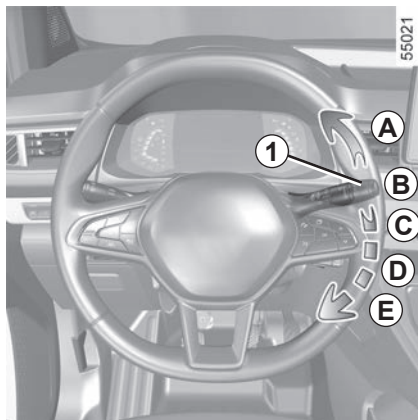
## WINDSCREEN WASH, WIPE (2/4)

### Operating faults

In the event of a malfunction of the automatic wiping, the wiper is set to intermittent wiping. Contact an authorised dealer.

The operation of the rain sensor can be disturbed in the event of:

- damaged wiper blades; a screen of water or traces left by a blade in the sensor's detection zone may increase the response time of the automatic wiper, or increase the wiping frequency;
- a windscreen with any chip or crack level with the sensor, or a windscreen covered in dust, dirt, insects, ice, the use of washing wax and water-repellent chemicals; the automatic wiping will be less sensitive, or even unresponsive.



**D** slow continuous wiping

**E** fast continuous wiping

### Special note

**When driving the vehicle**, the wiping speed slows down whenever the vehicle stops. For example, fast wiping speed will slow to normal wiping speed. As soon as the vehicle moves off, wiping will return to the speed originally selected.

If stalk **1** is operated, it overrides and cancels the automatic function.

### Precautions

- In the event of ice, check whether the blades are stuck to the windscreen before operating the wiping mechanism. If you activate the wipers while the blades are stuck down with ice, you may risk damaging both the blade and the wiper motor.
- Do not activate the wipers on a dry screen. This will lead to premature wear or damage to the blades.

## WINDSCREEN WASH, WIPE (3/4)

### Specific front wiper position (service position)

This position enables the blades to be lifted to remove them from the windscreen.

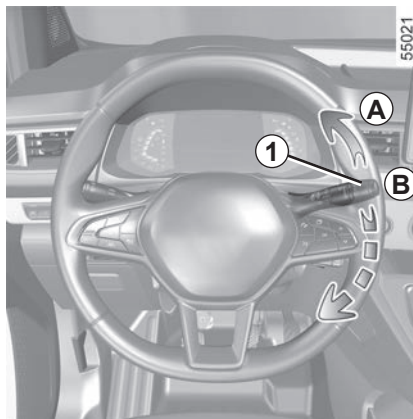
This can be useful:

- to clean the blades;
- to release the blades from the windscreen in winter;
- replace the blades ➔ 5.38.

With the ignition on and the engine off, lift the stalk **1** twice to position **A** (single sweep). The blades stop slightly away from the bonnet.

To return the blades to the lowered position, with the ignition on, ensure that the wipers have folded down onto the windscreen, then move the stalk **1** to position **A** (single sweep).

Before switching on the ignition, place the wipers on the windscreen. Otherwise, there may be a risk of damage to the bonnet or the wipers when they are switched on.



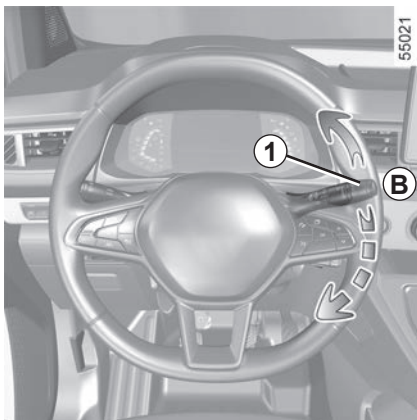
Before any action involving the windscreen (washing the vehicle, de-icing, cleaning the windscreen, etc.) return stalk **1** to position **B** (stop).

**Risk of injury and/or damage.**

In the event of obstacles on the windscreen (dirt, snow, ice etc.), clean the windscreen (including the central area located behind the interior rear view mirror) before starting the wipers (risk of motor overheating).

If an object is preventing a blade from moving, it may stop functioning. Remove the obstacle and reactivate the wiper using the wiper stalk.

## WINDSCREEN WASH, WIPE (4/4)



### Windscreen washer

With the ignition on, pull stalk **1** then release.

A longer pull will trigger, in addition to the windscreen washer, two sweeps of the wipers followed, a few seconds later, by a third.

On vehicles fitted with a multimedia screen, you can choose to activate or disable the third sweep of the blades.  
➡ 1.119

### Note:

In temperatures below zero, the washer liquid risks freezing to the windscreen, thereby reducing visibility. Heat the windscreen using the demister control before cleaning.



When working in the engine compartment, ensure that the windscreen wiper stalk is in position **B** (stop).

**Risk of injury.**

### Efficiency of a wiper blade

Check the condition of the wiper blades. How long they last depends on you:

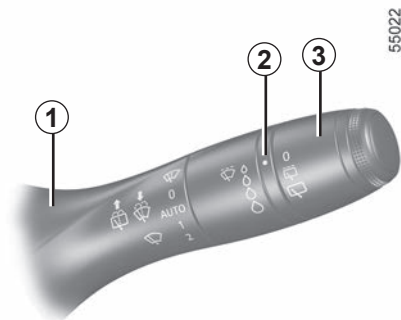
- it must remain clean: clean the blade and the screen regularly with soapy water;
- do not use it when the screen is dry;
- free it from the screen when it has not been used for a long time.

In all cases, replace it as soon as it begins to lose efficiency: approximately once a year. ➡ 5.38.

### Precaution for using the wipers

- In freezing or snowy weather conditions, clear the screen before starting the wipers (risk of motor overheating);
- ensure that no objects are obstructing the travel of the blade.

## REAR SCREEN WASHER, WIPER (1/2)



### Rear screen wiper

With the ignition on, rotate the ring **3** on the lever **1** until the symbol is opposite the reference point **2**:

- **stop;**
- **intermittent wiping;**  
The wipers will pause for several seconds between sweeps. Wiping frequency varies with vehicle speed;
- **slow continuous wiping.**

To stop the operation, pivot ring **3** again.

#### Note:

When washing using a roller type car wash, return the ring **3** on the stalk **1** to the stop position to deactivate automatic wiping.

Follow usage recommendations.

Do not use the wiper arm to open or close the tailgate.



Before any action involving the rear screen (washing the vehicle, de-icing, cleaning, etc.) return stalk **1** to the stop position.

**Risk of injury and/or damage.**

### Efficiency of a wiper blade

Check the condition of the wiper blades. How long they last depends on you:

- it must remain clean: clean the blade and the screen regularly with soapy water;
- do not use it when the screen is dry;
- free it from the screen when it has not been used for a long time.

In all cases, replace it as soon as it begins to lose efficiency: approximately once a year. ➔ 5.38.

### Precaution for using the wipers

- In freezing or snowy weather conditions, clear the screen before starting the wipers (risk of motor overheating);
- ensure that no objects are obstructing the travel of the blade.

## REAR SCREEN WASHER, WIPER (2/2)

### Activation/deactivation of the rear screen wiper

Engaging reverse gear triggers intermittent wiping (if the front wipers are in operation). If your vehicle is equipped with a vehicle settings customisation menu, you can opt to activate or deactivate this function. ➔ 1.119.

In the event of obstacles present on the rear window (dirt, snow, etc.), the wiper will try to sweep away all the obstacles. If an obstacle prevents the blade from moving, it can be stopped. Remove the obstacle, wait for around 30 seconds and reactivate the wiper using the wiper stalk.

### Precautions

- In the event of ice, check that the blades are not stuck to the windscreen before operating the wipers. If you activate the wiper while the blade is blocked by ice, you risk damaging both the blade and the wiping motor.
- Do not operate the wipers on a dry screen. This will lead to the premature wear or damage to the blades.



55022



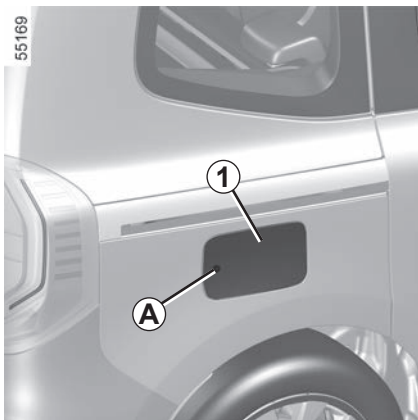
### Rear screen wash/wipe

With the ignition on, push and hold stalk **1**, then release.

Holding the stalk for longer will trigger (in addition to the windscreen washer) two sweeps of the wipers followed, a few seconds later, by a third (drip wiping function).

When the stalk is released, it returns to the rear wipe position.

## TANK (1/3)

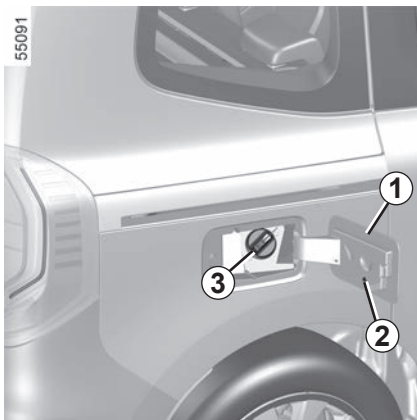


**Useable capacity of the tank: 12 gal (54 litres) approximately.**

With the vehicle unlocked, to open cover **1**, press area **A** then release. The cover **1** opens.

Use the cap holder **2** on the flap **1** during filling to hold the cap **3** in place.

For details on filling the fuel tank, refer to the information on "Filling with fuel". To close it, press on the fuel filler flap by hand, as far as it will go.



### Fuel grade

**Use a high-grade fuel** that complies with the legislation in force in each country and which **must** comply with the specifications given on the label on the cover **1**. ➔ 6.7.



To fill up with fuel, the engine must be off (and not only on standby in the case of vehicles equipped with the **STOP and START** function): you must switch off the ignition ➔ 2.4, ➔ 2.5.

**Fire hazard.**



### Filler cap: this is specific.

If you have to replace it, make sure it is identical to the original cap. Contact an approved Dealer.

Never place the cap near a source of heat or flame.

Do not wash the filler area with a high-pressure washer.



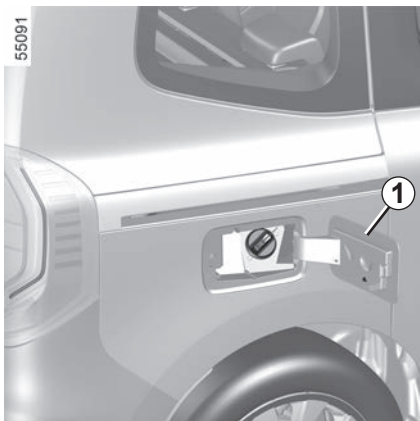
Do not mix even small amounts of petrol (un-leaded or E85) with diesel.

Do not use ethanol-based fuel if your vehicle is not compatible with this fuel.

Do not add reagent to the fuel – otherwise you risk damaging the engine ➔ 1.150.

If you wish to add an additive to the fuel, use a product approved by our Technical Department. Consult an approved dealer.

## TANK (2/3)



### Diesel version

It is **essential** to use diesel fuel that conforms with the information given on the label inside cover **1**.

### Petrol version

It is **essential** to use unleaded petrol. The octane rating (RON) must comply with the information given on the label on the cover **1**. ➔ 6.7.

## Filling with fuel

With the ignition off, insert the nozzle and insert it **fully** before turning it on to fill the fuel tank (risk of splashing).

Keep the nozzle in this position throughout the entire filling operation.

When the pump cuts out automatically at the end of the filling procedure, a maximum of two further filling attempts may be made, as there must be sufficient space in the fuel tank to allow for expansion.

Make sure that no water enters the fuel tank during filling. The cover **1** and its surround must remain clean.

### Special case

When the vehicle has been stopped for around three months, **you must add fuel to prevent damage to the fuel pump**.

To do this, with the ignition off, top-up at least 1.10 gallons (**5 litres**) then start the engine to operate the pump and renew the fuel in the circuit.

If it is not possible to add at least 1.10 gallons (5 litres) of fuel due to the fuel level in the tank, drive the vehicle until the tank has capacity.

### Petrol version

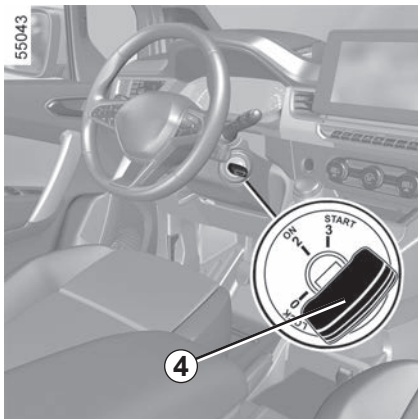
Using leaded petrol will damage the antipollution system and may lead to a loss of warranty.

To ensure that the fuel tank is not filled with leaded petrol, the fuel tank filler neck contains a restrictor fitted with a foolproof system which **only allows the nozzle for unleaded petrol to be used** (at the pump).

After filling, check that the cap and cover are closed.

Fuel types that conform to European standards with which the engines of vehicles sold in Europe are compatible: refer to the table ➔ 6.7.

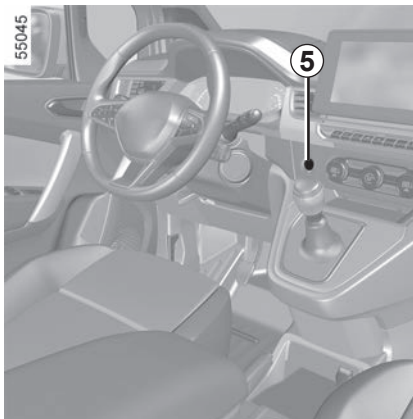
## TANK (3/3)



### Running out of fuel on diesel versions

#### Vehicles with key/remote control

- Turn the ignition key **4** to the “On” position **ON 2** and wait a few minutes before starting to allow the fuel circuit to be primed;
- turn the key to position **START 3**. If the engine does not start, repeat the procedure;
- If the engine does not start after several attempts, contact an approved dealer.



#### Vehicles with card

With the card in the passenger compartment, press the start button **5** without pressing any of the pedals. Wait a few minutes before starting.

This will enable the fuel circuit to be primed. If the engine does not start, repeat the procedure.

If the engine does not start after several attempts, please contact an authorised dealer.



No modifications whatsoever are permitted on any part of the fuel supply system (electronic units, wiring, fuel circuit, injectors, protective covers, etc.) as this may be dangerous (unless undertaken by qualified Network personnel).



### Persistent fuel odour

If you notice a persistent fuel odour you should:

- stop the vehicle as soon as traffic conditions allow and switch off the ignition;
- switch on the hazard warning lights and ask your passengers to leave the vehicle and stay clear of the traffic;
- contact an approved Dealer.



## REAGENT TANK (1/4)

Please ensure that you comply with the legislation of your country. It is important to remember that failure to respect regulations in force could lead to legal action being taken against the vehicle owner.

### Operating principle

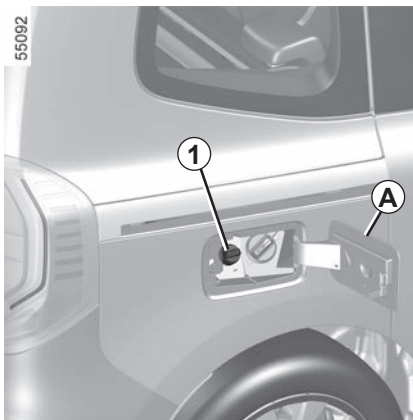
The reagent is intended for diesel engines fitted with the SCR (selective catalytic reduction) system.

The use of reagents reduces exhaust emissions by transforming the pollutants into water vapour and nitrogen.

Reagent consumption in real time depends on vehicle usage conditions, the equipment fitted, and driving style.

### Reagent quality

Use **only reagents which conform to standard ISO 22241** and in accordance with the mark on the tank filler cap.



### Filling

**Useable capacity of the tank: 3.74 gallons (17 litres) approximately.**

With the ignition switched off, open the cover **A**, then unscrew the cap **1**.

**Note:** ammonium hydroxide vapour may escape from the cap opening when the tank temperature is high.

To fill up with reagent, the engine must be stopped (and not only on standby in the case of vehicles equipped with the function) **STOP and START**: you must switch off the ignition ➔ 2.4 ➔ 2.5.



If the "XXX miles (XXX km) lockout refill AdBlue" message appears, fill the reagent tank and refer to the filling instructions.

**Risk of immobilisation of the vehicle.**



**Fuel filler cap: this is a specific type.**

If you have to replace it, make sure it is identical to the original cap. Contact an approved Dealer. Do not wash the filler area with a high pressure washer.



The reagent must not come into contact with eyes or skin. If it does, wash the affected area with plenty of cold water. If necessary, consult a doctor.

## REAGENT TANK (2/4)

### Filling (continued)

The tank can be filled at the pump. With the ignition off, insert the nozzle **fully** before activating it to fill the fuel tank (risk of splashing). Keep the nozzle in this position throughout the entire filling operation.

When the pump cuts out automatically at the end of the filling procedure, a maximum of two further filling attempts may be made, as there must be sufficient space in the fuel tank to allow for expansion.

In other filling cases, it is essential to read the information shown on the reagent container (e.g. the can or bottle).

### Precautions for use

When filling:

- **handle the reagent with care. They can damage clothes, shoes, body-work components etc.;**
- make sure that no water enters the fuel tank.

If the reagent overflows, or contaminates any paintwork, clean the affected area quickly with plenty of cold water and a soft cloth.

**Note:** if the reagent crystallises, use a soft sponge.

#### In extreme cold weather conditions

**In frosty weather conditions, the reagent tank should be refilled when the**




indicator and the message “TOP UP AdBlue before 1200 km” appear on the instrument panel.

#### Special cases

The reagent fluid freezes below about -10°C.

In these conditions, do not attempt filling when the fluid is frozen. In the event of needing to top up or fill the tank with re-

agent () on), park the vehicle in a hotter location if possible so that the reagent becomes liquid again. Otherwise, have a qualified professional top up or fill up with reagent fluid.

After filling the reagent tank, check that the cap and cover are closed, start the engine and **WAIT 10 seconds with the vehicle stationary, engine running** before setting off again.

If this operation is not carried out, the filling of the tank will not be taken into account automatically until after several dozens of minutes of driving.

The message “--- TOP UP AdBlue” and/or the warning lights will continue to appear until the filling has been registered by the system.






No work whatsoever is permitted on any part of the system. To prevent damage, only qualified personnel from our network may work on the system.

## REAGENT TANK (3/4)

### Maintenance/Range







The information displayed on the instrument panel may be accompanied by a beep.

Indicator lights	Message	What to do?
–	“Top Up AdBlue before 2400 km“	When the message is displayed when the ignition is switched on, you have <b>less than 1,488 miles (2,400 km) range</b> . Plan to refill, or have an Approved Dealer <b>refill the reagent</b> in the tank.
 comes on.	“TOP UP AdBlue before 1200 km“	When the message is displayed when the ignition is switched on, you have <b>between 744 miles (1,200 km) and 496 miles (800 km) range</b> . Plan to refill, or have an Approved Dealer <b>refill the reagent</b> in the tank.
 comes on.	“XXX KM failure Top up AdBlue“	The message is displayed when the ignition is switched on and is repeated: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Approximately every 62 miles (100 km), you have <b>between about 496 miles (800 km) and 124 miles (200 km) range</b>;</li><li>– approximately every 31 miles (50 km), you have <b>a range of less than 124 miles (200 km)</b>.</li></ul> In any event, fill or have an Approved Dealer <b>fill the reagent tank as soon as possible</b> .
 flashes.	“0 KM failure Top up AdBlue“	<b>The engine will not start.</b> To restart, you must fill the reagent tank yourself.

## REAGENT TANK (4/4)

### System faults

When the indicator lights light up, this may be accompanied by a beep.

Indicator lights	Message	Readings
 and  come on.	<p>“Check Anti- Pollution System”</p> <p>“AdBlue quality to check”</p> <p>“AdBlue injection to check”</p>	Indicates a fault in the system. Contact your approved Dealer as soon as possible.
 and  come on.	“XXX KM failure antipollution”	<p>Indicates a system fault and that in <b>less than 496 miles (800 km) it will become impossible to restart the vehicle.</b></p> <p>These warnings are repeated:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– every 62 miles (100 km) until there are <b>between 500 miles (800 km) and 124 miles (200 km) remaining</b> until the vehicle cannot be restarted;</li> <li>– Every 31 miles (50 km) when there is <b>less than 124 miles (200 km) left</b> before the vehicle cannot be restarted.</li> </ul> <p>Contact your approved Dealer as soon as possible.</p>
 and  come on.	“0 KM failure antipollution”	Indicates that after the ignition is switched off <b>the vehicle will not restart.</b> Call an approved Dealer.



## ***Section 2: Driving***

Running in . . . . .	2.2
Ignition switch . . . . .	2.3
Starting, stopping the engine . . . . .	2.4
Stop and Start function . . . . .	2.8
Special features of petrol versions . . . . .	2.12
Special features of diesel versions: particle filter . . . . .	2.14
Gear lever, Handbrake . . . . .	2.16
Electronic parking brake . . . . .	2.17
Eco-driving . . . . .	2.21
Maintenance and antipollution advice . . . . .	2.29
Environment . . . . .	2.30
Tyre pressure warning and monitoring system . . . . .	2.31
Driver correction devices and aids . . . . .	2.42
Lane departure warning . . . . .	2.48
Lane Keeping Assist . . . . .	2.53
Blind spot warning . . . . .	2.59
Safe distance alert . . . . .	2.69
Advanced Safety . . . . .	2.73
Fatigue detection warning . . . . .	2.90
Detection of road signs . . . . .	2.92
Speed limiter . . . . .	2.96
Cruise control . . . . .	2.100
Adaptive cruise control . . . . .	2.105
Highway and Traffic Jam Companion . . . . .	2.118
Parking distance control . . . . .	2.134
Reversing camera . . . . .	2.142
Assisted parking . . . . .	2.145
Automatic gearbox . . . . .	2.150
“Overspeed” function . . . . .	2.154
Fast idle speed . . . . .	2.155
Emergency call . . . . .	2.156

## RUNNING IN

### Petrol version

For the first **600 miles** (1,000 km), do not exceed 78 mph (130 km/h) in the highest gear, or 3,000 to 3,500 rpm.

You may only expect top performance from your vehicle after approximately **1,800 miles (3,000 km)**.

**Service intervals:** refer to the Maintenance Document for your vehicle.

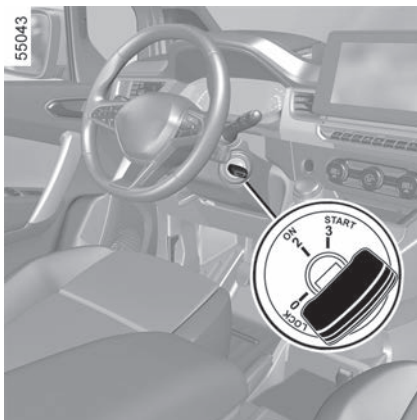
### Diesel version

For the first **1,000 miles (1,500 km)**, do not exceed 80 mph (130 km/h) in the highest gear, or 2,500 rpm. After completing this mileage you may drive faster, although you may only expect top performance after approximately 3,600 miles (6,000 km).

During the running in period, do not accelerate hard while the engine is still cold and do not let the engine over-rev.

**Service intervals:** refer to the Maintenance Document for your vehicle.

## IGNITION SWITCH: vehicle with key



### Ignition switch

#### Off position LOCK 0 (steering lock applied)

To lock: remove the key and turn the steering wheel until the steering column locks.

To unlock: turn the key and the steering wheel slightly.

#### “Ignition” position ON 2

The ignition is switched on: Any accessories (radio etc.) can be used.

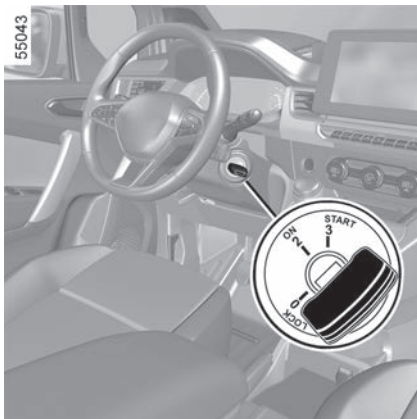
#### “Start” position START 3

If the engine fails to start at the first attempt, the key must be turned back before the starter can be activated again. Release the key as soon as the engine starts.

**Note:** on diesel versions, several seconds may pass between turning the key and the engine starting to allow for engine preheating.



# STARTING, STOPPING THE ENGINE: vehicle with key



## Starting the engine

### To start:

On vehicles equipped with automatic gearboxes, set the lever to position **P**.



Never switch off the ignition before the vehicle has stopped completely. Once the engine has stopped, the brake servo, power-assisted steering etc., and the passive safety devices such as the airbags and pretensioners will no longer operate.

### Petrol versions

- Activate the starter **without accelerating**;
- release the key as soon as the engine starts.



### Diesel versions

- Turn the ignition key to the “**ON**” position **2** and hold this position until the engine preheating light goes off;
- turn the key to the start position “**START**” **3** **without pressing the accelerator**;
- release the key as soon as the engine starts.

**Special note:** if starting the engine when the outdoor temperature is very low (below - 10 ° C): hold down the clutch pedal until the engine starts.

### Stopping the engine

With the engine idling, turn the key to the “**LOCK**” position **0**.



Never start your vehicle while freewheeling on a gradient. Risk of non-activation of power-assisted steering.

**There is a risk of accidents.**

**Note:** on vehicles equipped with a manual gearbox, in the event of engine stalling the message “Press Clutch” will be displayed on the instrument panel. Fully press the clutch pedal to restart the engine.



### Driver's responsibility when parking or stopping the vehicle

Never leave an animal, child or adult who is not self-sufficient alone in your vehicle, even for a short time.

They may pose a risk to themselves or to others by starting the engine, activating equipment such as the electric windows or locking the doors, for example.

Also, in hot and/or sunny weather, please remember that the temperature inside the passenger compartment increases very quickly.

**RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY.**

# STARTING, STOPPING THE ENGINE: vehicle with card (1/3)

55939



The card must be in detection zone **1** or, depending on the vehicle, in detection zone **2**.

## To start:

- vehicles with an automatic gearbox, in the **P** position, press the brake pedal, press the **3** button, then release the brake pedal once the engine has started;
- vehicles with a manual gearbox, press the brake pedal and press the **3** button, then release the brake pedal once the engine has started. If a gear is engaged, also press the clutch pedal.

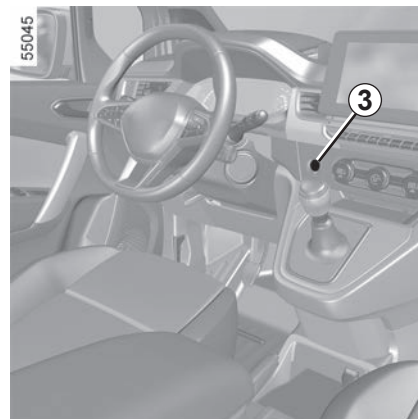
56785



## Special features

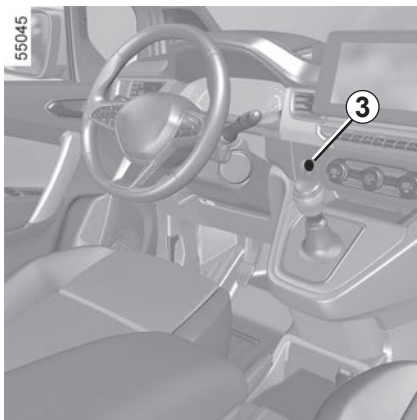
- If any of the starting conditions are not met, the message “Press Brake + START” or “Press Clutch + START” or “Select Gearbox Position “P”” is displayed on the instrument panel;
- in some cases, it will be necessary to move the steering wheel whilst pressing the start button **3** to help unlock the steering column; the message “Turn Steering Wheel + START” will warn you of this;

55045



**Note:** on vehicles equipped with a manual gearbox, in the event of engine stalling the message “Press Clutch” will be displayed on the instrument panel. Fully press the clutch pedal to restart the engine.

## STARTING, STOPPING THE ENGINE: vehicle with card (2/3)



### “Hands-free” starting with the tailgate open

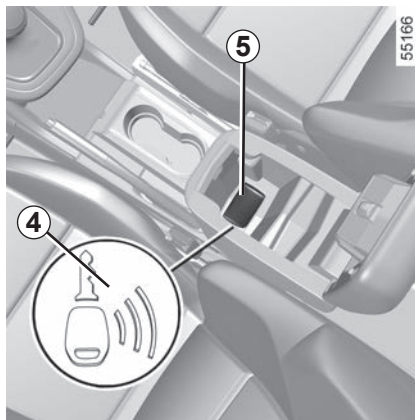
In this case, the card should not be located in the luggage compartment, to prevent the risk of loss.

### Accessories function

(switching on the ignition)

Once you have gained access to your vehicle, you may use some of its functions (radio, navigation, wipers, etc.).

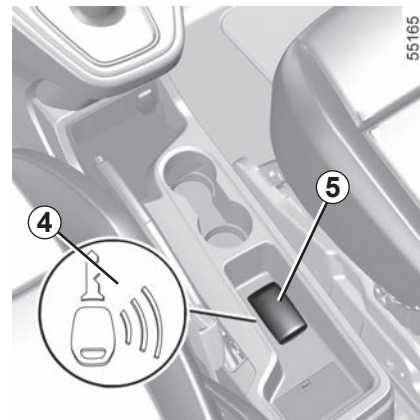
To use the other functions, with the card in the passenger compartment, press the **3** button without pressing the pedals.



### Operating faults

In certain cases, the hands-free card may not work:

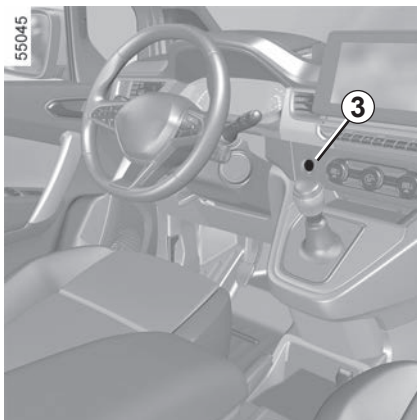
- when the card battery is dead;
- near to appliances operating on the same frequency as the card (monitor, mobile phone, video game, etc.);
- vehicle located in a high electromagnetic radiation zone.



The message “Place card on zone + START” appears on the instrument panel.

Press the brake or clutch pedal, then place the card **5** (button side) on the placement area marked by the **4** symbol. Press the **3** button to start the vehicle. The message goes out.

## STARTING, STOPPING THE ENGINE: vehicle with card (3/3)



### Conditions for stopping the engine

The vehicle must be stationary, lever in position **P** on vehicles with an automatic gearbox.

With the card in the vehicle, press button **3**: the engine stops. The steering column is locked when a door is opened or the vehicle is locked.

If the card is no longer in the passenger compartment or if the card's battery is worn, when the vehicle is stationary and you try to switch the engine off, the message "Keycard absent: press/hold START" appears on the instrument panel: press button **3** for longer than two seconds. If the card is no longer in the passenger compartment, make sure you can retrieve it before pressing and holding the button. Without the card, you will not be able to restart the vehicle.

With the engine switched off, any accessories being used (radio, etc.) will continue to function for approximately 10 minutes.

When the driver's door is opened, the accessories stop working.



Never switch off the ignition before the vehicle has stopped completely. Once the engine has stopped, the brake servo, power-assisted steering etc., and the passive safety devices such as the airbags and pretensioners will no longer operate.



When you leave your vehicle, especially if you have your card with you, check that the engine is completely switched off.



### Driver's responsibility when parking or stopping the vehicle

Never leave an animal, child or adult who is not self-sufficient alone in your vehicle, even for a short time.

They may pose a risk to themselves or to others by starting the engine, activating equipment such as the electric windows or locking the doors, for example.

Also, in hot and/or sunny weather, please remember that the temperature inside the passenger compartment increases very quickly.

**RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY.**

## STOP AND START FUNCTION (1/4)


This system enables a reduced fuel consumption and lower greenhouse gas emissions. The system is activated automatically when the vehicle is started. While driving, the system stops the engine (standby) when the vehicle is at a standstill (traffic jam, traffic lights, etc).

### Conditions for engine standby

The vehicle has set off from where it was parked.

#### For vehicles equipped with automatic gearboxes:

- the gearbox is in position **D**, **N** or in manual mode;
- and
- the brake pedal is depressed (sufficiently hard);

If the  warning light flashes, vehicle stationary, and the message “Press brake pedal” appears on the instrument panel, it indicates that the brake pedal is not sufficiently depressed;

- and
- the accelerator pedal is not depressed;


and

- when the vehicle speed is zero during approximately one second or, depending on the vehicle, as soon as the vehicle speed is below approximately 3 mph (5 km/h).

The engine remains on standby if position **P** is selected, or if position **N** is selected with the handbrake engaged and the brake pedal released.

#### For vehicles equipped with manual gearboxes:

- the gearbox is in neutral;

If the  warning light flashes and the message “Release Clutch pedal” appears on the instrument panel, this indicates that the clutch pedal is not sufficiently released;

and

- the clutch pedal is released;
- and
- the vehicle speed is less than approximately 3 mph (5 km/h).

The warning light  on the instrument panel is lit when the engine is on standby.

The vehicle equipment remain operational while the engine is stopped.


When the engine switches to standby, the steering assistance may no longer be operational.

In this case it becomes operational again when the engine is no longer on standby or the speed exceeds approximately 1 mph (1 km/h) (downhill, slope etc.).



If the engine is put in standby, the electronic parking brake (depending on the vehicle) is not applied automatically.



Keep your vehicle stationary when the engine is on standby (shown by the warning light  on the instrument panel).



The engine **MUST** be stopped (not put in standby) before leaving the vehicle.  
➔ 2.3 ➔ 2.5.

## STOP AND START FUNCTION (2/4)

### Preventing the engine from standing by

In certain situations, such as negotiating a crossroads for instance, it is possible (with the system activated) to keep the engine running so as to be ready to move off quickly.

### For vehicles equipped with automatic gearboxes and when the engine standby is performed only when the vehicle stopped:

Keep the vehicle stationary without pressing too hard on the brake pedal.

### For vehicles equipped with manual gearboxes:

Keep the clutch pedal pressed right down.

To fill up with fuel, the engine must be off (and not only on standby in the case of vehicles equipped with the **STOP and START** function): you must switch off the ignition  
➡ 2.4, ➡ 2.5.

**Fire hazard.**


### Conditions for coming out of engine standby

#### For vehicles equipped with automatic gearboxes:

- when the driver's door is opened;
- or
- when the driver's seat belt is unfastened;
- or
- the brake pedal is released, with position **D** or manual mode engaged;
- or
- the brake pedal is released in gear position **N** with the handbrake off;
- or
- the brake pedal is pressed again in gear position **P** or **N** engaged with the handbrake applied;
- or
- the vehicle is in gear position **R**;
- or
- the accelerator pedal is depressed.

### For vehicles equipped with manual gearboxes:

- when opening the driver's door, without any gear engaged and the clutch pedal released;
- or
- when unfastening the driver's seat belt, without any gear engaged and the clutch pedal released;
- or
- the gearbox is in neutral and the clutch pedal is slightly depressed;
- or
- the engine is in gear and the clutch pedal is pressed right down.

**Special note:** Depending on the vehicle, if you switch off the ignition when the engine is on standby, the  warning light may be displayed for a few seconds on the instrument panel.

### For vehicles equipped with a manual gearbox:

the restart may be interrupted if the clutch pedal is released too quickly while a gear is engaged.


## STOP AND START FUNCTION (3/4)


### Conditions preventing the standby of the engine

Certain conditions prevent the system from using the engine standby function, including when:

- the driver's door is not closed;
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened or was not fastened when driving began;
- reverse gear is engaged;
- the bonnet is not locked;
- the outdoor temperature is too low or too high;
- the battery is not sufficiently charged;
- the difference between the vehicle interior temperature and the automatic climate control instruction is too high;
- parking distance control is in operation;
- the altitude is too high;

- the slope is too steep for vehicles fitted with an automatic gearbox;
- the "Clear view" function is activated ➡ 3.9 ;
- the engine temperature is too low;
- the emission control system is being regenerated;
- ...

Warning light  is displayed on the instrument panel. This notifies you that engine standby is not available.

The  warning light may appear along with a message on the instrument panel:

- "Optimising Battery Recharge" to prioritise battery charging;
- "Prioritising Thermal Comfort" to prioritise air conditioning;
- "Prioritising running engine" to prioritise engine operations.



Deactivate the Stop and Start function for any operation performed in the engine compartment.


## STOP AND START FUNCTION (4/4)

### Special feature of the automatic engine re-start

Under certain conditions, the engine can restart on its own in order to guarantee your safety and comfort.

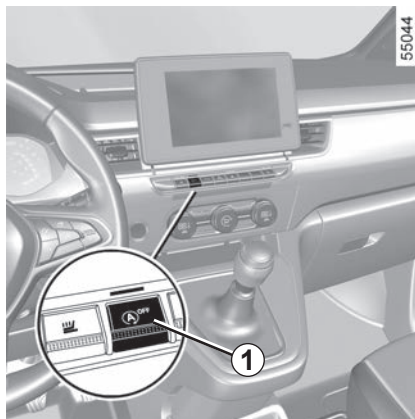
This can occur especially when:


- the outdoor temperature is too low or too high;
- the “Clear view” function is activated ➔ 3.9;
- the battery is not sufficiently charged;
- the vehicle speed is above 3 mph (5 km/h) (downhill slope, etc.);
- repeated pressing on the brake pedal or braking system requirement;
- ...

The  warning light is displayed on the instrument panel to notify you of automatic engine restarting.



The engine **MUST** be stopped (not put in standby) before leaving the vehicle.  
➔ 2.3 ➔ 2.5.



The  warning light may appear along with a message on the instrument panel:

- “Optimising Battery Recharge” to prioritise battery charging;
- “Prioritising Thermal Comfort” to prioritise air conditioning;
- “Prioritising running engine” to prioritise engine operations.

Special note: engine on standby, press switch **1** to automatically restart the engine.

### Deactivating, activating the function

Press **1** to deactivate the function. The message “Stop & Start deactivated” appears on the instrument panel and the ignition warning light **1** appears.

Pressing again will reactivate the system. The message “Stop & Start Activated” appears on the instrument panel and the **1** switch disappears.

The system is automatically reactivated each time the vehicle is started using the start button. ➔ 2.3 ➔ 2.5.

### Operating faults

When the “Check Stop & Start” message appears on the instrument panel and the **1** switch is on, this indicates that the system is deactivated.

Please consult an authorised dealer.



## SPECIAL FEATURES OF PETROL VERSIONS (1/2)

The following operating conditions should be avoided:

- driving for long periods when the low fuel level warning light is lit;
- using leaded petrol;
- using lubricant or fuel additives which are not approved.

Or operating faults such as:

- faulty ignition, running out of fuel or disconnected spark plugs resulting in the engine misfiring or cutting out when driving;
- loss of power,

may cause the catalytic converter to overheat, reducing its efficiency **which may irreparably damage it and cause heat damage to the vehicle.**

If you notice any of the above operating faults, have the necessary repairs carried out as soon as possible by an approved dealer.

These faults may be avoided by regularly taking your vehicle to an approved Dealer at the intervals specified in the Maintenance Document.

### Starting problems

To avoid damaging the catalytic converter or the starter, and to prevent premature wearing of the battery, **do not keep** trying to start the engine (using the start button, or by pushing or towing the vehicle) **without having identified and corrected the starting fault.**

If the fault cannot be identified, do not keep trying to start the engine, but contact an approved Dealer.




Do not park the vehicle or run the engine in locations where combustible substances or materials such as grass or leaves can come into contact with the hot exhaust system.


## SPECIAL FEATURES OF PETROL VERSIONS (2/2)

### Particle filter

The particle filter is used in the treatment of exhaust gases from petrol engines.

Depending on the vehicle, the warning


light  displayed on the instrument panel indicates that the filter is becoming clogged and requires cleaning. To


clean it, when the  warning light appears, and as traffic conditions and speed limits allow, drive at between about 31 mph (50 km/h) and 68 mph (110 km/h) until the light goes out.

After between approximately 5 and 20 minutes, the warning light should go out.


**Note:** The indicator light may go out after 20 minutes when the driving conditions needed to clean the filter are not completely met.

If the vehicle is stopped before the warning light disappears you will have to restart the process from the beginning.

If the filter becomes saturated, the  warning light and, depending

on the vehicle, the  warning light will appear on the instrument panel, accompanied by the message “Check injection”. In this case, please consult an Authorised Dealer.

If the **STOP** warning light and, de-

pending on the vehicle, the  warning light appears, accompanied by the “WARNING: Engine Failure Risk” message, stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and contact an Approved Dealer.





Warning light **STOP** requires you to stop immediately, for your own safety, as soon as traffic conditions allow. Switch off the engine and do not restart it. Contact an approved Dealer.

## SPECIAL FEATURES OF DIESEL VERSIONS: PARTICLE FILTER (1/2)

### Diesel engine speed

Diesel engines are fitted with an injection pump **which prevents the engine speed being exceeded** irrespective of the gear selected.

If the message “Check Anti- Pollution System” is displayed along with warn-

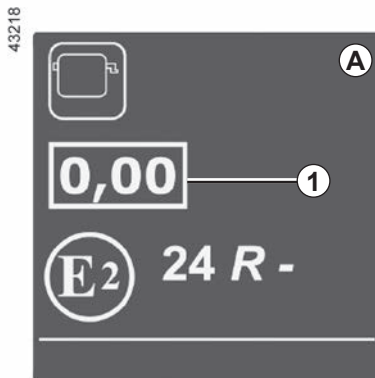
ing lights  and , consult an authorised dealer immediately.

When driving, depending on the fuel grade used, it is possible that white smoke may be emitted.

This is due to the exhaust particle filter being cleaned automatically, and does not affect the way the vehicle runs.

### Running out of fuel

After the tank has been filled following **a complete draining of fuel**, the fuel system must be reprimed: ➔ 1.147 before restarting the engine.



### Engine smoke opacity label

You will find **1** information on the **A** label stuck inside the engine compartment.

**1** Diesel exhaust emissions.

### Precautions to be taken in winter

To avoid any faults in icy weather:

- ensure that the battery is always fully charged;
- always keep the diesel tank relatively full to avoid water vapour condensing in it and accumulating at the bottom of the tank.




Do not park the vehicle or run the engine in locations where combustible substances or materials such as grass or leaves can come into contact with the hot exhaust system.


## SPECIAL FEATURES OF DIESEL VERSIONS: PARTICLE FILTER (2/2)

### Particle filter


The particle filter is used in the treatment of exhaust gases from diesel engines.

Depending on the vehicle, the warning

light  displayed on the instrument panel indicates that the filter is becoming clogged and requires cleaning.


To do this, when the  warning light is displayed, continue driving according to traffic conditions and observe the speed limit until the warning lights disappear. If possible, do not let the engine speed drop below 2000 rpm.


After between approximately 10 and 20 minutes, the warning light should go out.



The display of the  on the instrument panel may be accompanied by an increase in engine speed and operation of the cooling system in order to clean the particle filter.

**Note:** the warning light may re-appear if the driving conditions are not suitable for particle filter cleaning. If the vehicle is stopped or if the engine speed drops below 2,000 rpm before the warning light goes out, the operation may need to be repeated.


To facilitate the particle filter regeneration, carry out a long driving phase (at least 20 minutes) on main roads every 124 miles (200 km).

If the filter becomes saturated, the  warning light and, depending

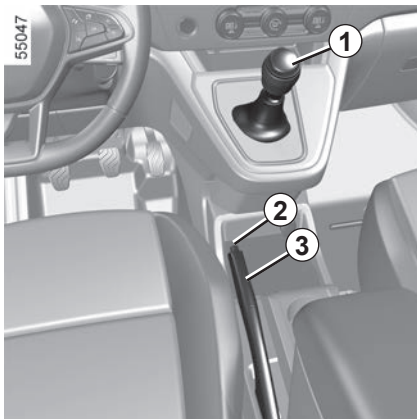
on the vehicle, the  warning light will appear on the instrument panel, accompanied by the message "Check injection". In this case, please consult an Authorised Dealer.

If the  warning light and, depending on the vehicle, the  warning light appears, accompanied by the "WARNING: Engine Failure Risk" message, stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and contact an Approved Dealer.



Warning light  requires you to stop immediately, for your own safety, as soon as traffic conditions allow. Switch off the engine and do not restart it. Contact an approved Dealer.

# GEAR LEVER, HANDBRAKE



## Gear lever

**Vehicles with manual gearbox:** refer to the grid on the gear lever knob **1**.

**Vehicles with an automatic gearbox:**  
➔ 2.150.

## Selecting reverse gear

The reversing lights will come on as soon as reverse gear is selected with the ignition on.

## Handbrake

### To release:


Pull the lever **3** up slightly, press button **2** and then lower the lever to the floor.

The warning light  on the instrument panel will go out.

The red warning light on the instrument panel will come on if you are driving with an incorrectly released handbrake.

### To apply:

Pull lever **3** upwards. Check that the vehicle is immobilised. The warning

light  on the instrument panel will come on.



When stationary and depending on the slope and/or vehicle load, it may be necessary to pull up the parking brake at least two extra notches and engage a gear (1<sup>st</sup> or reverse gear) on vehicles with a manual gearbox or position **P** on vehicles with an automatic gearbox.



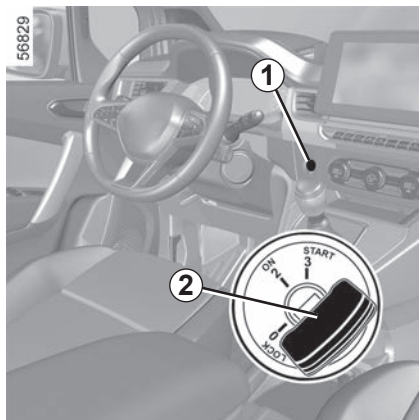
An impact to the underside of the vehicle while manoeuvring (e.g.: striking a post, raised kerb or other street furniture) may result in damage to the vehicle (e.g.: deformation of an axle).

To avoid any risk of accident, have your vehicle checked by an approved Dealer.



Make sure that the handbrake is fully released when driving (red indicator light off), otherwise overheating, or even damage, may occur.

## ELECTRONIC PARKING BRAKE (1/4)



### Assisted operation

#### Applying the electronic parking brake

With the vehicle stationary, the electronic parking brake can be used to immobilise the vehicle:

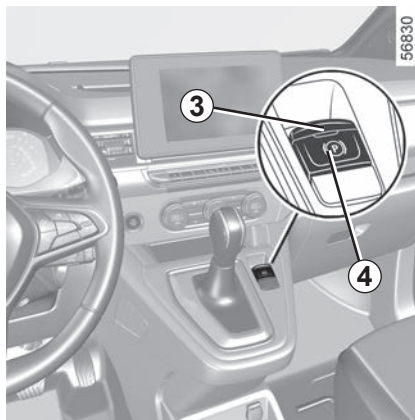
- by pressing the engine start/stop button 1 or by turning the ignition key to the 2 “ON” position (2);

or

- when the driver’s seat belt is unfastened;

or

- when the driver’s door is opened;




or


- for vehicles fitted with an automatic gearbox, when **position P** is engaged.

In all other instances, for example **the engine has stalled or is in standby due to the Stop and Start** ➔ 2.8, the assisted parking brake is not applied automatically. Manual mode must be used. For certain country-specific model versions, the assisted brake application function is not activated. Refer to the information on “Manual operation”.


To confirm that the electronic parking brake is applied, the message “Parking

Brake ON” is displayed, the  warning light appears on the instrument panel and the 3 warning light appears on the 4 switch.

After the engine is switched off, indicator light 3 goes out several minutes after the assisted parking brake has

been applied and indicator light  goes out when the vehicle is locked.



Before leaving the vehicle, check that the electronic parking brake is fully applied. Warning light 3 on switch 4 and warning light  on the instrument panel light up to show that the parking brake is applied but go out when the doors are locked.

## ELECTRONIC PARKING BRAKE (2/4)

### Assisted operation (continued)

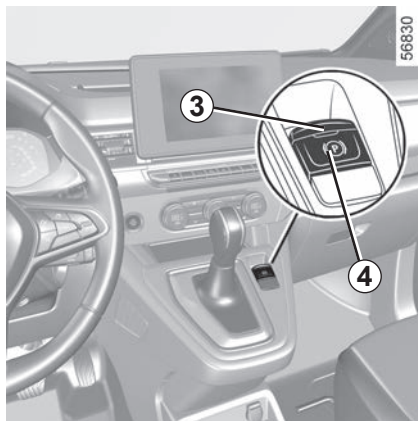
**Note:** in some situations (electronic parking brake failure, manual release of the parking brake, etc.), a beep sounds and the message “WARNING: Apply Parking Brake” appears on the instrument panel to warn you that the electronic parking brake has been released.

- with the engine running: when the driver's door is opened;
- with the engine switched off (e.g. when the engine stalls): when a front door is opened.

In this case, pull and release switch **4** to apply the assisted parking brake.

### Assisted release of the parking brake

The brake will be released as soon as the vehicle starts and accelerates.

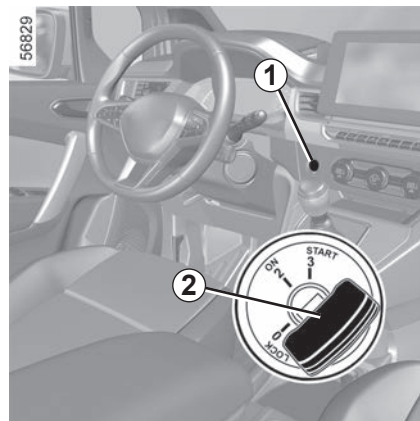


### Manual operation

You can apply the electronic parking brake manually.

### Manually applying the electronic parking brake

Pull switch **4**. Warning light **3** and warning light **(P)** on the instrument panel light up.



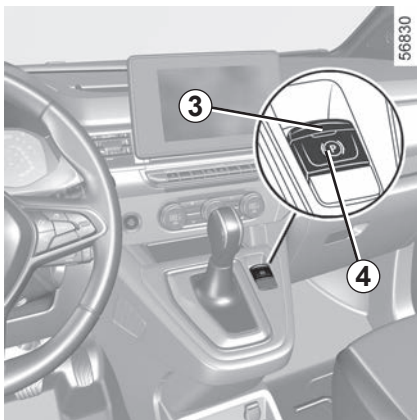
### Manually releasing the electronic parking brake

Press switch **1** without pressing the pedals or turning the key **2** to position “ON” **2** to switch on the ignition. Press the brake pedal then press switch **4**: indicator light **3** on the switch and indicator light **(P)** displayed on the instrument panel go out.



Before leaving the vehicle, check that the electronic parking brake is fully applied. Warning light **4** on switch **4** and warning light **(P)** on the instrument panel light up to show that the parking brake is applied but go out when the doors are locked.

## ELECTRONIC PARKING BRAKE (3/4)

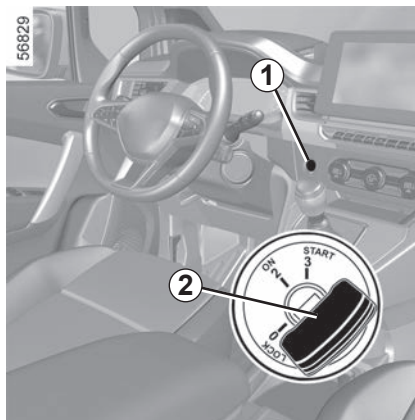


### Brief stop

To apply the electronic parking brake manually (when stopping at a red light, or stopping when the engine is running, etc.): pull and release the switch **4**. The brake is released as soon as the vehicle is started up again.

### Special cases

To park on a slope or while towing a trailer, for example, pull switch **4** for a few seconds to gain the maximum braking.



To park the vehicle without applying the electronic parking brake (if there is a risk of freezing, for example):

- switch off the engine by pressing the engine start/stop button **1** or by turning the ignition key **2**;
- engage any gear or the **P** position: the drive wheels will be mechanically locked by the driveshaft;
- manually release the electronic parking brake.



## ELECTRONIC PARKING BRAKE (4/4)



If the “WARNING: Electric System” or “Check battery” message appears, apply the electronic parking brake manually by pulling the **4** switch (in position **P** on automatic gearboxes) before stopping the engine.

**Risk of loss of immobilisation of the vehicle.**

Call an approved Dealer.



If no lights or sounds are apparent, this indicates a fault in the instrument panel. This indicates that it is essential to stop immediately (as soon as traffic conditions allow). Ensure that the vehicle is correctly immobilised and contact an approved Dealer.

### Versions with an automatic gearbox


For safety reasons, automatic release is deactivated when the driver's door is open or not shut properly and the engine is running (in order to prevent the vehicle from moving without the driver). The “Release Parking Brake Manually” message appears on the instrument panel when the driver depresses the accelerator.



Never leave your vehicle without re-engaging **P** position and switching off the engine. This is because when the vehicle is stationary with the engine running and a gear engaged, the vehicle may begin to move if you accelerate.



**There is a risk of accidents.**

### Operating faults

– If there is a fault, the  warning light illuminates on the instrument panel accompanied by the “Check Parking Brake” message and, in

some cases, the  warning light.

Contact your approved Dealer straight away.

– If there is an assisted parking brake fault, the warning light  comes on, along with the message “WARNING: Braking System”, a beep and, in some cases, the warning light .

This means that you must stop as soon as traffic conditions allow.



It is therefore essential to immobilise the vehicle by engaging first gear (manual gearbox) or position **P** (automatic gearbox). If the slope requires it, chock the vehicle.

## DRIVING ADVICE, ECO DRIVING (1/8)

Fuel consumption is accredited in accordance with a standard regulatory method. Identical for all manufacturers, this enables vehicles to be compared with one another. Consumption in real time depends on vehicle usage conditions, the equipment fitted and the user's driving style. To optimise fuel consumption, please refer to the following advice.

Depending on the vehicle, you will have various functions which enable you to lower your fuel consumption:

- the rev counter;
- gear change indicator;
- the driving style indicator;
- the journey record and eco-driving advice via the multimedia screen;
- acceleration indicator Eco;
- ECO mode;
- the Stop and Start function ➡ 2.8.

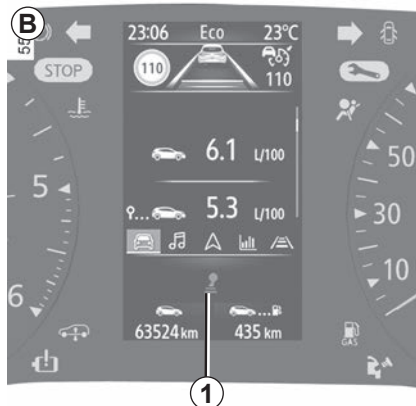
If fitted on the vehicle, the navigation system provides additional information.

## DRIVING ADVICE, ECO DRIVING (2/8)



### On the instrument panel A, B or C

Depending on the vehicle, the information display can be organised and customised based on the instrument panel customisation style selected from the multimedia screen.



### Gear change indicator 1

Depending on the vehicle, to obtain optimum consumption levels, a warning light on the instrument panel lets you know the best time to move up or down a gear:

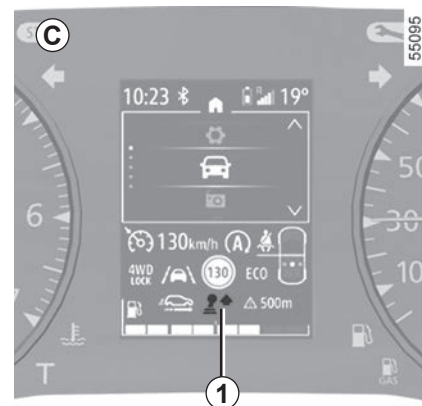


shift up a gear;

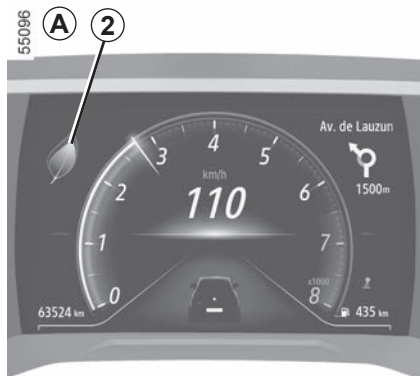


downshift a gear.

If you regularly follow this indicator, you will reduce your vehicle's fuel consumption.



## DRIVING ADVICE, ECO DRIVING (3/8)



### Driving style indicator 2

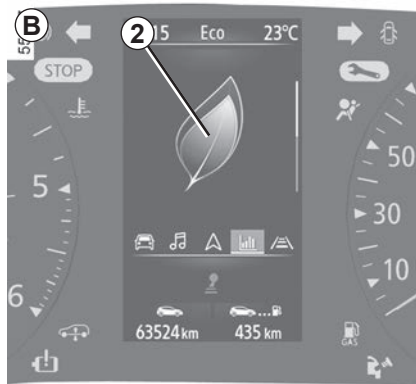
(depending on the vehicle)

Informs you about the driving style adopted in real time. This is shown by indicator light 2.

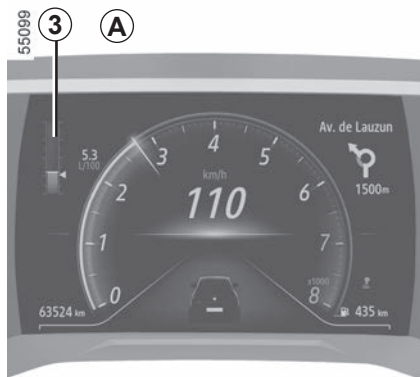
The more petals displayed on 2, the more your driving is flexible and economical.

If you regularly monitor this indicator, you will reduce your vehicle's fuel consumption.

Please refer to the multimedia instructions for further information.



## DRIVING ADVICE, ECO DRIVING (4/8)



### Acceleration indicator Eco 3

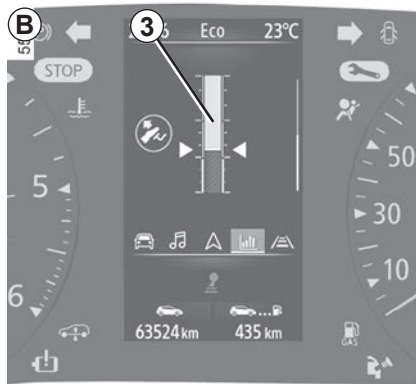
(depending on the vehicle)

This informs you in real time whether you are accelerating moderately or strongly.

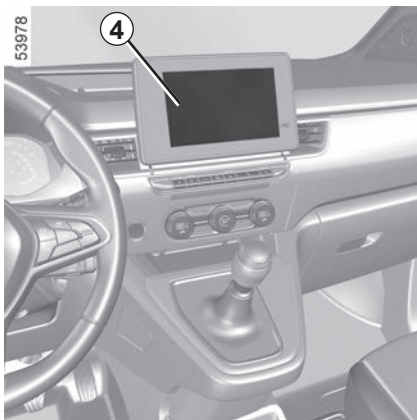
This is shown by the **3** warning light:

- green: acceleration is moderate and correct;
- white: acceleration is too high;
- grey: acceleration is high.

**Note:** it is not possible to simultaneously display the driving style indicator **2** and the Eco acceleration indicator **3**.



## DRIVING ADVICE, ECO DRIVING (5/8)



### On the multimedia screen

#### Journey record

Once the engine is switched off, you will see “Journey record” displayed on the multimedia screen **4**, enabling you to view information on your last journey.

This indicates:

- the general score;
- score evolution;
- distance without fuel consumption.

Please refer to the multimedia instructions for further information.

An overall rating from 0 to 100 is displayed to let you assess your eco driving performance. The higher the rating, the lower the fuel consumption.

Eco advice is given to help improve your performance.

With your favourite journeys saved, you can compare your performance between trips and the performance of other vehicle users.

## DRIVING ADVICE, ECO DRIVING (6/8)

### Free-wheel

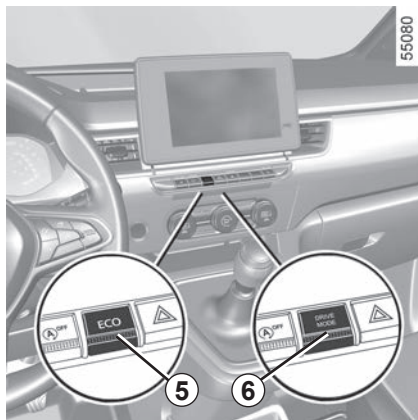
Depending on the vehicle, for vehicles fitted with an automatic gearbox, in the deceleration phases (with the foot fully off the accelerator pedal), switching to freewheeling (automatic neutral) decreases engine braking and allows you to farther without accelerating in order to save fuel.

It is not possible to switch to the free-wheeling mode if the charging mode is activated. ➔ 2.150.

To activate/deactivate "Freewheeling" mode, ➔ 1.119 or refer to the multimedia instructions.

### ECO mode

ECO mode is a function which optimises fuel consumption. It acts on certain consumer systems in the vehicle (heating, air conditioning, power-assisted steering etc.) and on certain driving actions (acceleration, gear change, cruise control, deceleration etc.).



Limiting acceleration enables low fuel consumption in urban and surrounding areas. Reduced usage of the air conditioning reduces fuel consumption without affecting heating comfort.

#### Activating the function

Depending on the vehicle, the function can be activated either:

- by pressing switch **5**;
- by pressing switch **6**.

The warning light **ECO** comes on on the instrument panel to confirm activation.

While driving, it is possible to leave the ECO mode temporarily in order to improve engine performance.

To do this, press the accelerator pedal firmly and fully.

ECO mode is reactivated when you take pressure off the accelerator pedal.

#### Disabling the function

Depending on the vehicle, the function can be deactivated either:

- by pressing switch **5**;
- by pressing switch **6**.

The warning light **ECO** goes out on the instrument panel to confirm deactivation.

## DRIVING ADVICE, ECO DRIVING (7/8)



### Driving advice and ECO driving

#### Behaviour

- Drive carefully for the first few miles until the engine reaches its normal operating temperature, rather than let it warm up while the vehicle is stationary.
- Speed is expensive.
- Dynamic driving with a lot of frequent acceleration and braking is expensive on fuel in comparison to the time saved.

- Do not over rev the engine in the intermediate gears. You should always use the highest gear possible.
- Avoid sudden acceleration.
- Brake as little as possible. If you anticipate an obstacle or bend in advance, you may then simply release the accelerator pedal.
- Do not try to maintain the same speed up a hill, accelerate no more than you would on the level. Keep your foot in the same position on the accelerator pedal.
- Double declutching and accelerating before switching off are unnecessary in modern vehicles.
- Bad weather, flooded roads:



Do not drive through floods if the water is above the lower edge of the wheel rims.



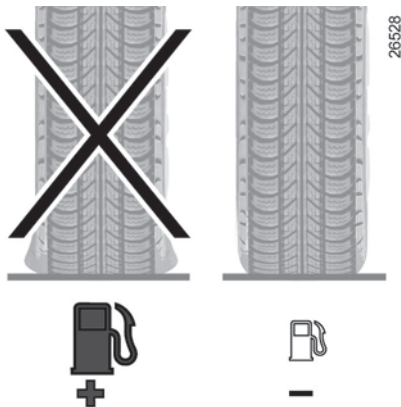
#### Obstructions to the driver

On the driver's side, only use mats that are suitable for the vehicle, attach using the pre-fitted components, and check the fittings regularly. Do not lay one mat on top of another.

**There is a risk of wedging the pedals**

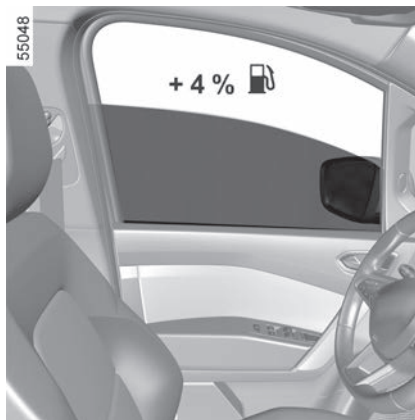


## DRIVING ADVICE, ECO DRIVING (8/8)



### Tyres

- An underinflated tyre increases fuel consumption.
- To optimise fuel consumption, set the highest speed tyre pressure or the recommended pressure indicated on the edge of the driver's door. ➔ 4.10.
- The use of non-recommended tyres can increase fuel consumption.



### Advice on use

- Favour the ECO mode.
- Electricity is fuel; switch off all the electrical components which are not really needed. **However** (safety first), keep your lights on when the visibility is bad ("see and be seen").
- Use the air vents. Driving with the windows open at 60 mph (100 km/h) will increase fuel consumption by 4%.
- Never fill the fuel tank right to the brim to avoid overflow.

- In vehicles fitted with air conditioning, it is normal to observe an increase in fuel consumption (especially in urban conditions) when it is used. For vehicles fitted with manual air conditioning, switch off the system when it is not required.

### Advice for reducing consumption and therefore helping to preserve the environment:

If the vehicle has been parked in the sun, open the doors for a few moments to let the hot air escape before starting the engine.

- Do not leave an empty roof rack fitted to the vehicle.
- It is better to fit a trailer for bulky objects.
- When towing a caravan, fit a wind deflector and adjust it carefully.
- Avoid using the car for door-to-door calls (short journeys with long waits in between) because the engine never reaches its normal operating temperature.

# MAINTENANCE AND ANTIPOLLUTION ADVICE

Your vehicle complies with criteria for recycling and recovering vehicles at the end of their service life, which entered into force in 2015.

Some parts of your vehicle have therefore been designed to facilitate future recycling.

These parts are easy to remove so that they can be recovered and reprocessed by recycling companies.

By virtue of its design, moderate fuel consumption and initial settings, your vehicle also conforms to current antipollution regulations. The manufacturer is actively striving to reduce pollutant exhaust gas emissions and to save energy. But the fuel consumption of your vehicle and the level of pollutant exhaust gas emissions are also your responsibility. Ensure that it is maintained and used correctly.

## Maintenance

It is important to remember that failure to respect antipollution regulations could lead to legal action being taken against the vehicle owner.

In addition, replacing engine, fuel supply system and exhaust components with parts other than those originally recommended by the manufacturer may alter your vehicle so that it no longer complies with anti-pollution regulations.

Have your vehicle adjusted and checked by an authorised dealer, in accordance with the instructions given in your maintenance schedule: they will have all the equipment necessary for ensuring that your vehicle is maintained to its original standard.

## Engine adjustments

- **Spark plugs:** for optimum conditions of use, output and performance the specifications laid down by our Design Department must be strictly applied.  
If the spark plugs have to be changed, use the make, type and gap specified for your vehicle's engine. Contact an authorised dealer for this.
- **Ignition and idle speed:** no adjustment is needed.

- **Air filter, fuel filter:** a choked element will reduce efficiency. It must be replaced.

## Exhaust gas monitoring system

The exhaust gas monitoring system will detect any operating faults in the vehicle's antipollution system.

If this system malfunctions, toxic substances may be released into the atmosphere or damage may occur.



This warning light on the instrument panel will indicate if there are any faults in the system:

This lights up when the ignition is switched on and goes out when the engine is started.

- If it lights up continuously, consult an approved Dealer as soon as possible;
- If it flashes, reduce the engine speed until the light stops flashing. Contact an authorised dealer as soon as possible.



➔ 1.150

## ENVIRONMENT

Your vehicle has been designed with respect for the **environment** in mind for its entire service life: during production, use and at the end of its life.

### Manufacture

Your vehicle has been manufactured at a factory which complies with a policy to reduce the environmental impact on the surrounding areas (reduction of water and energy consumption, visual and noise pollution, atmospheric emissions and waste water; sorting and re-using waste).

### Emissions

For the usage phase, your vehicle was designed to emit fewer greenhouse gases (CO<sub>2</sub>) and therefore to consume less fuel.

Our vehicles are also equipped with a particle filter system including a catalytic converter, an oxygen sensor and an active carbon filter (the latter prevents vapour from the fuel tank being released into the open air).

For certain diesel vehicles, this system also has a particle filter to reduce the volume of soot particles emitted.

### Please make your own contribution towards protecting the environment too

- Worn parts replaced in the course of routine vehicle maintenance (vehicle battery, oil filter, air filter, batteries, etc.) and oil containers (empty or filled with used oil) must be disposed of through specialist organisations.

- At the end of the vehicle's service life, it should be sent to approved centres to ensure that it is recycled.
- In all cases, comply with local legislation.

### Recycling

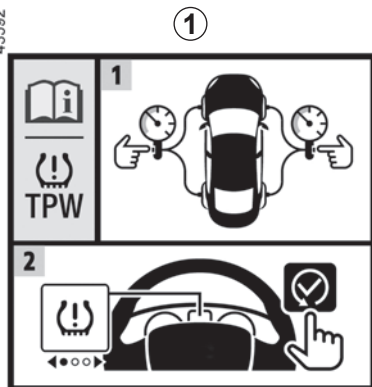
Your vehicle is 85% recyclable and 95% recoverable.

To achieve these objectives, many of the vehicle components have been designed to enable them to be recycled. The materials and structures have been carefully designed to allow these components to be easily removed and reprocessed by specialist companies.

In order to preserve raw material resources, this vehicle incorporates numerous parts made from recycled plastics or renewable materials (vegetable or animal-derived materials such as cotton or wool).

# TYRE PRESSURE LOSS WARNING (1/6)

43592

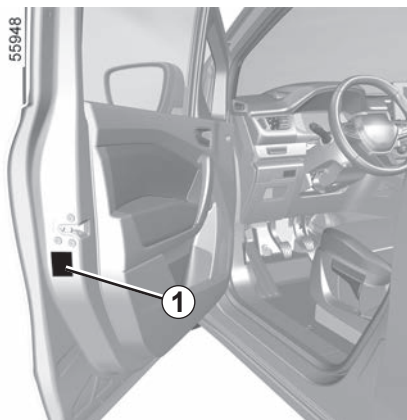


When fitted to the vehicle, this system notifies the driver if one or more tyres lose pressure.

The system can be identified by the **1** label in the vehicle.

To verify its presence, open the driver's door.

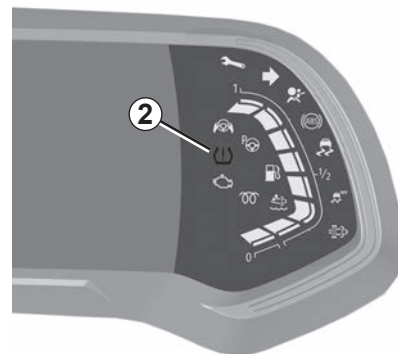
55948




## Operating principle

This system detects a loss of pressure in one of the tyres by measuring the wheel speed while driving.

55135



Warning light  **2** comes on to alert the driver in the event of insufficient pressure (deflated wheel, punctured tyre, etc.).

## TYRE PRESSURE LOSS WARNING (2/6)

### Operating conditions

The system must be reinitialised with tyre pressure equal to that shown on the tyre inflation pressure label. ➔ 4.10 otherwise it may not give a reliable warning in the event of a significant loss of tyre pressure.

**Resetting should always be carried out after checking the tyre pressure of all four tyres when cold.**

In the following situations, the system risk coming into action late or not functioning correctly:

- system not reset after reinflation or any operation on the wheels;
- system badly reset: different inflation pressures from the recommended pressures;

- significant change in load or distribution of load on one side of the vehicle;
- sporty driving with strong acceleration;
- driving on snowy or slippery surface;
- driving with snow chains;
- fitting a single new tyre;
- use of tyres not approved by the network.



This function is an additional driving aid.

The function does not take the place of the driver. It cannot, therefore, under any circumstances replace the vigilance or the responsibility of the driver.

Check the tyre pressures, including the emergency spare wheel, once a month.

### Resetting the standard level for the tyre pressures

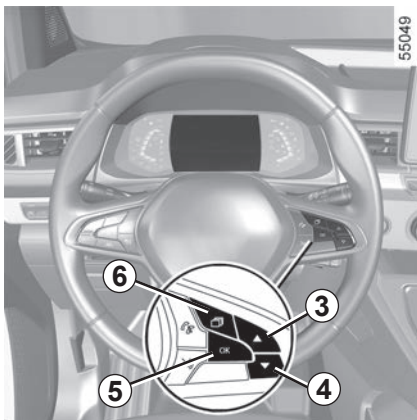
This should be done:

- after each re-inflation or resetting of tyre pressure;
- after changing a wheel;
- after changing wheels around.

Tyre pressures must correspond to the current usage of the vehicle (empty, carrying a load, motorway driving, etc.).


The sudden loss of pressure in a tyre (burst tyre, etc.) cannot be detected by the system.

## TYRE PRESSURE LOSS WARNING (3/6)



### Resetting procedure

Ignition on, **vehicle stopped**:

- repeatedly tap the **6** switch as many times as necessary to reach the “vehicle” tab ;
- briefly press the **3** or **4** switch to reach the “Tyre pressure init. long press” page;
- press and hold the **5** OK switch to launch the reset.

Hold down the **5** switch until the “Operation completed” message appears. You can now drive.

If the vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, the resetting procedure may also be carried out using the multimedia screen: please see the equipment instructions.

## TYRE PRESSURE LOSS WARNING (4/6)

The table below shows the possible messages related to the tyre resetting procedure.

Steps	Messages	Readings
–	Tyre pressure init. at stop	The message is displayed during driving. If you want to reset the pressure of the four tyres, stop the vehicle.
1	Tyre pressure init. long press	To reset the pressure of all four tyres, with the vehicle stopped, press and hold the <b>5 OK</b> switch to launch resetting until the “If pressure OK [hold on]” message is displayed.
2	If pressure OK [hold on]	The message flashes to indicate that the system has registered the resetting procedure. If all four tyres have been correctly adjusted to match the tyre pressure values recommended on the tyre pressure label ➡ 4.10, press and hold switch <b>5 OK</b> until the message “Operation completed” appears.
3	Operation completed	The resetting procedure has been completed successfully. You can now drive.

## TYRE PRESSURE LOSS WARNING (5/6)

### Readjustment of tyre pressures

**The pressure of the four tyres must be set when cold** (refer to the label located on the edge of the driver's door).

If tyre pressures cannot be checked when the tyres are **cold**, the recommended pressures should be increased by **0.2 to 0.3 bar (3 PSI)**.

**Never deflate a hot tyre.**

After each reinflation or readjustment of the tyre pressure, launch the reinitialisation of the tyre pressure reference value.

### Replacing wheels/tyres

Only use equipment approved by the network, otherwise the system risks late activation or incorrect operation.  
➡ 5.13.

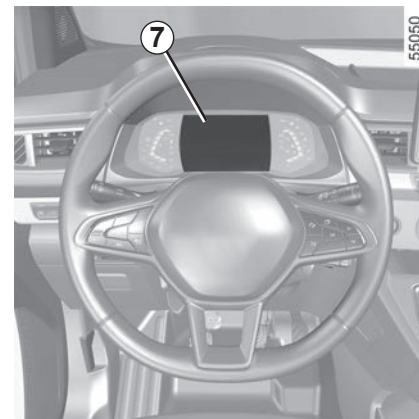
After each change of wheel/tyre, readjust the tyre pressure and launch the reset of the tyre pressure reference value.

### Emergency spare wheel

If fitted on the vehicle, readjust the tyre pressure and launch the reinitialisation of the tyre pressure reference value.

### Tyre repair product and inflation kit

Only use equipment approved by the brand network, or the system risks being activated late or not operating correctly. ➡ 5.4. After using the tyre inflation kit, readjust the tyre pressure and launch the resetting of the tyre pressure reference value.







### Tyre pressure faults

The table on the following page lists the warning messages which appear on the instrument panel **7** when the system detects a tyre pressure fault.

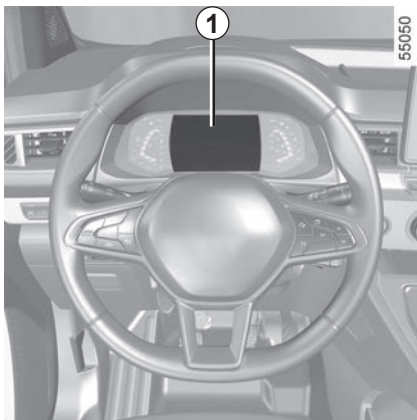


## TYRE PRESSURE LOSS WARNING (6/6)

The information on the instrument panel signals any potential tyre pressure faults (e.g. deflated or punctured tyre).

Indicator lights	Messages	Readings
	Inflate tyres and init.	This indicates that tyre under-inflation or puncture has been detected. Check and adjust the pressure of the four tyres when cold and reset the system.
	Check tyre press and init.	This indicates that the reset has been unsuccessful. Check and readjust the tyre pressure before re-launching the resetting procedure.
	Check tyre press and init.	This indicates that the last system reset was carried out over 6 months ago or over approximately 6,214 miles (10,000 km). Check and readjust the tyre pressure before re-launching another resetting procedure.
	Check TPW	This indicates a fault in the system. Consult an approved dealer.
	TPW not available	This indicates that an emergency spare wheel different in size to the other four wheels has been fitted to the vehicle. The system remains unavailable until a wheel identical in size to the other wheels has been fitted and the resetting procedure has been carried out.

# TYRE PRESSURE MONITOR (1/5)



If the vehicle is equipped with the function, this system monitors the tyre pressure.

## Operating principle

Each wheel (except for the emergency spare wheel) has a sensor in the inflation valve which periodically measures the tyre pressure.

The system displays the current pressures on the instrument panel **1** and alerts the driver in the event of insufficient pressure.

## Resetting the standard level for the tyre pressures

This should be done:

- when the standard tyre pressure needs to be changed to adapt to usage conditions (empty, carrying a load, motorway driving, etc.);
- after swapping a wheel (however this practice is not recommended);
- after changing a wheel.

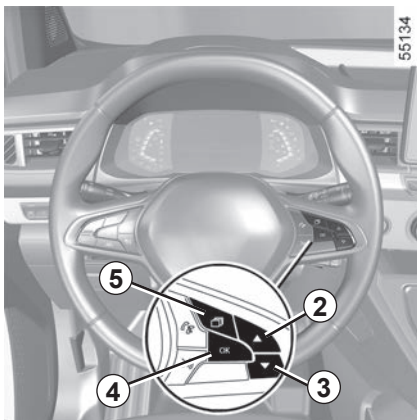
It should always be done after checking the tyre pressure of all four tyres when cold.

Tyre pressures must correspond to the current usage of the vehicle (empty, carrying a load, motorway driving, etc.).

If the wheels are swapped, the system must be reinitialised. Consult an approved dealer.


If the vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, the resetting procedure may also be carried out using the multimedia screen: please see the equipment instructions.

## TYRE PRESSURE MONITOR (2/5)



### Resetting procedure

Ignition on, **vehicle stopped**:

- repeatedly tap the **5** switch as many times as necessary to reach the “ve-hicle” tab ;
- briefly press the **2** or **3** switch to reach the “Tyre Pressure” page;

- press and hold (around 3 seconds) the button **4** to launch the reset. The flashing tyres followed by the messages “Learning Tyre Pressures” and then “Tyres location in progress” indicates that the reset request for the tyre pressure reference value has been acknowledged.

Reset can take several minutes of driving.

If the resetting is followed by short trips, the message “Tyres location in progress” can remain displayed after successive restarts.





**Note:** the standard tyre pressure cannot be less than that recommended and indicated on the door frame.



For your safety, the warning light **STOP** requires you to stop immediately as soon as traffic conditions allow.

## TYRE PRESSURE MONITOR (3/5)

The table below shows the possible messages related to the tyre resetting procedure.

Steps	Displays (depending on the vehicle)	Messages	Readings
1		Tyre pressure init. long press	With the ignition on and the vehicle stationary, start the resetting the pressure of all four tyres by pressing and holding the 4 OK switch.
2		Learning Tyre Pressures	The “---” quote marks in front of each wheel will flash to indicate that the system has registered the tyre pressure reset for all four wheels.
3		Tyres location in progress	The “---” quote marks in front of each wheel will remain lit. This system resets the tyre pressure of all four tyres. You can now drive. The message may remain displayed during short journeys. <b>Note:</b> during the reset, tyre pressure monitoring remains in operation.
4			The pressure value of the four tyres is displayed: the re-setting procedure is complete and successful.

## TYRE PRESSURE MONITOR (4/5)

### Readjustment of tyre pressures

**The pressure of the four tyres must be set when cold** (refer to the label located on the edge of the driver's door). If the tyre pressures cannot be checked when the tyres are cold, the recommended pressures should be increased by 0.2 to 0.3 bar (3 PSI). **Never deflate a hot tyre.**

### Emergency spare wheel

If the vehicle is equipped with an emergency spare wheel, it will not have a sensor.



This function is an additional driving aid.

The function does not take the place of the driver. It cannot, therefore, under any circumstances replace the vigilance or the responsibility of the driver. Check the tyre pressures, including the emergency spare wheel, once a month.

### Replacing wheels/tyres

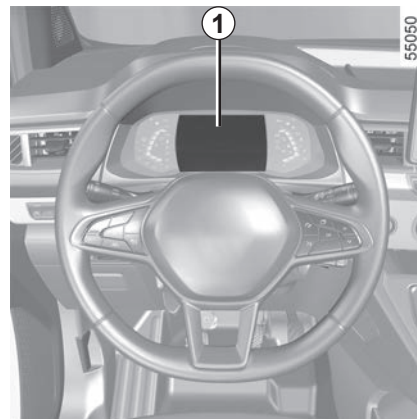
This system requires specific equipment (wheels, tyres, hubcaps, etc.). ➔ 5.13.

Contact an approved Dealer to fit new tyres and to find out about available accessories compatible with the system and available from your dealer network: the use of any other accessory could affect the correct operation of the system or damage a sensor.



#### Changing a wheel

The system may take several minutes depending on use for the new wheel positions and pressures to be recognised; check the tyre pressures after all operations.



### Tyre repair product and inflation kit









Because the valves are specially designed, only use equipment approved by the approved network. Please see the section on ➔ 5.4.

### Tyre pressure faults

The table on the following page lists the warning messages which appear on the instrument panel **1** when the system detects a tyre pressure fault.

## TYRE PRESSURE MONITOR (5/5)

The information on the instrument panel signals any potential tyre pressure faults (e.g. deflated or punctured tyre). For your safety, the warning light **STOP** requires you to stop immediately as soon as traffic conditions allow.

Indicator lights	Messages	Displays (depending on the vehicle)	Readings
	Adjust Tyre Pressure		The wheel and associated pressure value are displayed in yellow. This indicates that tyre under-inflation has been detected. Check and adjust the pressure of the four tyres then reset the system.
	Puncture		The wheel and associated pressure value are displayed in red. This indicates that the tyre concerned is punctured or severely underinflated. Adjust the pressure of the four tyres while cold and reset the system if the tyre is deflated. Replace the tyre (or have it replaced) if it is punctured.
	Check Tyre Pressure Sensors		A wheel is no longer displayed. This indicates that at least one wheel is not fitted with a sensor (e.g. emergency spare wheel) or that the sensor is faulty. Consult an approved dealer.
	Tyre Detection Failure		This indicates that the system has not been able to determine the pressure of each tyre. This may be caused by the use of a sensor not recommended by an approved dealer. The tyre pressure sensor monitoring system remains in operation.

## DRIVING CORRECTION DEVICES AND AIDS (1/6)

Depending on the vehicle, this is composed of:

- anti-lock braking system (ABS);
- the electronic stability control (ESC) with understeer control, side winds assistance and traction control;
- emergency brake assist;
- hill start assist;
- driver assistance with a trailer;
- traction control - "Extended grip".

Other driving assistance systems are detailed on the following pages.



These functions are an additional aid in the event of critical driving conditions, enabling the vehicle behaviour to be adapted to suit the driving conditions.

These functions do not take the place of the driver. **They do not increase the vehicle's limits and should not encourage you to drive more quickly.** Therefore, they can under no circumstances replace the vigilance or responsibility of the driver when manoeuvring the vehicle (the driver must always be ready for sudden incidents which may occur when driving).

## DRIVING CORRECTION DEVICES AND AIDS (2/6)

### Anti-lock braking system (ABS)



Under heavy braking, the ABS prevents the wheels from locking, allowing the stopping distance to be managed and keeping control of the vehicle.

Under these circumstances, the vehicle can be steered to avoid an obstacle whilst braking. In addition, this system can increase stopping distances, particularly on roads with low surface grip (wet ground etc.).

You will feel a pulsation through the brake pedal each time the system is activated. The ABS does not in any way improve the vehicle's physical performance relating to the road surface and road-holding. It is still **essential** to follow the rules of good driving practice (such as driving at a safe distance from the vehicle in front etc.).

In an emergency, apply **firm and continuous pressure** to the brake pedal. There is no need to pump it repeatedly. The ABS will modulate the force applied in the braking system.

#### Operating faults:

-  and  lit up on the instrument panel accompanied by the messages "Check ABS", "WARNING: Check Braking System" and "Check ESC": this indicates that the ABS, the ESC and the emergency brake assist are disabled.

**Braking is always enabled;**

-  ,  ,  and **STOP** lit on the instrument panel accompanied by the message "WARNING: Braking System": **this indicates a fault with the braking system.**

In both cases, please consult an Authorised Dealer.



Your braking systems are partially operational. However, **it is dangerous to brake suddenly** and it is essential to stop immediately, as soon as traffic conditions allow. Call an approved Dealer.



These functions are an additional aid in the event of critical driving conditions, enabling the vehicle behaviour to be adapted to suit the driving conditions.

These functions do not take the place of the driver. **They do not increase the vehicle's limits and should not encourage you to drive more quickly.** Therefore, they can under no circumstances replace the vigilance or responsibility of the driver when manoeuvring the vehicle (the driver must always be ready for sudden incidents which may occur when driving).



## DRIVING CORRECTION DEVICES AND AIDS (3/6)

### Electronic stability program (ESC) with understeer control and traction control


#### Electronic stability program ESC

This system helps you to keep control of the vehicle in critical driving conditions (avoiding an obstacle, loss of grip on a bend, etc.).

#### Operating principle

A sensor in the steering wheel detects the direction selected by the driver. Other sensors throughout the vehicle measure the actual direction.

The system compares driver input to the actual trajectory of the vehicle and corrects the trajectory if necessary by controlling the braking of certain wheels and/or engine power. In the event that


the system is triggered, the  warning light flashes on the instrument panel.

#### Understeer control

This system optimises the action of the ESC in the case of pronounced understeering (loss of front axle road holding).

#### Assistance with side winds

This system optimises the action of the ESC and also helps to control the vehicle in case of variation of side winds. It helps maintain the vehicle trajectory through the use of the brakes.

If the system is triggered, the  warning light appears on the instrument panel.

#### Traction control

This system helps to limit wheelspin of the drive wheels and to control the vehicle when pulling away accelerating or decelerating.

#### Operating principle



Using the wheel sensors, the system measures and compares the speed of the drive wheels at all times and slows down their over-rotation. If a wheel is starting to slip, the system brakes automatically until the drive supplied becomes compatible with the level of grip under the wheel again.

The system also adjusts the engine speed to the grip available under the wheels, independently of the pressure exerted on the accelerator pedal.

In some situations (driving on very wet ground: snow, mud, etc. or driving with snow chains fitted), the system may reduce the engine output to limit wheel-spin.

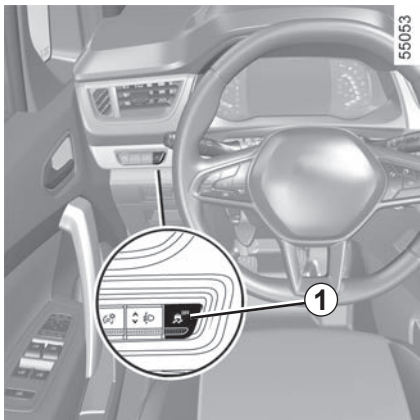
#### Operating faults

When the system detects an operating fault the message "Check ESC" and

warning light  and  appear on the instrument panel. In this case, the ESC and traction control system are deactivated.


Consult an approved dealer.

## DRIVING CORRECTION DEVICES AND AIDS (4/6)



### Disabling the traction control system

In some situations (driving on very wet ground: snow, mud, etc. or driving with snow chains fitted), the system may reduce the engine output to limit wheel-spin. If this is not required, it is possible to deactivate the function by pressing

switch **1**. In this case, the  warning light appears continuously on the instrument panel accompanied by the message “ESC OFF”. This action does not deactivate the ESC.

The traction control system offers additional safety. It is recommended that you do not drive with the function disabled. Correct this as soon as possible by pressing the switch **1** again.

**Note:** The function is reactivated automatically when the ignition is switched on or when a speed of approximately 30 mph (50 km/h) is exceeded.

### Emergency brake assist

This system supplements the ABS and helps reduce vehicle stopping distances.

#### Operating principle

The system is for detecting an emergency braking situation. In this case, the braking system immediately develops maximum power and may trigger ABS regulation.

ABS braking is maintained as long as the brake pedal is applied.

### Brake lights come on

Depending on the vehicle, these may flash in the event of sudden deceleration.

### Braking anticipation


Depending on the vehicle, when you rapidly release the accelerator, the system anticipates the braking manoeuvre in order to reduce stopping distances.

### Special cases

When using the cruise control:

- if you use the accelerator, when you release it, the system may be triggered;
- if you do not use the accelerator, the system will not be triggered.

### Operating faults

When the system detects an operating fault the message “WARNING: Check Braking System” appears on the instrument panel along with the  warning light.

Consult an approved dealer.

## DRIVING CORRECTION DEVICES AND AIDS (5/6)

### Hill start assistance

Depending on the gradient of the incline, this system assists the driver when starting on a hill. It prevents the vehicle from rolling backwards by automatically applying the brakes when the driver lifts his/her foot off the brake pedal to depress the accelerator pedal.

#### System operation

It only operates when the gear lever is in a position other than neutral (other than **N** or **P** for automatic transmissions) and the vehicle is completely stationary (brake pedal depressed)

The system holds the vehicle for approximately **2 seconds**. The brakes are then gradually released (the vehicle will move according to the slope).



The hill start assistance system cannot completely prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards in all situations (extremely steep gradients etc.).

In all cases, the driver may depress the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards.

The hill start assistance function should not be used for prolonged stops: use the brake pedal.

This function is not designed to immobilise the vehicle permanently.

If necessary, use the brake pedal to stop the vehicle.

The driver must remain particularly vigilant when driving on slippery or low-grip surfaces.

**Risk of serious injury.**

### Driver assistance with a trailer

This system helps to maintain control over the vehicle while using a trailer. It detects shaking caused by towing a trailer under certain driving conditions.

#### Operating conditions

- The towbar must be approved by an authorised dealer;
- the harness must be approved by an authorised dealer;
- the towbar must be connected to the vehicle.

#### Operating principle

The function stabilises the vehicle by:

- asymmetric braking of the front wheels to reduce shaking caused by the trailer;
- braking of all four wheels and limitation on engine torque to reduce the vehicle speed until the shaking has stopped.

Warning light  flashes on the instrument panel to inform the driver.

## DRIVING CORRECTION DEVICES AND AIDS (6/6)

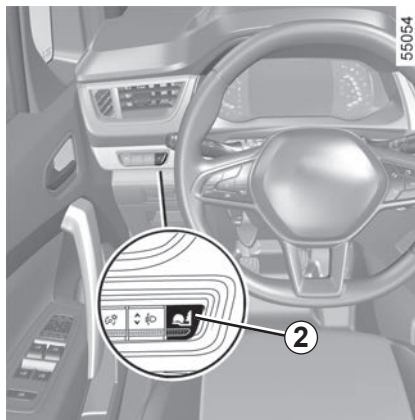
### Traction control - “Extended grip”

If fitted on the vehicle, grip control makes it easier to control the vehicle on low grip surfaces (soft ground, etc.).



These functions are an additional aid in the event of critical driving conditions, enabling the vehicle behaviour to be adapted to suit the driving conditions.

The functions do not take the place of the driver. **They do not increase the vehicle's limits and should not encourage you to drive more quickly.** Therefore, they can under no circumstances replace the vigilance or responsibility of the driver when manoeuvring the vehicle (the driver must always be ready for sudden incidents which may occur when driving).




#### “Road” mode

When the vehicle starts, the message “Standard road mode on” is displayed on the instrument panel.


The default mode Road enables optimal use under normal road conditions (dry, wet, light snow, etc.). “Road” mode uses traction control functions.

After the engine stops, the vehicle will always restart in “Road” mode.

#### “Soft ground” mode

Press switch 2: the  warning light appears on the instrument panel accompanied by the message “Grip Extend Loose Surface ON”, followed by the message “ESC OFF”. This position enables optimal usage on soft ground (mud, sand, dead leaves, etc.). In this position, engine speed is left under the driver's control.

The system automatically switches to “Road” mode at speeds above about

31 mph (50 km/h). The  warning light disappears and the message “Standard road mode on” is displayed on the instrument panel to warn you.



#### Tyres

When they need to be replaced, only tyres of the same make, size, type and profile should be used.

**Tyres fitted to the vehicle should either be identical to those fitted originally or conform to those recommended by your approved dealer.**

## LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (1/5)

55061



Using information from the camera **1**, the function warns the driver if they cross a line (continuous or broken) without the direction indicator light being activated.

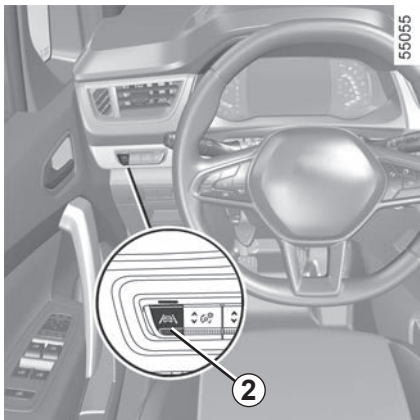
**Note:** make sure the windscreen is not obscured (dirt, mud, snow, condensation etc.).




This function is an additional driving aid. This function is not under any circumstances intended to replace the due care and attention of the driver, who should at all times be in control of the vehicle.


**The lane departure warning function does not correct the vehicle's trajectory.**

## LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (2/5)




### Activation/deactivation

To activate the function, press the **2** switch as many times as required to select “Lane Departure Warning” on the instrument panel. The “Lane departure warning on” message and “” warning light are displayed on the instrument panel.

To disable the function, press the **2** switch as many times as required to select “Lane departure warning off” (or, depending on the vehicle, “Lane Keeping deactivated”) on the instrument panel. Warning light  goes out on the instrument panel.

### Operation


When the function is activated, the

 warning light and the left and right lines **3** are displayed in grey on the instrument panel.

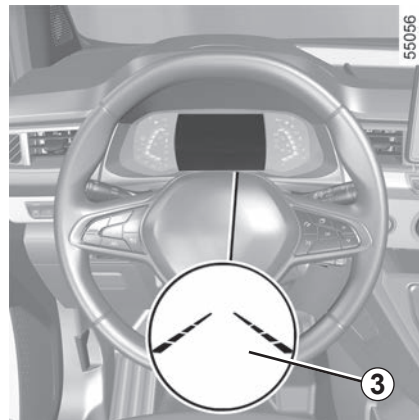
**The function is set to notify the driver if:**

- speed is between approximately 43 mph (70 km/h) and 112 mph (180 km/h);


and

- the  warning light and left/right line indicators **3** are coloured white.

**The function triggers an alert if** a line is crossed without the direction indicator being activated.



The function alerts the driver:

- by a vibration in the steering wheel;
- and
- the  warning light and **3** the indicator for the crossed line turn red.

Each time the vehicle is started, the function continues the mode saved the last time the engine was stopped.

## LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (3/5)

### Temporarily not available

- very fast lane departure;
- driving continuously on a line;
- four seconds approximately after changing lanes;
- tight bends;
- impaired visibility;
- activating the direction indicator lights;
- strong acceleration;
- changing the lane width;
- operation of the active emergency braking system;
- ...

When the function is not available, the




warning light and the left/right indicators turn to grey on the instrument panel.

### Conditions for non-activation of the system

The system cannot be activated when:

- reverse gear is engaged;
- the field of vision of the camera is obstructed;
- the **STOP** warning light is displayed.

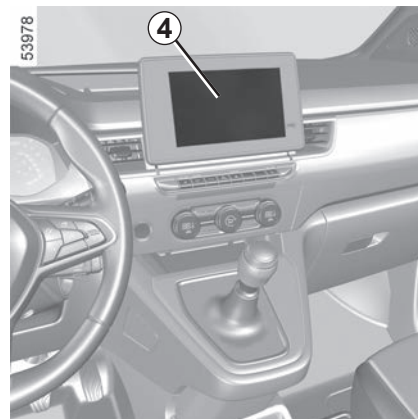
The  warning light and the left/right line indicators turn to grey on the instrument panel.

### Adjustment

#### Vehicles fitted with a multimedia screen.

To access the multimedia screen function settings **4**, refer to the multimedia instructions:

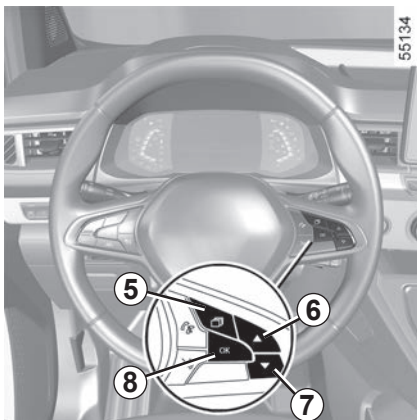
- “VIBRATION”: adjust the steering wheel vibration level;



- “Alert”: adjust the line detection sensitivity level. To do this select:
  - “At the latest”: line detected when crossing;
  - “Standard”: line detected on approach;
  - “At the sooner”: line detected nearby.

Please refer to the multimedia instructions for further information.

## LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (4/5)




### Adjustments (continued)


#### Vehicles not fitted with a multimedia screen

- With the vehicle stopped, press the switch **5** as many times as required to reach the “Vehicle” tab;
- press the **6** or **7** control repeatedly to reach the “Settings” menu. Press the switch **8 OK**;

- press control **6** or **7** repeatedly to reach the DRIVING ASSIST menu. Press the switch **8 OK**;
- scroll repeatedly by pressing control **6** or **7** to access the Lane Departure Warning sensitivity or Lane Departure Warning vibration menu. Press the switch **8 OK**;
- press the **6** or **7** control repeatedly to adjust the setting. Press the **8 OK** button.

### Operating faults

In the event of a malfunction, the left and right line indicators (and, depending on display style, the  warning light) disappear or stay grey on the instrument panel.

In some cases, they are accompanied by the message “Check Front camera” or the  warning light on the instrument panel. Consult an approved dealer.



## LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (5/5)



This function is an additional driving aid. This function is not under any circumstances intended to replace the due care and attention of the driver, who should at all times be in control of the vehicle.

### **System servicing/repairs**

- In the event of an impact, the camera alignment may be changed, and its operation may consequently be affected. Deactivate the function, then consult an authorised dealer.
- Any work in the area where the camera is located (repairs, replacements, windscreen modifications etc.) must be carried out by a qualified professional.

Only an authorised dealer is qualified to service the system.

### **In the event of system disturbance**

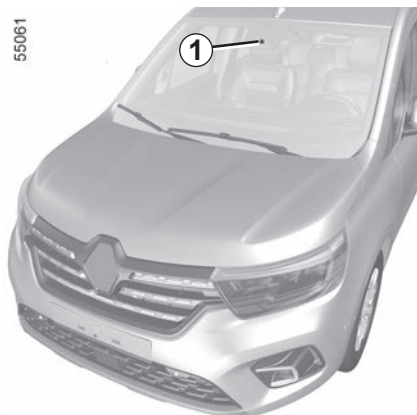
Some conditions can disturb or damage the operation of the system, such as:

- windscreen obscured (by dirt, ice, snow, condensation etc.);
- a complex environment (tunnel etc.);
- poor weather conditions (snow, rain, hail, black ice etc.) ;
- poor visibility (night, fog etc.);
- the road markings are irregular or difficult to distinguish (e.g. partially erased, excessive spacing, distorted road surface) ;
- being dazzled (glaring sun, lights of vehicles travelling in the opposite direction etc.);
- the road is narrow, winding or undulating (tight bends etc.);
- closely following a vehicle travelling in the same lane.

### **Risk of false alarms or absence of warnings**

## LANE KEEPING ASSIST (1/6)

55061



Using information from the camera **1**, the function triggers a corrective action on the vehicle steering system if a line (continuous or broken) is crossed without the direction indicator lights being activated.

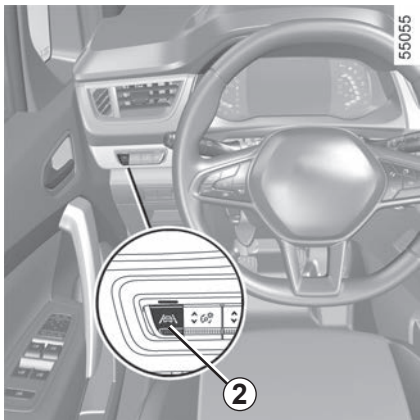
You can **retake control of the vehicle** at any time by operating the steering wheel.

**Note:** make sure the windscreen is not obscured (dirt, mud, snow, condensation etc.).




This function is an additional driving aid. This function is not under any circumstances intended to replace the due care and attention of the driver, who should at all times be in control of the vehicle.

## LANE KEEPING ASSIST (2/6)



### Activation/deactivation

To activate the function, press the **2** switch as many times as required to select “Lane Keeping Assist” on the instrument panel.

The “Lane Keeping activated” message and “” warning light are displayed on the instrument panel.

When Lane Keeping Assist is activated, the “Lane Departure Warning” function is automatically activated. ➔ 2.48.

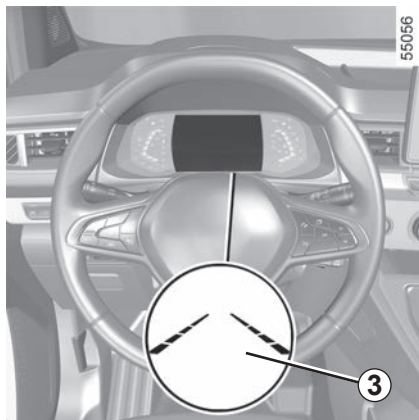
To disable the function, press the **2** switch as many times as required to select “Lane Keeping deactivated” on the instrument panel.

Warning light  goes out on the instrument panel.


**Note:** deactivating the “Lane Keeping Assist” function causes deactivation of the “Lane Departure Warning” function.


Each time the vehicle is started, the function continues the mode saved the last time the engine was stopped.

## LANE KEEPING ASSIST (3/6)




### Operation

When the function is activated, the  warning light and the left and right lines **3** are displayed in grey on the instrument panel.


**The function is set to operate** when the vehicle speed is between approximately 43 mph (70 km/h) and 112 mph (180 km/h) and if the  warning light and **3** correction indicators are coloured white.

**The function is triggered** if the vehicle crosses a line without the direction indicator lights being activated.

In these cases:


- the function triggers an action on the vehicle's steering system to correct the vehicle trajectory;
- the warning light  and the indicator **3** on the side of the breached line turns to yellow on the instrument panel.

**Note:** on bends, the function allows for slightly cutting the bend.

If the corrective action on the steering system is not sufficient, the  warning light and **3** indicator on the side of the breached line turn to red on the instrument panel, accompanied by a vibration on the steering wheel.

### Special cases

When using the function:


- if the system no longer detects any action by the driver on the steering wheel, the  warning light appears in yellow on the instrument panel, accompanied by the message "Keep hands on steering wheel" and an audible warning;
- if the steering system corrective action is active for too long, an audible warning is emitted and the indicator light **3** on the side of the line concerned flashes until the driver takes control.

You can interrupt the trajectory correction at any time by moving the steering wheel.

## LANE KEEPING ASSIST (4/6)


### Temporarily not available


- very fast lane departure;
- driving continuously on a line;
- four seconds approximately after changing lanes;
- tight bends;
- impaired visibility;
- activating the direction indicator light;
- strong acceleration;
- emergency braking;
- changing the lane width;
- operation of the active emergency braking system;
- ...

If the function is unavailable, the  warning light and the left/right correction warning lights **3** appear in grey on the instrument panel.

### Conditions for non-activation of the system

The system cannot be activated when:

- reverse gear is engaged;
- the field of vision of the camera is obstructed;
- the  warning light is displayed.

The  warning light and the left/right line warning lights are displayed in grey on the instrument panel.

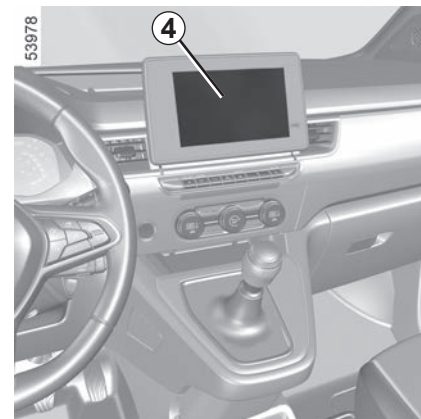
If the vehicle is equipped with a towbar that is recognised by the system, the message “Trailer: side radars OFF” is displayed to inform you that the Lane Keep Assist system is not operational.

### Adjustment

#### Vehicles fitted with a multimedia screen.

To access the multimedia screen function settings **4**, refer to the multimedia instructions:

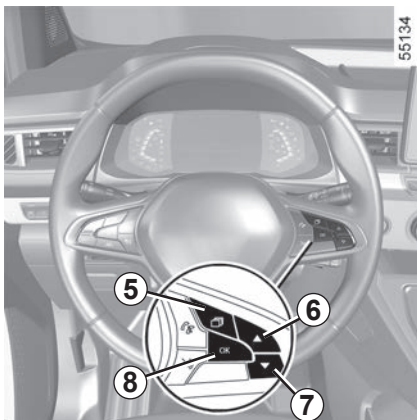
- “VIBRATION”: adjust steering wheel vibration for the “Lane Departure Warning” function;



- “Alert”: adjust the line detection sensitivity level. To do this select:
  - “At the latest”: line detected when crossing;
  - “Standard”: line detected on approach;
  - “At the sooner”: line detected nearby.

Please refer to the multimedia instructions for further information.

## LANE KEEPING ASSIST (5/6)




### Adjustments (continued)

#### Vehicles not fitted with a multimedia screen

- With the vehicle stopped, press the switch **5** as many times as required to reach the “Vehicle” tab;
- press the **6** or **7** control repeatedly to reach the “Settings” menu. Press the switch **8 OK**;

- press the **6** or **7** control repeatedly to reach the “DRIVING ASSIST” menu. Press the switch **8 OK**;
- scroll repeatedly by pressing **6** or **7** to reach the “Lane Keeping Assist sensitivity” menu. Press the switch **8 OK** ;
- scroll repeatedly pressing control **6** or **7** to adjust the setting. Press the **8 OK** button.

### Operating faults

When the system detects an operating fault, the  warning light lights up on the instrument panel, with the message “Check Front camera”.

Consult an approved dealer.

## LANE KEEPING ASSIST (6/6)



This function is an additional driving aid. This function is not under any circumstances intended to replace the due care and attention of the driver, who should at all times be in control of the vehicle.

### **System servicing/repairs**

- In the event of an impact, the camera alignment may be changed, and its operation may consequently be affected. Deactivate the function and consult an authorised dealer.
- Any work in the area where the camera is located (repairs, replacements, windscreen modifications etc.) must be carried out by a qualified professional.

Only an authorised dealer is qualified to service the system.

### **In the event of system disturbance**

Some conditions can disturb or damage the operation of the system, such as:

- windscreen obscured (by dirt, ice, snow, condensation etc.);
- a complex environment (tunnel etc.);
- poor weather conditions (snow, rain, hail, black ice etc.) ;
- poor visibility (night, fog etc.);
- the road markings are irregular or difficult to distinguish (e.g. partially erased, excessive spacing, distorted road surface) ;
- being dazzled (glaring sun, lights of vehicles travelling in the opposite direction etc.);
- the road is narrow, winding or undulating (tight bends etc.);
- closely following a vehicle travelling in the same lane.

In this case, the “Lane Keeping Assist” may react incorrectly or not at all.

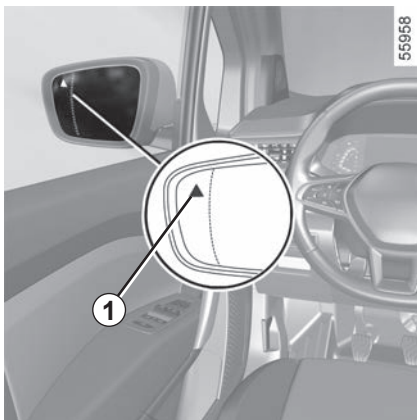
### **Risk of unwanted, incorrect correction or no correction of trajectory.**

#### **Deactivating the function**

You must disable the function if:

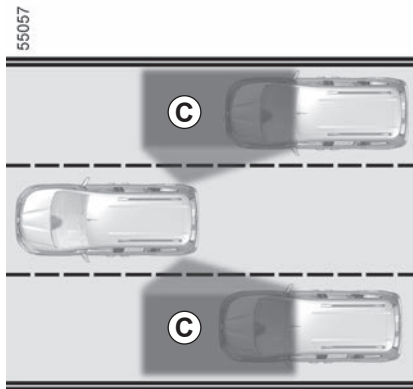
- the area of the camera has been damaged (on the windscreen side or the interior rear-view mirror side);
- the road is slippery (snow, black ice, aquaplaning, gravel etc.) ;
- the windscreen is cracked or distorted (do not carry out windscreen repairs in this area; have it changed by an Authorised Dealer);
- the vehicle is connected to a towbar that is not recognised by the system;
- the vehicle is entering an area with several surface markings (an area with road works etc.).

## BLIND SPOT WARNING (1/10)



Depending on the vehicle, there are two types of blind spot warning system:

- **System A:** uses information from ultrasonic sensors fitted in the vehicle bumpers. **When activated, the system A can be identified by indicator light 1 flashing each time the engine starts;**
- **System B:** uses information from the radars fitted on each side of the rear bumper. **When activated, the system B can be identified by indicator light 1 not flashing each time the engine starts.**



### A system

Using information from the ultrasonic sensors indicated by the arrows 2, that are fitted in the vehicle bumpers, the system notifies the driver when another vehicle appears in the detection zone C.

The system is activated when the vehicle speed is between approximately 18 mph (30 km/h) and 80 mph (130 km/h).



This function is an additional driving aid. This function is not under any circumstances intended to replace the due care and attention of the driver, who should at all times be in control of the vehicle.



## BLIND SPOT WARNING (2/10)



55928

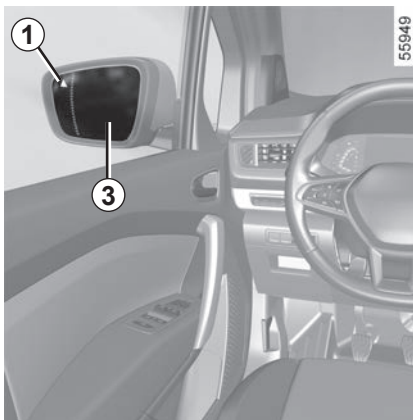
### A system

(continued)

#### Special feature

Ensure that the ultrasonic sensors installed in the vehicle bumpers are not obscured (by dirt, mud, snow etc.).

If one of the sensors is obscured, the message "Side radars no visibility" will appear on the instrument panel. Clean the ultrasonic sensor zones.



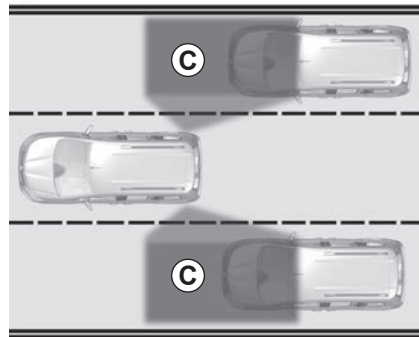
55949

#### Indicator 1

An indicator light **1** is located on each rear view mirror **3**.

**Note:** clean the rear view mirrors **3** regularly so that the indicators **1** can be seen.

55057



#### Operation

The function alerts you if your vehicle speed is between approximately 18 mph (30 km/h) and 80 mph (130 km/h) while another vehicle is in the blind spot **C** and moving in the same direction as your vehicle.

If you overtake another vehicle, the indicator **1** will only come on if that vehicle remains for a long enough period in your vehicle's blind spot **C**.

## BLIND SPOT WARNING (3/10)

(D)



(E)



①

55950

### A system (continued)

#### Display D

First warning: **when the direction indicator is not activated**, the **3** warning light signals that a vehicle is detected in the blind spot.

#### Display E

**Direction indicator activated**, the **1** warning light flashes when the function detects a vehicle in the blind spot warning area and/or a vehicle is rapidly approaching from the rear on the side towards which you will turn the wheel. If you cancel the direction indicator, the function will return to the initial warning (display **D**).

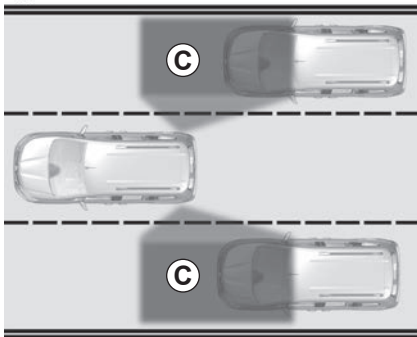
#### Conditions for non-function

- When driving on a road with tight bends;
- in reverse;
- speed below 18 mph (30 km/h);
- speed above 80 mph (130 km/h).

If the vehicle is equipped with a towbar recognised by the system, the “Trailer: side radars OFF” message displayed on the instrument panel informs you that the function is not operational. For information on the range of equipment adapted to your vehicle, we advise you to consult an approved Dealer.

## BLIND SPOT WARNING (4/10)

55057



### B system

Using information from the sensors installed on each side of the rear bumper (area **G**), the function warns the driver:

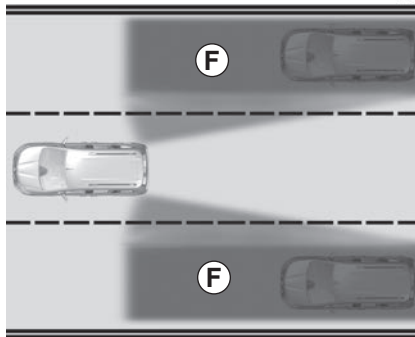
- when another vehicle appears in the detection area **C**;

and/or

- when there is a risk of collision with a vehicle that is in area **F**, driving faster than you.

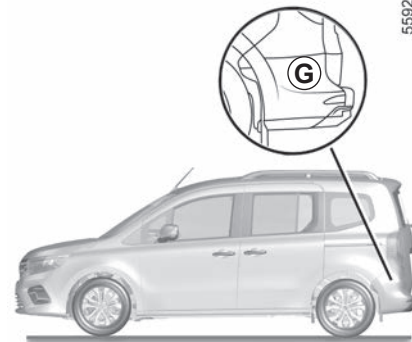
The function warns you when the vehicle is travelling at a speed above approximately 9 mph (15 km/h).

55306



This function is an additional driving aid. This function is not under any circumstances intended to replace the due care and attention of the driver, who should at all times be in control of the vehicle.

55925

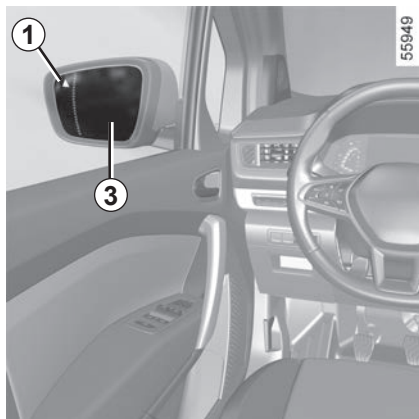


### Special feature

Ensure that the **G** area around the radars on each side of the rear bumper are not obstructed (by dirt, mud, snow etc.)

If a radar is obscured, the message “Side radars no visibility” will appear on the instrument panel. Clean the radar area.

## BLIND SPOT WARNING (5/10)



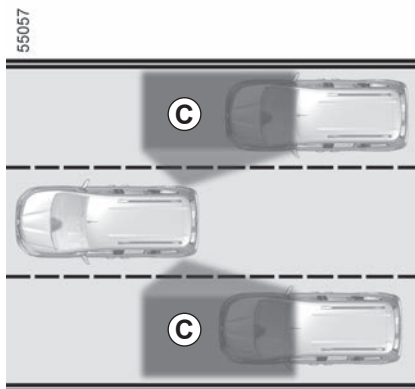
### B system

(continued)

#### Indicator 1

An indicator light **1** is located on each rear view mirror **3**.

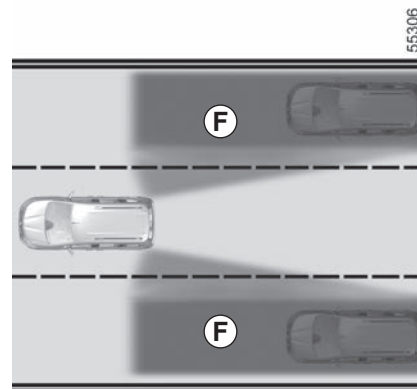
**Note:** clean the rear view mirrors **3** regularly so that the indicators **1** can be seen.



### Operation

The function warns you when the speed of your vehicle is over 9 mph (15 km/h):

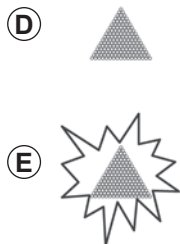
- when another vehicle is in the blind spot area **C** and travelling in the same direction as your vehicle;
- when a vehicle approaches quickly from the rear in an adjacent lane within the range of detection area **F**.



If you overtake another vehicle, the indicator **1** will only come on if that vehicle remains for a long enough period in your vehicle's blind spot **C**.

The function does not notify the driver if the other vehicles are not moving.

## BLIND SPOT WARNING (6/10)



①

55950

### B system (continued)

#### Display D

First warning: **direction indicator not activated**, the **1** warning light indicates that a vehicle is detected in the blind spot area and/or that a vehicle is rapidly approaching from the rear in an adjacent lane.

#### Display E

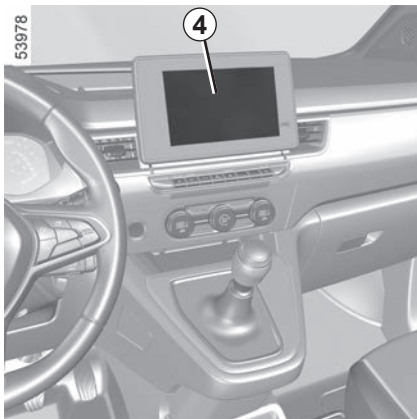
**Direction indicator activated**, the **1** warning light flashes when the function detects a vehicle in the blind spot warning area and/or a vehicle is rapidly approaching from the rear on the side towards which you will turn the wheel. If you cancel the direction indicator, the function will return to the initial warning (display **D**).

#### Conditions for non-function

- When driving on a road with tight bends;
- in reverse.

If the vehicle is equipped with a towbar recognised by the system, the “Trailer: side radars OFF” message displayed on the instrument panel informs you that the function is not operational. For information on the range of equipment adapted to your vehicle, we advise you to consult an approved Dealer.

## BLIND SPOT WARNING (7/10)



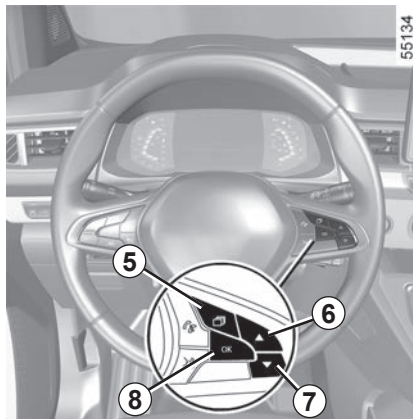
### Systems A and B

#### Activation/deactivation

##### Vehicles fitted with a multimedia screen 4

To activate or deactivate the function, refer to the multimedia instructions.

Select "ON" or "OFF".



##### Vehicles not fitted with a multimedia screen

- With the vehicle stopped, press the switch **5** as many times as required to reach the "Vehicle" tab;
- press the **6** or **7** control repeatedly to reach the "Settings" menu. Press the switch **8 OK**;

- press the **6** or **7** control repeatedly to reach the "DRIVING ASSIST" menu. Press the switch **8 OK**;
- press the **6** or **7** control repeatedly to reach the "Blind spot alert" menu and press the **8 OK** switch;
- press the switch **8 OK** again to activate or deactivate the function:



function activated



function deactivated

When the engine is started, the system recalls the last position stored before the ignition was switched off.

The system's detection range operates according to a standard lane width. When driving in a narrow lane, the function can warn you when a vehicle is detected beyond the adjacent lane.

## BLIND SPOT WARNING (8/10)

### Systems A and B

(continued)

#### Operating faults

If the system detects a fault, the message “Check Side radars” is displayed on the instrument panel. Consult an approved dealer.

Due to the presence of radars or ultrasonic sensors (depending on the vehicle) behind the bumper, it is advisable to entrust any operation on the bumper (repair, replacement, paintwork etc.) to a qualified professional.



- The system's detection range operates according to a standard lane width. If you are driving in wide traffic lanes, the system might not be able to detect a vehicle in the blind spot.
- The system might be disrupted momentarily if it is exposed to strong electromagnetic waves (as beneath high-tension power lines) or to very poor weather conditions (heavy rain, snow etc.). Remain aware of driving conditions.

**There is a risk of accidents.**

## BLIND SPOT WARNING (9/10)



This function is an additional driving aid. This function is not under any circumstances intended to replace the due care and attention of the driver, who should at all times be in control of the vehicle.

The driver should always adapt their speed to the traffic conditions, regardless of the system indications.

The system should under no circumstances be taken to be an obstacle detector or an anti-collision system.

### **System servicing/repairs**

- In the event of an impact, the alignment of the radars or ultrasonic sensors (depending on the vehicle) may be altered and their operation may consequently be affected. Deactivate the function and consult an authorised dealer.
- Any work (repairs, replacements etc.) in the area where the radars or ultrasonic sensors (depending on the vehicle) are located must be carried out by a qualified professional.

Only an authorised dealer is qualified to service the system.

### **System disturbance**

Some conditions can disturb or damage the operation of the system, such as:

- complex surroundings (metal bridges, tunnels, roads with barriers at the edge, etc.);
- poor weather conditions (snow, hail, black ice, etc.).

### **Risk of false alarms or absence of warnings**

In the event of the system behaving abnormally, deactivate it and consult an authorised dealer.



## BLIND SPOT WARNING (10/10)



### **Limitation of the system operation**

- The radars or ultrasonic sensors area (depending on the vehicle) should be kept clean and free of any modifications in order to ensure the proper operation of the system.
- Small objects moving close to the vehicle (motorcycles, bicycles, pedestrians, etc.) may not be recognised by the system.
- When turning into a bend, the radars or ultrasonic sensors (depending on the vehicle) may temporarily cease to detect vehicles in adjacent lanes.
- The function may warn you late if two other vehicles are approaching from the rear, driving side by side in the adjacent lanes (i.e. driving on a 3-lane road) at a much higher speed than your vehicle.
- The system may not provide a warning when the other vehicles are travelling at a significantly different speed.
- If the vehicle is being overtaken by a long vehicle (e.g. heavy goods vehicle overtaking at a similar speed to the vehicle) the system may interrupt the warning before the end of the manoeuvre.
- The vehicle is travelling on a winding road.

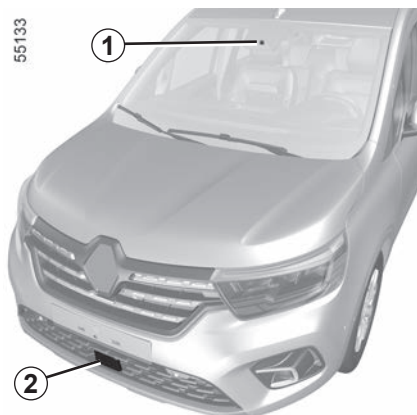
### **Deactivating the function**

You must disable the function if:

- There has been damage in the area where the radars or ultrasonic sensors (depending on the vehicle) are located;
- the vehicle is fitted with a towbar that is not recognised by the system.

## SAFE DISTANCE ALERT (1/4)

55133



Using the information from the radar **2** and camera **1**, this function informs the driver of the time interval between their vehicle and the vehicle in front so that a safe stopping distance between the two vehicles can be maintained.

The function is activated when the vehicle speed is between about 19 and 124 mph (30 and 200 km/h).

### **Location of the camera 1**

Make sure the windscreen is not obscured (by dirt, mud, snow, condensation etc.).

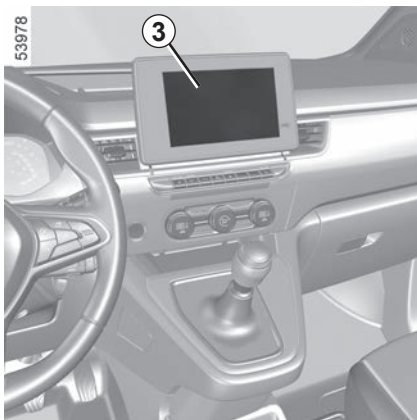
### **Location of the front radar 2**

Ensure that the radar area is not obstructed (by dirt, mud, snow, a badly fitted front number plate), impacted, modified (including painting) or hidden by any accessory fitted on the front of the vehicle (on the grille or logo etc.).



This function is an additional driving aid. This function is not under any circumstances intended to replace the due care and attention of the driver, who should at all times be in control of the vehicle.

## SAFE DISTANCE ALERT (2/4)

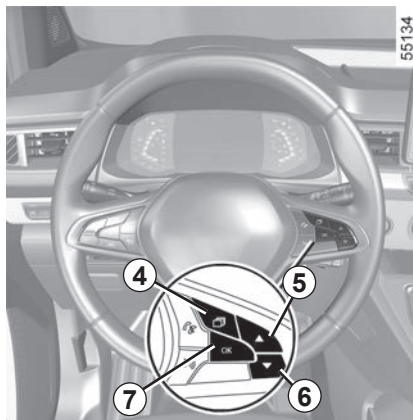


### Activating/deactivating the function

#### Vehicles fitted with a multimedia screen 3

To activate or deactivate the function, refer to the multimedia instructions.

Select "ON" or "OFF".



#### Vehicles not fitted with a multimedia screen

- With the vehicle stopped, press the switch **4** as many times as required to reach the "Vehicle" tab;
- press the **5** or **6** control repeatedly to reach the "Settings" menu. Press the switch **7 OK**;
- press the **5** or **6** control repeatedly to reach the "DRIVING ASSIST" menu. Press the switch **7 OK**;

- press the **5** or **6** control repeatedly to reach the "Distance warning" menu. Press the switch **7 OK**;
- Press the switch **7 OK** again to activate or deactivate the function:



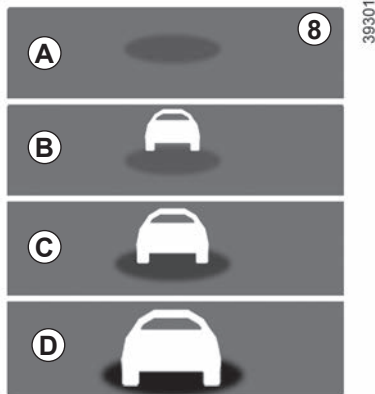
function activated



function deactivated

Each time the vehicle is started, the function continues the mode saved the last time the engine was stopped.

## SAFE DISTANCE ALERT (3/4)



### Operation

With the function activated, the **8** indicator is displayed on the instrument panel and informs the driver of the distance between their vehicle and the vehicle in front.

- **A** (grey): function not operational;
- **A** (green): no vehicle detected;
- **B** (green): the time interval is greater than or equal to around two seconds (distance between the two vehicles adapted to your speed);

- **C** (orange): the time interval falls between around 1 and 2 seconds (insufficient distance between the two vehicles);
- **D** (red): the time interval is less than or equal to around one second (very insufficient distance between the two vehicles).

If the interval between the two vehicles is less than approximately 0.5 seconds, the **8** indicator and the **D** display will flash in red on the instrument panel along with “-.- s”.

Under certain conditions, the time interval may not be displayed:

- while cornering;
- when changing lane;
- if the vehicle in front is sufficiently far or outside the range of the radar or camera.



The measurement is displayed for information: the system does not carry out any action on the vehicle.

This function is not designed for use in urban conditions or for a dynamic driving style (sudden cornering, acceleration, braking, etc.), but rather for stable driving conditions.

The function does not interact with the braking system.

The radar and camera zones must be kept clean and free of any tampering in order to ensure the proper operation of the system.

Any work carried out in the area where the radar or camera is located (repairs, replacements, windscreen and/or bumper modifications, etc.) must be carried out by a qualified professional.

## SAFE DISTANCE ALERT (4/4)



This function is an additional driving aid. This function is not under any circumstances intended to replace the due care and attention of the driver, who should at all times be in control of the vehicle.

### **System servicing/repairs**

- In the event of an impact, the radar and/or camera alignment may be changed and its operation may consequently be affected. Deactivate the function and consult an authorised dealer.
- Any work carried out in the area where the radar and/or camera is located (replacements, repairs, windscreen and/or bumper modifications, etc.) must be carried out by a qualified professional.

Only an authorised dealer is qualified to service the system.

### **In the event of system disturbance**

- obstruction of the windscreen or the bumper (by dirt, glass, snow, condensation, etc.);
- a complex environment (metal bridge, tunnel etc.);
- poor weather conditions (snow, hail, black ice etc.);
- poor visibility (night, fog etc.);
- poor contrast between the vehicle preceding it and the surrounding area (e.g. white vehicle in a snowy area etc.) ;
- being dazzled (glaring sun, lights of vehicles travelling in the opposite direction etc.);
- the road is narrow, winding and undulating (tight bends etc.)

### **Risk of erroneous false alarms.**

## ADVANCED SAFETY (1/17)

The “Advanced Security” system consists of:

- active emergency braking;
- and
- Emergency Lane Keep Assist.

The “Advanced Safety” system uses information from the camera **1**, front radar **2** and side radars **3**.



This system provides an additional driving aid.

This system is not, under any circumstances, intended to replace the due care and attention of the driver, who should at all times be in control of the vehicle.

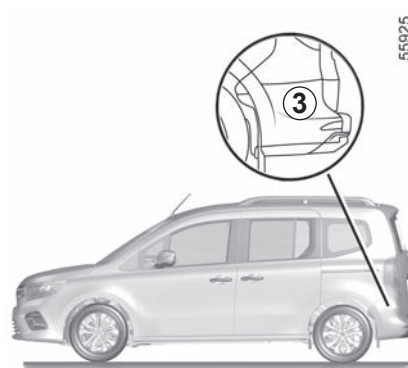


### Location of the camera 1

Make sure the windscreen is not obscured (by dirt, mud, snow, condensation etc.).

### Location of the front radar 2

Ensure that the radar area is not obstructed (by dirt, mud, snow, a badly fitted front number plate), impacted, modified (including painting) or hidden by any accessory fitted on the front of the vehicle (on the grille or logo etc.).

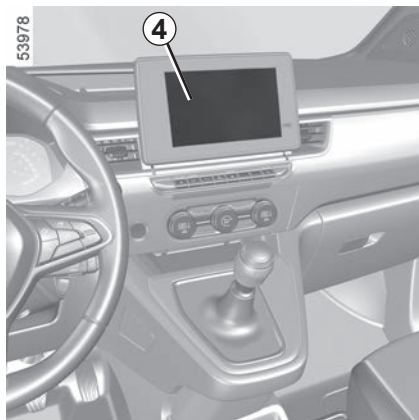


### Location of the side radars 3

Ensure that the radar area is not obstructed (by dirt, mud, snow etc.), impacted or modified (including paintwork etc.).

Depending on the sensitivity setting selected, the “Lane Keep Assist” function may be used prior to operation of the “Advanced Safety” system.

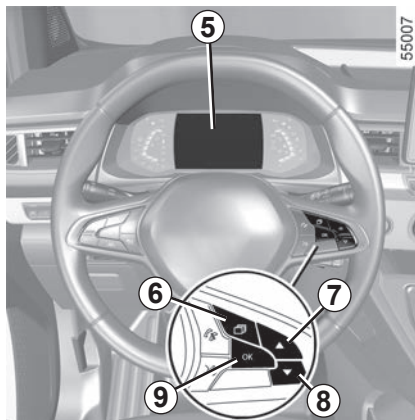
## ADVANCED SAFETY (2/17)



### Activating, deactivating the system from the multimedia screen 4 (depending on the vehicle)

To activate or deactivate the function, refer to the multimedia instructions.

Select “ON” or “OFF”.



### Activating, deactivating the system from the trip computer 5

- With the vehicle stopped, press the **6** switch as many times as required to reach the “Vehicle” tab;
- press the **7** or **8** control repeatedly to reach the “Settings” menu. Press the switch **9 OK**;
- press the **7** or **8** control repeatedly to reach the “DRIVING ASSIST” menu. Press the switch **9 OK**;

- press the **7** or **8** control repeatedly to reach the “Advanced Safety” menu and press **9 OK**.

Press the switch **9 OK** again to activate or deactivate the function:



function activated




function deactivated

Upon deactivation of the system, the



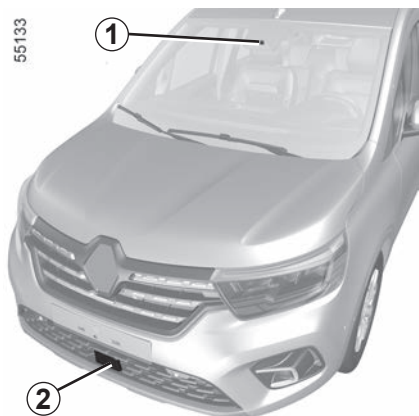
warning light illuminates or, de-

pending on the vehicle, the  warning light illuminates in yellow on the instrument panel.

When the system is activated, the warning light disappears.

This system is reactivated each time the ignition is switched on.

55133



### Active emergency braking

The system uses information from the radar **2** and the camera **1** to determine the distance between your vehicle

- from the vehicle ahead in the same lane;

or

- from any oncoming vehicles in the context of a manoeuvre to change direction;

or

- surrounding pedestrians and cyclists.

The system informs the driver if there is a risk of head-on collision to enable appropriate emergency manoeuvres (pressing the brake pedal and/or turning the steering wheel).

Depending on the reactivity of the driver, the system can assist with braking in order to limit damage or prevent a collision.



This function is an additional driving aid.

This function is not under any circumstances intended to replace the due care and attention of the driver, who should at all times be in control of the vehicle.

**This system can apply maximum braking to the vehicle** until it is completely stationary if necessary.

For safety reasons, always wear your seat belt when travelling in your vehicle and make sure that it is loaded so that no items can be thrown forward and hit the occupants.



## ADVANCED SAFETY (4/17)


### Active emergency braking

(continued)

#### Detection of vehicles

If driving at a speed between approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) and 110 mph (180 km/h) and there is a risk of collision with the vehicle in front, with an on-coming vehicle in the context of a manoeuvre to change direction, or with a stationary vehicle, the system:

- **warns you of a collision risk:**

the  red warning light, or, depending on the vehicle, the display **10** and the message “Brake” appear on the instrument panel, accompanied by a beep.

If the driver presses the brake pedal and the system still detects a risk of collision, the braking force may be increased if it is not sufficient to prevent the collision.

- **may trigger braking:**

if the driver fails to react following the alert and collision becomes imminent.



If active emergency braking has caused the vehicle to stop, the vehicle is kept stationary for a short time. Beyond this time limit, the vehicle must be held stationary by the driver keeping their foot on the brake pedal.

**Note:** if the driver uses the vehicle controls (steering wheel, pedals, etc.) the system may delay certain operations or not activate.

In the event of emergency manoeuvre, you can stop braking at any moment by:

- tapping the accelerator pedal;
- or
- turning the steering wheel as a collision avoidance manoeuvre.

## ADVANCED SAFETY (5/17)

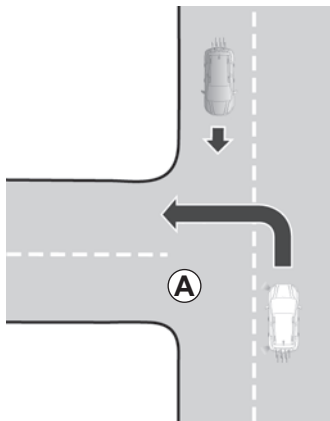
### Active emergency braking (continued)

#### Special features of oncoming vehicles in the context of a manoeuvre to change direction

When you wish to change direction (e.g. **A**), oncoming vehicles travelling at approximately 18 mph (30 km/h) to 35 mph (55 km/h) are detected by the system when:

- your vehicle is travelling at a speed between approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) to 12 mph (20 km/h);
- you have activated the direction indicator light.

**The system is otherwise inactive and does not trigger an alert.**



53577

#### Special features of stationary vehicles

Stationary vehicles are detected when your vehicle is being driven at a speed between approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) and 62 mph (100 km/h). The system is not active and does not emit a warning for stationary vehicles when your vehicle speed exceeds approximately 62 mph (100 km/h).

#### Special features of warnings

Depending on the speed, the warning and braking may be activated simultaneously.



This function is an additional driving aid.

This function is not under any circumstances intended to replace the due care and attention of the driver, who should at all times be in control of the vehicle.

## ADVANCED SAFETY (6/17)


### Active emergency braking

(continued)

#### Detection of pedestrians and cyclists

When driving at a speed between approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) and 53 mph (86 km/h), if there is a risk of collision with a cyclist or pedestrian, the system:

- **warns you of a collision risk:**

the  red warning light, or, depending on the vehicle, the display **10** and the message “Brake” appear on the instrument panel, accompanied by a beep.

If the driver presses the brake pedal and the system still detects a risk of collision, the braking force may be increased if it is not sufficient to prevent the collision.

- **may trigger braking:**

if the driver fails to react following the alert and collision becomes imminent.



If active emergency braking has caused the vehicle to stop, the vehicle is kept stationary for a short time. Beyond this time limit, the vehicle must be held stationary by the driver keeping their foot on the brake pedal.

**Note:** if the driver uses the vehicle controls (steering wheel, pedals, etc.) the system may delay certain operations or not activate.

In the event of emergency manoeuvre, you can stop braking at any moment by:

- tapping the accelerator pedal;
- or
- turning the steering wheel as a collision avoidance manoeuvre.

## ADVANCED SAFETY (7/17)

### Active emergency braking

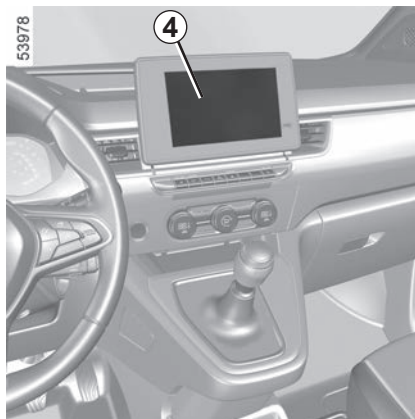
(continued)

#### Settings for vehicles equipped with a multimedia screen

To access the multimedia screen function settings **4**, refer to the multimedia instructions:

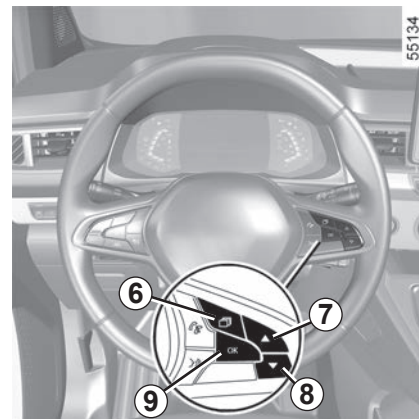
- “Alert”: adjust the alert sensitivity level. To do this select:
  - “At the latest”;
  - “Standard”;
  - “At the sooner”.

Please refer to the multimedia instructions for further information.



#### Settings for vehicles not equipped with a multimedia screen

- With the vehicle stopped, press the switch **6** as many times as required to reach the “Vehicle” tab;
- press the **7** or **8** control repeatedly to reach the “Settings” menu. Press the switch **9 OK**;



- press control **7** or **8** repeatedly to reach the DRIVING ASSIST menu. Press the switch **8 OK**;
- scroll repeatedly by pressing control **7** or **8** to reach the “Active braking sensitivity” menu. Press the switch **9 OK**;
- press the **7** or **8** control repeatedly to adjust the setting. Press the **9 OK** button.


## ADVANCED SAFETY (8/17)


### Active emergency braking

(continued)

#### Temporarily not available

If the system detects a temporary fault

the  warning light illuminates, or


depending on the vehicle, the  warning light illuminates in yellow on the instrument panel.


The possible causes are:

- the system is temporarily blinded (glare from the sun, dipped beam headlights, bad weather conditions etc.). The system will be operational again when visibility conditions are better;
- the system is temporarily interrupted (e.g. the windscreen or the front or rear bumper is obscured by dirt, mud, snow, condensation, etc.). In this case, park the vehicle and switch off the engine. Clean the windscreen and front bumper. The next time the engine is started, after five or ten minutes of driving, the warning light and the message disappear.

If this is not the case, this may arise from another cause; contact an Approved Dealer.

### Operating faults

When the function detects an operating fault, the warning lights  and

 or, depending on the vehicle,

 and , appear in yellow on the instrument panel accompanied by the message “Check Front camera” or “Front radar to check” or “Check Camera/Radar”.

Consult an approved dealer.



### Active emergency braking

This function is an additional driving aid. This function is not under any circumstances intended to replace the due care and attention of the driver, who should at all times be in control of the vehicle. The triggering of this function may be delayed or prevented when the system detects clear signs of control of the vehicle by the driver (action on the steering wheel, pedals etc.).

The system cannot be activated:

- when the gearbox lever is in neutral or the clutch pedal has been depressed for approximately two seconds;
- when the parking brake has been activated for approximately ten seconds.

### System servicing/repairs

- In the event of an impact, the radar and/or camera alignment may be changed and its operation may consequently be affected. Deactivate the function and consult an authorised dealer.
- Any work in the area where the radar and/or camera is located (repairs, replacements, windscreen modifications, etc.) must be carried out by a qualified professional.

Only an authorised dealer is qualified to service the system.



### System disturbance

Some conditions can disturb or damage the operation of the system, such as:

- a complex environment (metal bridge, tunnel etc.);
- poor weather conditions (snow, hail, black ice etc.);
- poor visibility (night, fog etc.);
- poor contrast between the object (vehicle, pedestrian etc.) and the surrounding area (e.g. pedestrian dressed in white located in a snowy area etc.) ;
- being dazzled (glaring sun, lights of vehicles travelling in the opposite direction etc.);
- windscreen obscured (by dirt, ice, snow, condensation etc.);
- ...

In these conditions, the system may not react, may warn the driver or may brake inadvertently.

### Limitation of the system operation

- Each time the vehicle is started, the system carries out a calibration according to the vehicle surroundings and may be inactive for a length of time between approximately two to five minutes of driving;
- An oncoming vehicle will not trigger any warning or system action if the conditions in the paragraph “Special features of oncoming vehicles in the context of a manoeuvre to change direction” are not met (see previous pages);
- The radar and camera zones must be kept clean and free of any tampering in order to ensure the proper operation of the system;
- the system may not respond to small vehicles such as motorbikes as effectively as to other vehicles;
- the system may not operate properly when the road surface is slippery (rain, snow, black ice, etc.);
- to ensure correct operation, the system needs to distinguish the complete outline of the pedestrian. So the system cannot detect:
  - pedestrians in the darkness or in poor lighting conditions;
  - partially visible pedestrians;
  - pedestrians less than approximately 80 cm tall;
  - pedestrians carrying large objects;
  - ...

In these conditions, the system may not react or may brake inadvertently.



### **Deactivating the function**

You must disable the function if:

- the brake lights are not functioning;
- the area of the camera has been damaged (e.g. on the inside or outside of the windscreen);
- the front of the vehicle was damaged (impact, distortion, scratch on the radar etc.);
- the vehicle is being towed (breakdowns);
- the windscreen is cracked or distorted (do not carry out windscreen repairs in this area; have it changed by an approved dealer);
- you are not driving on a paved road.

In the event of the system behaving abnormally, deactivate it and consult an authorised dealer.

### **Halting the function**

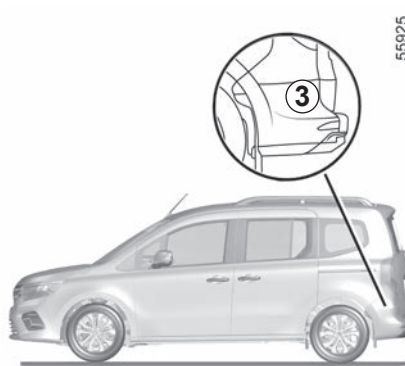
You can halt the active braking function at any time by tapping the accelerator pedal or by turning the steering wheel in a collision avoidance manoeuvre.





### Emergency Lane Keep Assist

Using information from the camera **1**, the function triggers corrective action on the vehicle steering system when approaching the roadside (divider, barrier, pavement, embankment etc.) without the direction indicator light having been activated.



Using information from the radar **2** and the camera **1**, the function triggers corrective action on the vehicle steering system in the event of a risk of collision with a vehicle coming from the opposite direction in the adjacent lane, without the direction indicator having been activated.

Depending on the vehicle, using information from the radars **3** and the camera **1**, the function triggers corrective action on the vehicle steering system in the event of a risk of collision with a vehicle moving at the same speed or at a higher speed, if within the detection area of the rear radars.

You can **retake control of the vehicle** at any time by operating the steering wheel.



This system provides an additional driving aid.

This system is not, under any circumstances, intended to replace the due care and attention of the driver, who should at all times be in control of the vehicle.


## ADVANCED SAFETY (13/17)

### Emergency Lane Keep Assist (continued)

#### Roadside detection

When driving at a speed between approximately 43 mph (70 km/h) and 110 mph (180 km/h), when approaching the roadside (on the ground, barrier, pavement, embankment etc.), without the direction indicator having been activated, the system:

- **warns you of a collision risk:**


the  warning light appears in red or, depending on the vehicle, the **11** display appears on the instrument panel accompanied by a beep; and

- **triggers corrective action on the steering system.**



#### Special feature

In the event the function operates repeatedly when approaching the roadside, if the system does not detect any

hands on the steering wheel, the  warning lights appear in yellow on the instrument panel.



This function is an additional driving aid.

This function is not under any circumstances intended to replace the due care and attention of the driver, who should at all times be in control of the vehicle.


## ADVANCED SAFETY (14/17)

### Emergency Lane Keep Assist (continued)

#### Detection of an oncoming vehicle

When driving at a speed between approximately 43 mph (70 km/h) and 68 mph (110 km/h), if there is a risk of collision with a vehicle coming from the opposite direction in an adjacent lane and within the detection zone **B**, without the direction indicator having been activated, the system:

- **warns you of a collision risk:**

the  warning light appears in red or, depending on the vehicle, the **11** display appears on the instrument panel accompanied by a beep; and

- **triggers corrective action on the steering system.**

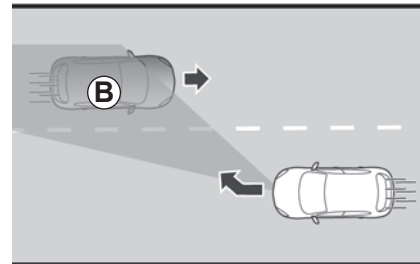
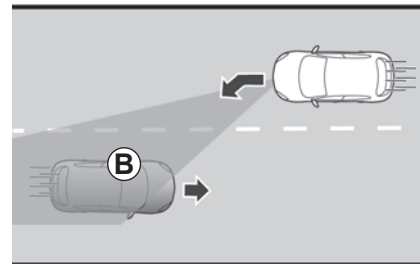


You can interrupt the trajectory correction at any time by moving the steering wheel.



This function is an additional driving aid.

This function is not under any circumstances intended to replace the due care and attention of the driver, who should at all times be in control of the vehicle.



## ADVANCED SAFETY (15/17)

### Emergency Lane Keep Assist (continued)

#### Detection of a vehicle approaching from the rear

(depending on the vehicle)

While driving at a speed below 43 mph (70 km/h) and 110 mph (180 km/h), if a line (continuous or broken) is crossed while there is a risk of collision with a vehicle located in the blind spot **C** and it is moving in the same direction as your vehicle or with a vehicle that is rapidly approaching from behind or in an adjacent lane that is in the detection area **D**, the system:

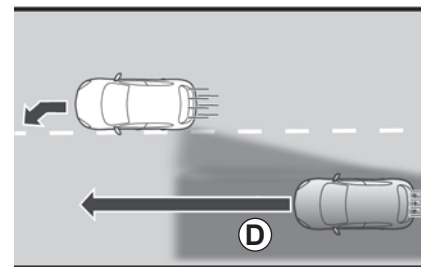
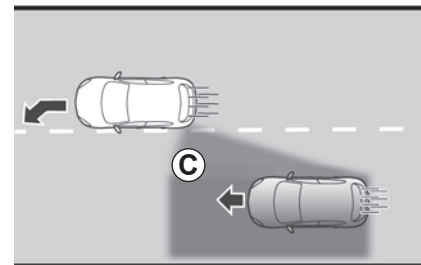
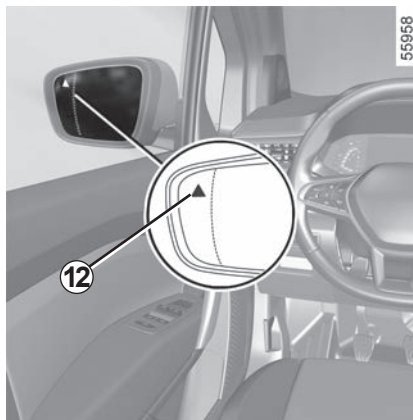
- **warns you of the risk of collision:** the warning light **12** flashes and the



warning light appears in red, or, depending on the vehicle, the **13** display lights up on the instrument panel accompanied by a beep;

and

- **triggers corrective action on the steering system.**



## ADVANCED SAFETY (16/17)

### Emergency Lane Keep Assist (continued)


#### Temporarily not available:



- very fast lane departure;
- driving continuously on a line;
- approximately four seconds after changing lanes;
- tight bends;
- impaired visibility;
- activating the direction indicator light;
- strong acceleration;
- emergency braking;
- changing the lane width;
- operation of the active emergency braking system.
- ...

Depending on the vehicle, if one of the side radars is obscured the message “Check Side radars” will appear on the instrument panel.

#### Conditions for non-activation of the system


The system cannot be activated when:

- reverse gear is engaged;
- the field of vision of the camera is obstructed;
- the front radar is obscured;
- the rear radars are obscured;
- the  warning light is displayed.

If one of the side radars is obscured, the  warning light, or, depending on the vehicle, the  warning light appears in yellow accompanied by the message “Side radars no visibility”. Clean the area where the sensors are located.

If the vehicle is equipped with a towbar that is recognised by the system, the




warning light, or, depending on the vehicle, the  warning light appears in yellow accompanied by the message “Trailer: side radars OFF” to inform you that the Emergency Lane Keep Assist is not operational.

If the vehicle is towing a trailer or caravan, unexpected or unnecessary corrections may occur. In this case you can deactivate the “Advanced Security” function to avoid unexpected or unnecessary corrections.

#### Operating faults

When the function detects an operating fault, the  and  or, depending on the vehicle, the  and

 warning lights appear in yellow on the instrument panel accompanied by the message “Check Front camera” or “Front radar to check” or “Check Camera/Radar” or “Check Side radars”.

Consult an approved dealer.



This function is an additional driving aid. This function is not under any circumstances intended to replace the due care and attention of the driver, who should at all times be in control of the vehicle.

### **System servicing/repairs**

- In the event of an impact, the alignment of the camera or radar(s) may be altered and its operation may consequently be affected. Deactivate the function and consult an authorised dealer.
- Any work in the area where the camera or radars are located (replacements, repairs, windscreen modifications etc.) must be carried out by a qualified professional.

Only an authorised dealer is qualified to service the system.

### **In the event of system disturbance**

Some conditions can disturb or damage the operation of the system, such as:

- windscreen obscured (by dirt, ice, snow, condensation etc.);
- a complex environment (tunnel etc.);
- poor weather conditions (snow, rain, hail, black ice etc.) ;
- poor visibility (night, fog etc.);
- the road markings are irregular or difficult to distinguish (e.g. partially erased, excessive spacing, distorted road surface) ;
- being dazzled (glaring sun, lights of vehicles travelling in the opposite direction etc.);
- the road is narrow, winding or undulating (tight bends etc.);
- closely following a vehicle travelling in the same lane.

In this case, the “Advanced Safety” function may react incorrectly or not at all.

### **Risk of unwanted, incorrect correction or no correction of trajectory.**

#### **Deactivating the function**

You must disable the function if:

- the camera area (on the windscreen side or the interior rear-view mirror side) or radar area(s) have been damaged;
- the windscreen is cracked or distorted (do not carry out windscreen repairs in this area; have it changed by an Authorised Dealer);
- the vehicle is being towed (breakdowns);
- you are not driving on a paved road.

## FATIGUE DETECTION WARNING (1/2)

The fatigue detection warning is a function which is useful on monotonous roads (motorways, high-speed roads etc.).

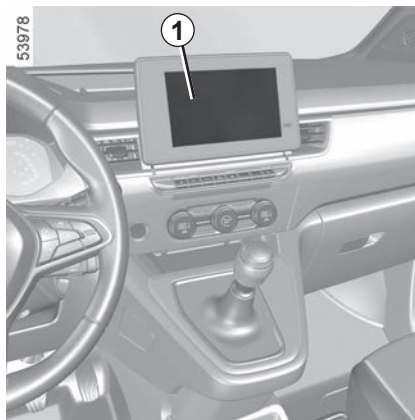
It analyses driver behaviour and takes account of events to inform you of any risk of fatigue such as:

- steering wheel movement;
- driver actions on other devices (indicators, windscreen washer etc.);
- time spent driving without stopping;
- ...



This function is an additional driving aid in case of risk of fatigue. This function does not take the place of the driver.

Under no circumstances should this function replace the driver's care or responsibility whilst driving.



### Activation/deactivation

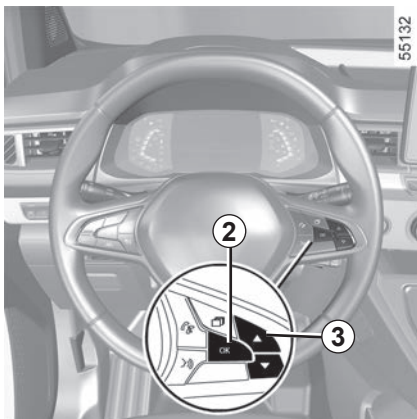
#### Vehicles fitted with a multimedia screen 1

To activate or deactivate the function, refer to the multimedia instructions.

Select ON or OFF.

The function is activated by default every time the vehicle is started.

## FATIGUE DETECTION WARNING (2/2)



### Vehicles not fitted with a multimedia screen

- With the vehicle at a standstill, press and hold the switch **2 OK** to access the settings menu;
- repeatedly press the control **3** up or down until you reach the “Driving assistance” menu. Press the switch **2 OK**;

- repeatedly press the control **3** up or down until you reach the Fatigue detection warning menu, then press the switch **2 OK** .
- press the **2 OK** switch again to activate or deactivate the function.

### Operation

#### The function is set to notify the driver if:

- the vehicle is driven for at least five minutes after each time the vehicle is stopped
  - the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 mph (65 km/h);
- and
- approximately 10 minutes have passed since the deletion of the previous warning.

**The function triggers an alert if the system detects repeated signs of fatigue in the driver at the steering wheel.**

When a risk of fatigue is detected, the message “Fatigue warning have a break” is displayed on the instrument panel accompanied by a beep.

Press switch **2 OK** to delete the warning.

It is advisable to stop as soon as possible for a break.

#### Note:

- if the warning is not deleted by pressing switch **2 OK**, the beep repeats;
- the function may interpret certain driving styles as a sign of tiredness (sporty driving, incorrect driving etc.) or driving along a road which is in poor condition.

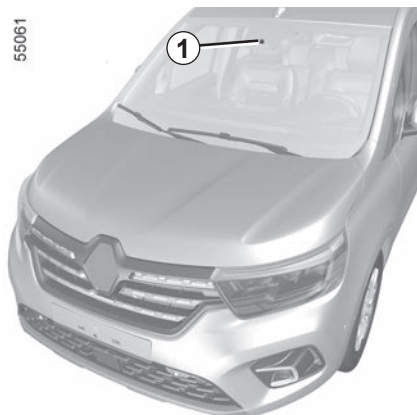
### Operating faults

If the system detects a fault, the message “Check fatigue warning” is displayed on the instrument panel. Call an approved Dealer.



## DETECTION OF ROAD SIGNS (1/4)

55061



The system detects speed limit signs on the side of the road and displays the speed limit on the instrument panel.

It mainly uses information taken from the camera **1**, attached to the windscreen behind the rear view mirror.

**Note:** make sure the windscreen is not obscured (dirt, mud, snow, condensation etc.).

For vehicles which are equipped with it, the system also uses information from the navigation system.

Once the speed limiter is activated, you can adjust the speed limiter indication displayed by the system.

If the limit speed is exceeded, the display panel is modified to warn the driver.

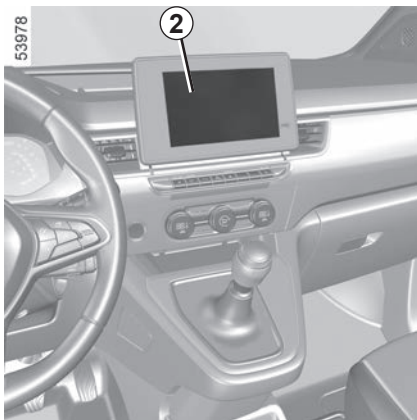
For vehicles equipped with a navigation system and if the vehicle is travelling in a country where the speed units differ from those of the vehicle, the system displays the speed limit sign in the unit of the country, alongside the speed limit converted to the unit used by the vehicle's instrument panel.

For countries where the speed limit is reduced during rainy weather on some types of roads, on vehicles equipped with a navigation system, the system can modify the limited speed after a few seconds of wiping the windscreen.

### Special situations

The system does not take into account exceptional speed limit measures, such as peak pollution days.

## DETECTION OF ROAD SIGNS (2/4)

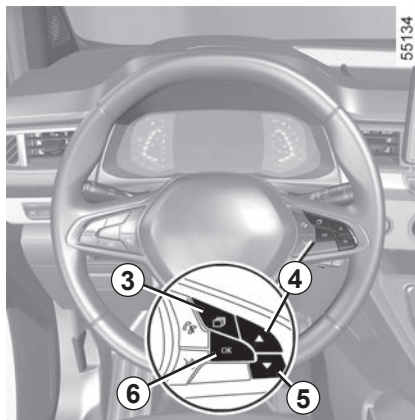


### Activating/deactivating the system

#### Vehicles fitted with a multimedia screen 2

To activate or deactivate the function, refer to the multimedia instructions.

Select "ON" or "OFF".



With the function activated, depending on local regulations, you can activate the "Display risk areas" option. The system will notify you of the distance separating you from this zone, and while you are travelling in the zone.

#### Vehicles not fitted with a multimedia screen

- With the vehicle stopped, press the switch **3** as many times as required to reach the "Vehicle" tab;
- press the **4** or **5** control repeatedly to reach the "Settings" menu. Press the switch **6 OK**;
- press the **4** or **5** control repeatedly to reach the "DRIVING ASSIST" menu. Press the switch **6 OK**;
- press the **4** or **5** control repeatedly to reach the "Speed alert" menu and press the **6 OK** switch;
- press the **6 OK** switch to activate or deactivate the function:



function activated

function deactivated

## DETECTION OF ROAD SIGNS (3/4)



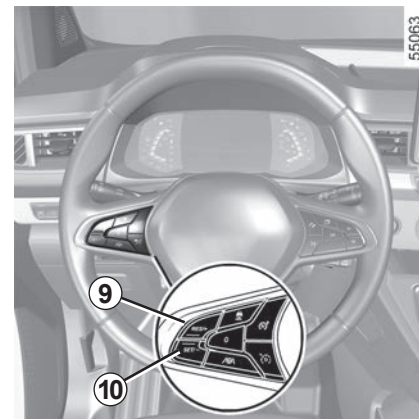
### Operation

#### Warning lights

The function displays the following warning lights:

- 7 Speed limit road signs
- 8 Additional road signs (start or end of "No overtaking" zone, slip road speed limit, speed in case of a caravan, speed limit with length of application, etc.)

If the speed limit is exceeded, the circle around the panel flashes (7 warning light) along with a sound signal to warn the driver.



### Variation of the limit speed or cruising speed

If the speed limiter, cruise control or adaptive cruise control notification speed differs from the detected speed value, press and hold the following switches:

- 9 (RES/+) to increase the notification speed to the detected speed;
- 10 (SET/-) to reduce the notification speed to the detected speed.

## DETECTION OF ROAD SIGNS (4/4)

### Operating faults

The system cannot detect the speed limit if:

- the windscreen is not clean;
- the camera is blinded by the sun;
- there is insufficient visibility (night, fog etc.) ;
- the signs are not legible (snow, etc.) or are hidden (by another vehicle or by trees);
- the information taken from the navigation system is not up to date.



This function is an additional driving aid. This function is not under any circumstances intended to replace the due care and attention of the driver, who should at all times be in control of the vehicle.

The driver should always adapt their speed to the traffic conditions, regardless of the system indications.

The system detects speed limit signs and does not detect other signs (e.g. entry/exit to/from urban areas, etc.).

The system may not detect all speed limit signs or may interpret them incorrectly.

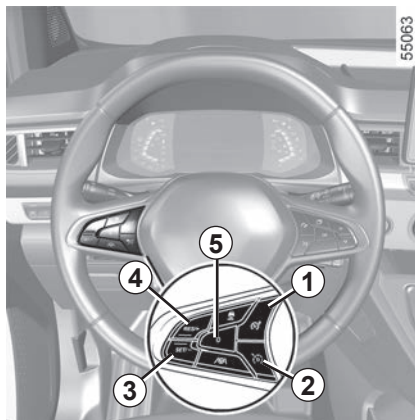
The driver should not ignore signs that are not detected by the system and should, as a priority, comply with the traffic signage and the highway code.

In the event of poor visibility (fog, snow, frost, etc.), it is possible that the system may not indicate the correct speed to the driver.

The driver should always adapt their speed to the traffic conditions, regardless of the system indications.

## SPEED LIMITER (1/4)

The speed limiter function controls the engine and braking system to help you not to exceed a driving speed that you have chosen, known as the **limit speed**.



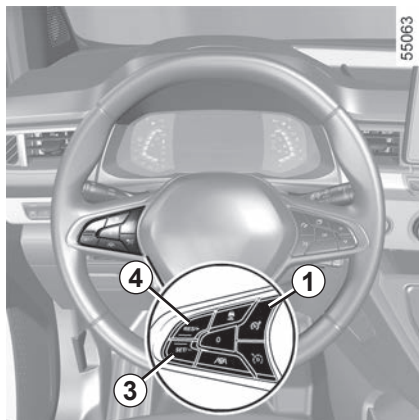
### Controls

- 1 Speed limiter On/Off switch.
- 2 Cruise control On/Off switch.
- 3 Switch to activate and decrease the limit speed (SET/-).
- 4 Switch to activate and increase the limit speed or to set the stored limit speed (RES/+).
- 5 Speed limiter function standby (with limited speed memory) (0).

You can link the speed limiter to the “Road sign detection” function.

➡ 2.92.

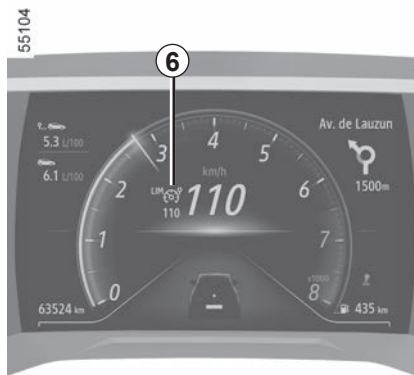
## SPEED LIMITER (2/4)



### Driving

When a limit speed has been set but not yet reached, driving is similar to driving a vehicle without the speed limiter function.

Once you have reached the stored speed, no effort on the accelerator pedal will allow you to exceed the programmed speed except in an emergency (refer to information on "Exceeding the limit speed").



### Switching on

Press the switch **1**. The **6** warning light appears in grey. The "Speed limiter ON" message appears on the instrument panel accompanied by dashes to indicate that the speed limiter function is in operation, waiting to store a limit speed.

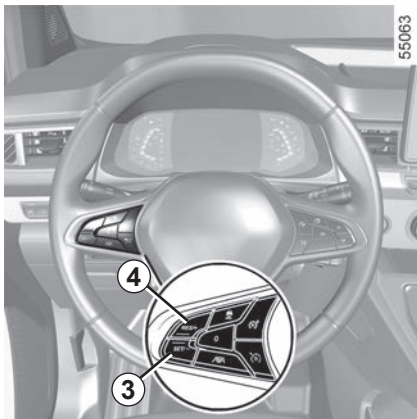


To store the current speed, press the **4** switch (RES/+) or the **3** switch (SET/-): the limit speed replaces the dashes and, depending on the vehicle, the **6** warning light appears in white. The minimum stored speed is 19 mph (30 km/h).



Please note that you must keep your feet close to the pedals in order to react in an emergency.

## SPEED LIMITER (3/4)



### Varying the limit speed

The limit speed may be changed by pressing repeatedly or holding down:

- switch **4** (RES/+) to increase speed;
- switch **3** (SET/-) to reduce speed.

### Exceeding the limit speed

It is possible to exceed the limit speed at any time. To do this: press the accelerator pedal **firmly and fully** (beyond the resistance point).

While the speed is being exceeded, the speed limiter flashes red on the instrument panel. Then, release the accelerator pedal: the speed limiter function will return as soon as you reach a speed lower than the memorised speed.

### Limited speed cannot be maintained

If driving up or down a steep gradient, the system is unable to maintain the limited speed: the stored speed flashes red on the instrument panel and a beep sounds at regular intervals to inform you.



If the speed limiter is not available (after several attempts to activate), contact an approved dealer.

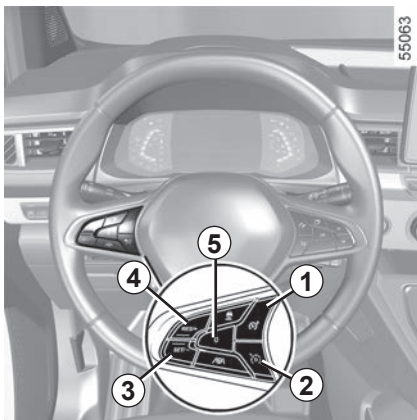
### Temporarily not available

The system controls acceleration and deceleration of your vehicle using the engine and braking system. The system activates the brakes in order to maintain the set speed, the system applies limited braking. In the event of a steep descent, for example in a mountainous area, you must select a lower gear to benefit from engine braking.

To reduce the load imposed on the braking system and to prevent the brakes from overheating, the speed limiter function may be temporarily interrupted and the message “Check Speed Limiter” may appear. The message disappears when the function becomes available again.

If the message remains, contact an approved dealer.

## SPEED LIMITER (4/4)

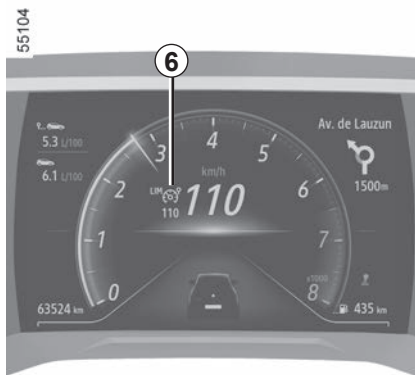


### Putting the function on standby

The speed limiter function is suspended when you press switch **5** (0). The limit speed is stored and displayed in grey on the instrument panel.

### Recalling the limit speed

If a speed has been stored, it can be recalled by pressing the **4** switch.



When the speed limiter is set to standby, pressing the **3** switch re-activates the function without taking into account the memorised speed: the speed at which the vehicle is moving is taken into account.



### Switching off the function

The speed limiter function is interrupted:

- when you press the **1** switch. In this case, the speed is no longer stored;
- when you press the **2** switch. In this case the cruise control is selected and there is no stored speed.

The warning light **6** disappears from the instrument panel to confirm that the function is no longer active.

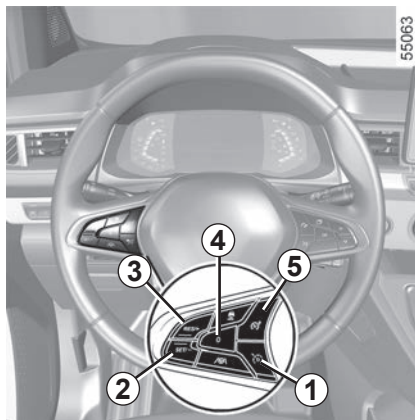


## CRUISE CONTROL (1/5)

The cruise control function controls the engine and braking system to help you to maintain a driving speed that you have chosen, known as the **cruising speed**.

This cruising speed may be set at any speed above 19 mph (30 km/h).

You can link the cruise control function to the "Road sign detection" function ➔ 2.92.



### Controls

- 1 Cruise control On/Off switch.
- 2 Switch to activate and decrease cruising speed (SET/-).
- 3 Switch to activate and increase cruising speed or to recall the memorised cruising speed (RES/+).
- 4 Switch the function to standby (with cruising speed saved) (0).
- 5 Speed limiter On/Off switch.



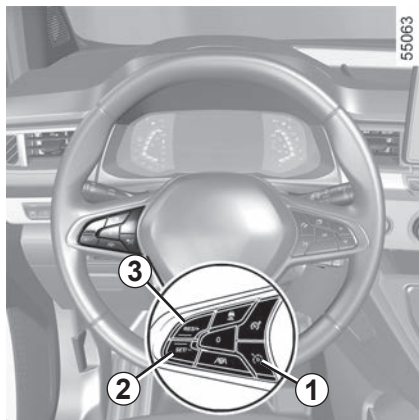
This function is an additional driving aid. The function does not take the place of the driver.

Therefore, it can under no circumstances replace the driver's responsibility to respect speed limits and to be vigilant (the driver must always be ready to brake).

Cruise control must not be used in heavy traffic, on undulating or slippery roads (black ice, aquaplaning, gravel) and during bad weather (fog, rain, side winds etc.).

**There is a risk of accidents.**

## CRUISE CONTROL (2/5)

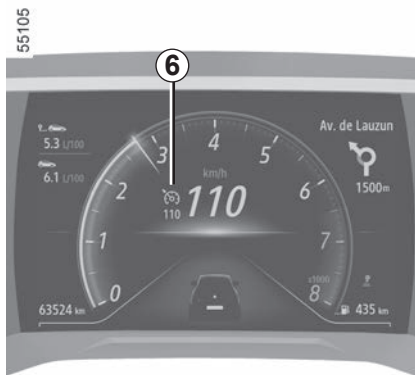


### Switching on

Press switch **1**.

The **6** warning light appears in grey.

The “Cruise control ON” message appears on the instrument panel accompanied by dashes to indicate that the cruise control function is in operation and waiting to memorise a cruising speed.



### Activating cruise control

While the vehicle is moving a steady speed above approximately 19 mph (30 km/h), press the **2** (SET/-) switch or the **3** (RES/+) switch: the function is activated and the current speed is taken into account.

The cruising speed replaces the dashes. Cruise control is confirmed when the memorised speed and warning light appear in green **6**.

If you try to activate the function below 19 mph (30 km/h), the message “Invalid Speed” will be displayed and the function will remain inactive.



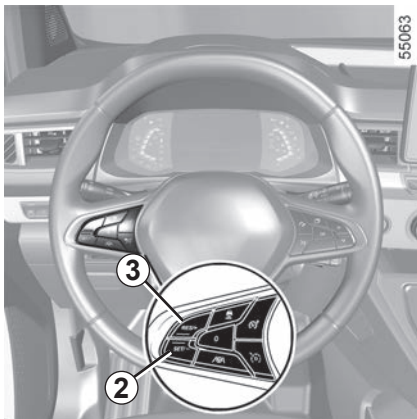
### Driving

Once a cruising speed is registered and the cruise control function is active, you may lift your foot off the accelerator pedal.



Please note that you must keep your feet close to the pedals in order to react in an emergency.

## CRUISE CONTROL (3/5)



### Adjusting the cruising speed

The cruising speed may be changed by pressing the following repeatedly:

- the **2** switch (SET/-) to reduce the speed;
- the **3** switch (RES/+) to increase the speed.

**Note:** press and hold one of the switches to modify speed by successive increments.

### Exceeding the cruising speed

The cruising speed may be exceeded at any time by depressing the accelerator pedal.

While it is being exceeded, the cruising speed flashes in red on the instrument panel. Then, release the accelerator pedal: after a few seconds, the vehicle will automatically return to its set cruising speed.

### Cruising speed cannot be maintained

If driving up or down a steep gradient, the system is unable to maintain the cruising speed: the stored speed is flashes red on the instrument panel to inform you of this situation.



If the cruise control is no longer available (after several attempts to activate it), contact an Approved

Dealer.

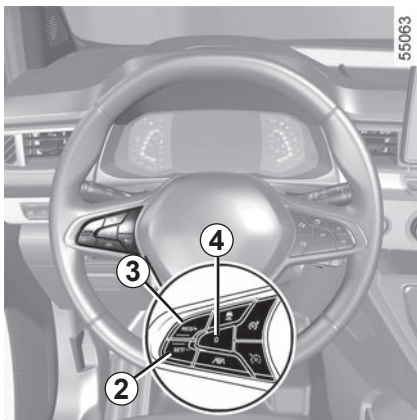
### Temporarily not available

The system controls acceleration and deceleration of your vehicle using the engine and braking system. The system activates the brakes in order to maintain the set speed, the system applies limited braking. In the event of a steep descent, for example in a mountainous area, you must select a lower gear to benefit from engine braking.

To reduce the load imposed on the braking system and to prevent the brakes from overheating, the cruise control function may be temporarily interrupted and the message “Check Cruise Control” may appear. The message disappears when the function becomes available again.

If the message remains, contact an approved dealer.

## CRUISE CONTROL (4/5)

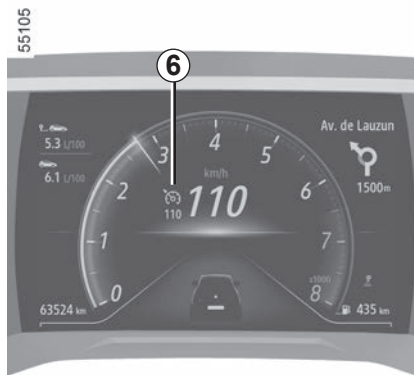


### Putting the function on standby

The function is set to standby if you:

- 4 switch (0);
- the brake pedal;
- applying the clutch pedal for a prolonged period, or prolonged neutral position on vehicles equipped with a manual gearbox;
- shifting to neutral position, on vehicles equipped with an automatic gearbox.

The cruising speed is stored and displayed in grey on the instrument panel.



### Returning to the cruising speed

If a speed is stored, it can be recalled, once you are sure that the road conditions are suitable (traffic, road surface, weather conditions, etc.). Press the switch 3 (RES/+) if the vehicle speed is above 19 mph (30 km/h).

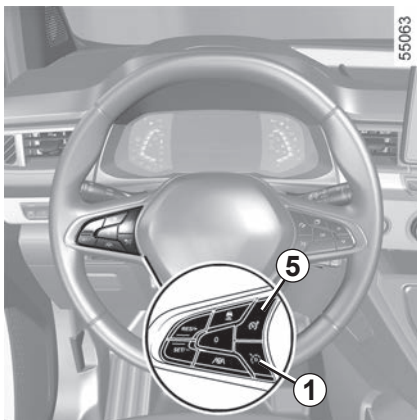
When the speed is stored, cruise control activation is confirmed by the display in green of the cruising speed and, depending on the vehicle, the 6 warning light is displayed.



**NB:** if the speed previously stored is much higher than the current speed, the vehicle will accelerate more rapidly to reach this threshold.

When the cruise control is set to standby, pressing switch 2 (SET/-) re-activates the cruise control function without taking into account the stored speed: it is the speed at which the vehicle is moving that is taken into account.

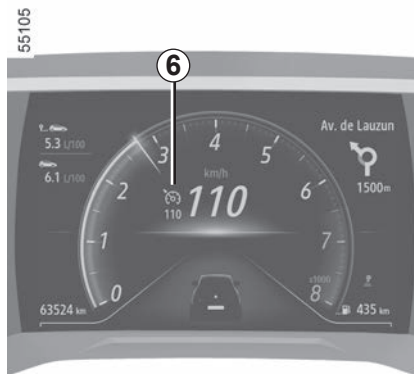
## CRUISE CONTROL (5/5)



### Switching off the function

The cruise control function is interrupted:

- when you press the **1** switch. In this case, the speed is no longer stored;
- when you press the **5** switch. In this case the speed limiter is selected and there is no stored speed.



The warning light **6** disappears from the instrument panel to confirm that the function is no longer active.



Putting the cruise control on standby or switching it off does not cause a rapid reduction in speed: you must brake by depressing the brake pedal.

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (1/13)

Based on information from a radar or camera, the adaptive cruise control function (or Stop and Go adaptive cruise control function on vehicles equipped with an automatic gearbox) enables you to maintain the speed selected (known as cruising speed) while keeping a following distance with the vehicle in front in the same lane.


On vehicles fitted with an automatic gearbox, if the vehicle in front stops, the Stop and Go adaptive cruise control function may apply the vehicle brakes to a full-stop before allowing the vehicle to move-on.

The system controls acceleration and deceleration of your vehicle using the engine and braking system.

The system's maximum range is approximately 150 m. This may vary according to the road conditions (ground relief, weather conditions, etc.).

According to conditions on the road (traffic, weather etc.), the adaptive cruise control function can be activated:

- 0 mph (0 km/h) to 105 mph (170 km) for vehicles fitted with an automatic gearbox;
- 19 mph (30 km/h) to 105 mph (170 km) for vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox.

The function is indicated by the  symbol.

### Note:

- the driver must observe the maximum speed limit and safe distances in the country where they are driving;
- the adaptive cruise control can brake the vehicle up to a third of the braking capacity. Depending on the situation, the driver may need to brake harder.

The adaptive cruise control does not trigger an emergency stop and its braking capability is limited.



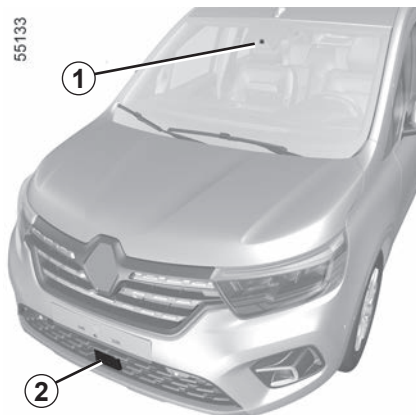
This function is an additional driving aid. The function does not take the place of the driver.

Therefore, it can under no circumstances replace the driver's responsibility to respect speed limits and safe distances and to be vigilant (the driver must always be ready to brake).

The driver must always be in control of the vehicle. The driver must always adapt their speed according to the surroundings and traffic conditions. The adaptive cruise control must only be used on a motorway (or multi-lane road separated by a barrier). The cruise control must not be used in heavy traffic, on winding or slippery roads (black ice, aquaplaning, gravel) or during bad weather (fog, rain, side winds etc.).

**There is a risk of accidents.**

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (2/13)

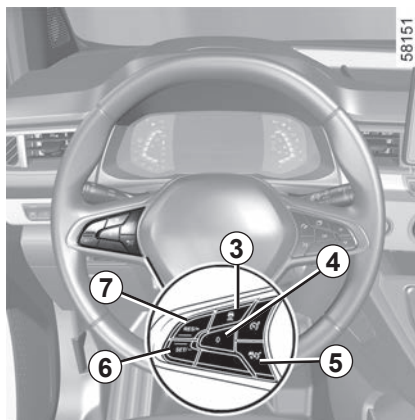


### Location of the camera 1


Make sure the windscreen is not obscured (by dirt, mud, snow, condensation etc.).

### Location of the radar 2

Ensure that the radar area is not obstructed (dirt, mud, snow, a badly fitted/attached front number plate), impacted, modified (including paintwork) or hidden by any accessory fitted on the front of the vehicle (on the grille or logo etc.).

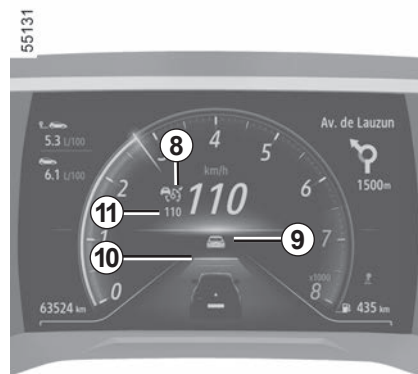


### Controls

- 3 Safe distance settings
- 4 Switch the function to standby (with cruising speed saved) (0).
- 5 Adaptive cruise control main stop/start switch .



The radar and camera zones must be kept clean and free of any tampering in order to ensure the proper operation of the system.



- 6 Cruising speed activation, storage and decrease switch (SET/-).
- 7 Switch to activate and increase cruising speed or to recall the memorised cruising speed (RES/+).



## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (3/13)



### Displays

- 8 Adaptive cruise control warning light.
- 9 Vehicle in front.
- 10 Stored safe distance
- 11 Stored cruising speed.



Important: you should keep your feet near the pedals at all times to prepare for any event.

### Switching on

Press switch 5.

Warning light (8) appears in grey, and the message “Adaptive Cruise Ctl ON” appears on the instrument panel, accompanied by dashes to indicate that the cruise control function is activated and waiting to store a cruising speed.

This function cannot be activated when:

- the parking brake is applied;
- the Park Assist function is already activated ➔ 2.145.

The message “Adaptive Cruise Ctl unavailable” is displayed on the instrument panel.

### Activating cruise control

When the vehicle is stationary (vehicles equipped with an automatic gearbox) or when the vehicle is moving at a steady speed (all vehicles), press the **6** (SET/-) or **7** (RES/+) switch to activate the function and store the current speed. The minimum cruising speed is 19 mph (30 km/h).

The cruising speed **11** replaces the dashes and cruise control is confirmed by the appearance of the cruising speed in green and warning light (8). If you try to activate the function when the vehicle speed is over 105 mph (170 km) or below 19 mph (30 km/h) for vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox, the message “Invalid Speed” is displayed and the function is not activated. Once a cruising speed is memorised and the cruise control function is active, you may lift your foot off the accelerator pedal.

**Special feature on vehicles with an automatic gearbox:** if the vehicle speed is below approximately 19 mph (30 km/h), the cruising speed will automatically be set to 19 mph (30 km/h). The vehicle will accelerate until it reaches the stored cruising speed.



## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (4/13)

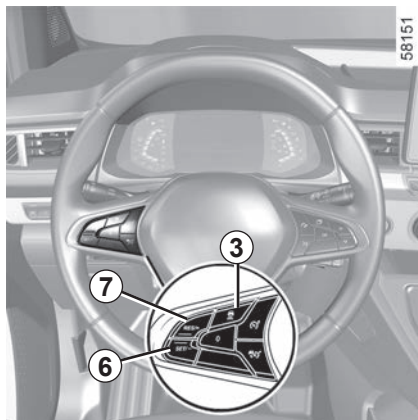
### Safe distance control activation

As soon as cruise control is activated, the default safe distance **10** is displayed in green on the instrument panel. The default safe distance corresponds to approximately two seconds (see following pages).

If the system detects a vehicle in your lane, an outline of a vehicle **9** appears above the distance gauge **10** on the instrument panel.

Your vehicle adapts its speed to that of the vehicle in front and applies the brakes if necessary (the brake lights come on) in order to maintain the distance displayed on the instrument panel.

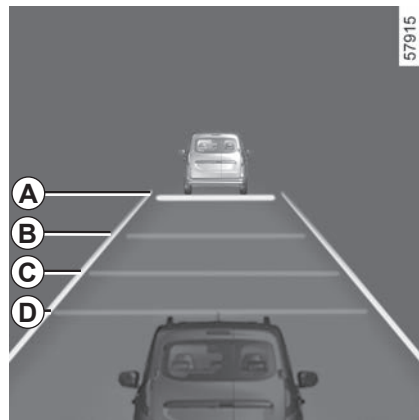
**Note:** the size of the **9** outline varies according to the distance separating you from the vehicle in front. The larger the outline, the closer the vehicle in front.



### Setting the cruising speed

You can vary the speed by repeatedly pressing (for a small variation) or pressing and holding (for a larger variation) switch **6** or **7**:

- use the “SET/-” switch **6** to reduce the speed;
- use the “RES/+” switch **7** to increase the speed.



### Adjusting the following distance

You can vary the safe distance from the vehicle in front at any time by pressing switch **3** repeatedly.

The horizontal distance gauge on the instrument panel indicates the various available safe distances:

- distance gauge **A**: long distance (corresponding to approximately 2.4 seconds);

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (5/13)

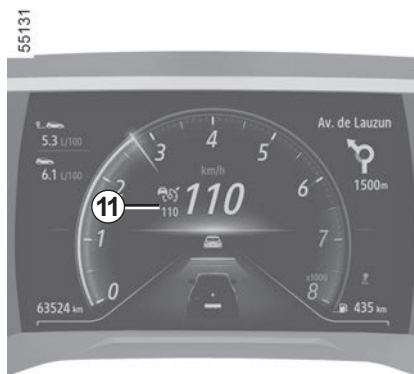
### Adjusting the safe distance (cont.)

- distance gauge **B**: intermediate distance 2 (corresponding to approximately 2 seconds);
- distance gauge **C**: intermediate distance 1 (corresponding to approximately 1.6 seconds);
- distance gauge **D**: short distance (corresponding to approximately 1.2 seconds).

The selected distance gauge appears in green on the instrument panel. The other gauges remain in grey.

**Note:** the distance must be set according to the traffic level, local regulation and weather conditions.

The safe distance is adjusted by default on the distance gauge **B**.



### Exceeding the cruising speed

The cruising speed may be exceeded at any time by applying the accelerator pedal.

If it is exceeded, the cruising speed **11** appears in red.

The distance gauge flashes if the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front is less than the safe distance selected: the Safe Distance Control function is no longer active.



Then, release the accelerator pedal: the cruise control and safe distance control will automatically resume the speed and distance instructions that you had previously selected.

### Overtaking manoeuvre

If you wish to overtake the vehicle in front, activating the indicator will temporarily cancel the safe distance control and enable an acceleration speed sufficient to complete overtaking.


## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (6/13)

### Stopping and starting on vehicles fitted with an automatic gearbox

If the vehicle in front slows down, if necessary to a complete stop (e.g. in heavy traffic). The vehicle stops a few metres from the vehicle in front. The Stop and Start function can put the engine on standby ➔ 2.8.

When the vehicle in front sets off again:

- if the stop does not exceed about three seconds, the vehicle sets off automatically without any action by the driver;
- if the stop exceeds about three seconds, you must apply the accelerator pedal or press button **7** (RES/+) in order for the vehicle to set off again. The message “Press RES/+ or accelerate” appears on the instrument panel to confirm.

If the stop exceeds about three minutes, the electronic parking brake is automatically applied and the Stop and Go adaptive cruise control is deactivated. The  warning light disappears to confirm that the function is deactivated.

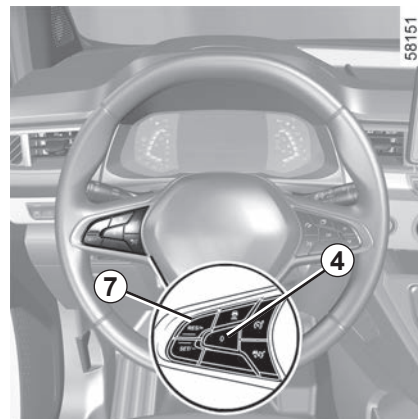
### Putting the function on standby

You can set the function to standby when:

- you press switch **4** (0);
- you apply the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving.

The function is deactivated by the system if:

- you set the automatic gearbox to **P** or **N**;
- you engage the reverse gear;
- you unbuckle the driver's seatbelt;
- you open one of the opening elements;
- you press the engine start/stop button;
- the slope is too steep;
- the vehicle speed is above 112 mph (180 km/h);
- certain driving aids and correction devices are triggered (active emergency braking, ABS, ESC);
- when you press the clutch pedal for a prolonged period or upon prolonged neutral position on vehicles equipped with a manual gearbox.



In all circumstances, the standby is confirmed when the warning lights appear in grey and the message “Adaptive Cruise Ctl Disconnected” appears on the instrument panel.



Putting the adaptive cruise control in standby or switching it off does not cause a rapid reduction in speed: you must brake by applying the brake pedal if necessary.

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (7/13)

### Exit from standby

#### Based on the stored cruising speed

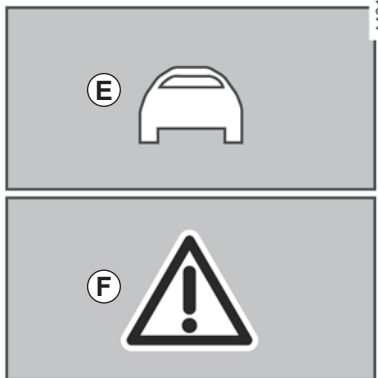
If a speed is stored, it can be recalled, once you are sure that the road conditions are suitable (traffic, road surface, weather conditions, etc.). Press switch **7** (RES/+) in the range of confirmed speeds.

When the stored speed is recalled, activation of the cruise control is confirmed by the illumination of the cruising speed in green.

**Note:** if the stored speed is higher than the current speed, the vehicle will accelerate to reach that speed.

#### Based on the current speed

When the cruise control is set to standby, pressing switch **6** (SET/-) re-activates the cruise control function without taking into account the stored speed: it is the speed at which the vehicle is moving that is taken into account.



### “Take control of the vehicle” warnings

**In some situations** (e.g. coming upon a much slower vehicle, vehicle in front changing lanes quickly etc.), **the system may not have time to react.**

Depending on the situation, the system sounds a beep associated with:

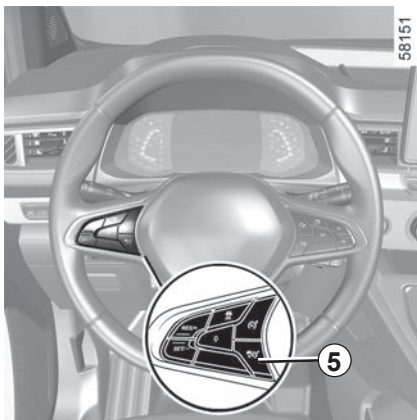
- the orange alert **E** if the situation requires the driver’s attention;

or

- the red alert **F** accompanied by the message “Brake”, if the situation requires the driver’s immediate attention.


**In all situations, react accordingly and perform the appropriate manoeuvres.**

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (8/13)




### Switching off the function

The adaptive cruise control function is deactivated when you press the 5 switch.

The warning light  disappears from the instrument panel to confirm that the function is no longer active.

### Temporary unavailability

The radar is able to detect vehicles in front of your vehicle. The system cannot operate correctly if the radar detection area is obscured or if its signal is disrupted.

If the radar detection area is obstructed or the radar signal is disrupted, the message “Front radar no visibility” is displayed on the instrument panel and the adaptive cruise control is interrupted. The green warning light  disappears to confirm that the function has been automatically deactivated.

Ensure that the radar area is not obstructed (dirt, mud, snow, a badly fitted/attached front number plate), impacted, modified (including paintwork) or hidden by any accessory fitted on the front of the vehicle (on the grille or logo etc.).

Conditions in certain geographical areas may hinder the function, for example:

- arid zones, tunnels, long bridges or lightly used roads without road lines, without signs or trees nearby;
- a military or airport zone.


You must leave such areas in order for the function to work.

In all cases, if the message is not erased after the engine is restarted, please contact an authorised dealer.

### Operating faults

If an adaptive cruise control function operating fault is detected, the message “Adaptive Cruise Ctl to check” appears on the instrument panel and the adaptive cruise control function is deactivated.

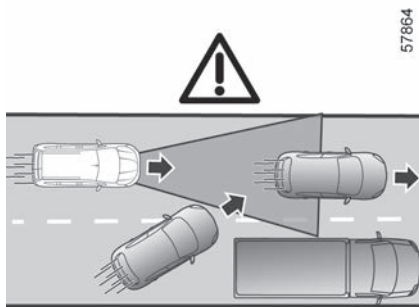
If an operating fault is detected on one or more components of the system, the adaptive cruise control function is interrupted.

The  warning light appears on the instrument panel along with, depending on the malfunction, one of the following messages:

- “Front camera to check”;
- “Front radar to check”;
- “Camera/Radar to check”;
- “Check vehicle”.

Consult an approved dealer.

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (9/13)



(G)

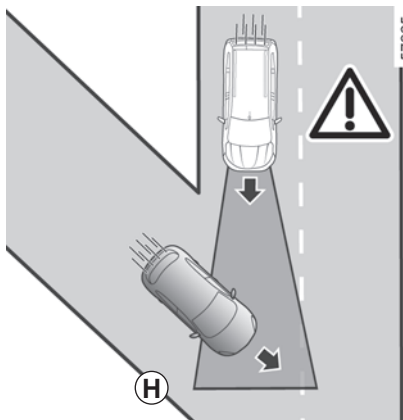
### Limitations of system operation

#### Vehicle detection

The system detects only vehicles (cars, trucks, motorbikes) that are moving in the same direction as your vehicle.

A vehicle turning into the same lane (e.g. **G**) will be taken into account by the system only once it enters the camera and radar detection areas.

**The system may trigger abrupt or delayed braking.**

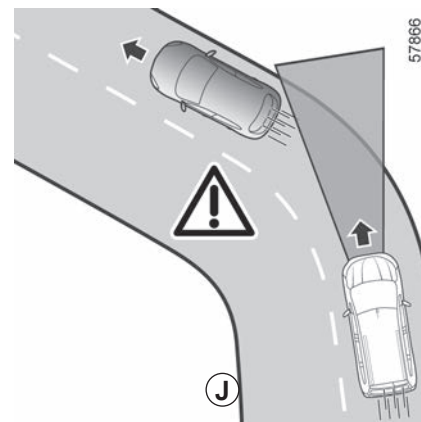


(H)

#### The system cannot detect:

- vehicles arriving at intersections: slip road (e.g. **H**) etc;
- vehicles driving on the wrong side of the road or reversing towards you.

The adaptive cruise control must only be used on a motorway (or multi-lane road separated by a barrier).



(J)

#### Detection during cornering

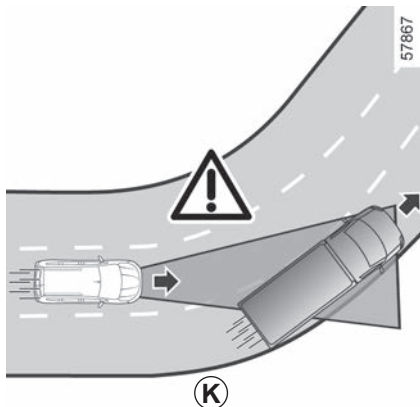
When entering a corner or bend, the radar and/or camera may temporarily not be able to detect the vehicle in front (e.g. **J**).

**The system may trigger an acceleration.**

When exiting a bend, the system's detection of the vehicle in front may be disrupted or delayed.

**The system may trigger abrupt or delayed braking.**

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (10/13)

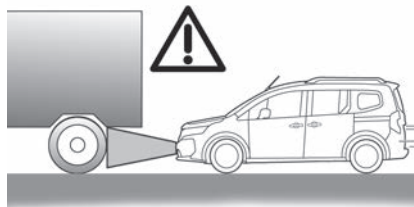


### Detection of vehicles in adjacent lanes

The system may detect vehicles driving on an adjacent lane when:

- you drive into a bend (e.g. **K**);
- you are driving on a road with narrow lanes;
- the speed of the vehicle on the adjacent lane is slower and if one of these vehicles is located too close to the lane of the other.

**The system may incorrectly trigger vehicle slowing or braking.**

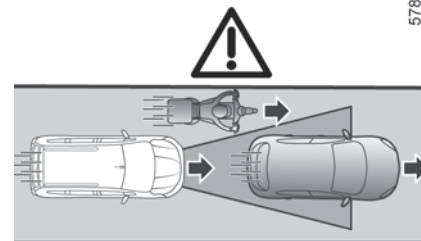


### Vehicles hidden due to variations in ground relief

The system will not detect vehicles hidden due to variations in ground relief or those located outside of the camera and radar detection areas when driving uphill or downhill.

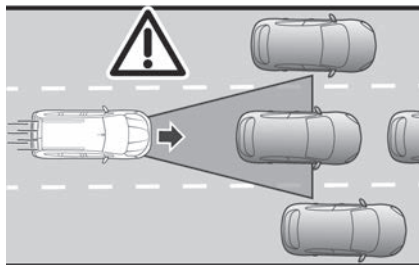
### Vehicles outside the camera and radar detection areas.

**The system will react late or not at all** if the detected vehicles are outside the camera and radar detection areas, particularly in the following cases:



- vehicles transporting long objects which exceed the line;
- the actual length of tall vehicles (e.g. **L**) outside the radar detection area (construction machine, agricultural equipment towing vehicle, etc.) ;
- vehicles insufficiently centred in the lane;
- narrow vehicles which are very close (e.g. **M**).

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (11/13)



(N)

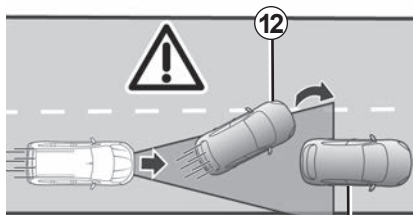
### Stationary and slow moving vehicles

When your speed is over approximately 31 mph (50 km/h), **the system does not detect:**

- stationary vehicles (e.g. **N**);
- very slow moving vehicles.

When your speed is less than approximately 31 mph (50 km/h), **the system may not react or may react very late to:**

- stationary vehicles (e.g. **N**);
- very slow moving vehicles;

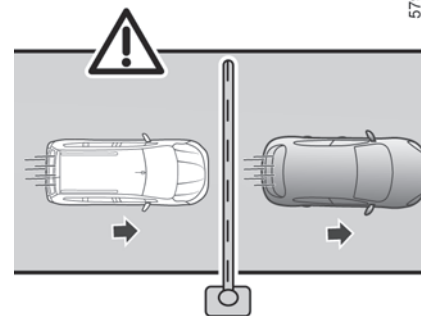


(P)

- vehicles in front **12** which change lane, revealing a stationary vehicle **13** (e.g. **P**).

**Always be ready to take control of your vehicle when you come upon stationary or very slow moving vehicles (e.g. **N**).**

The adaptive cruise control does not trigger an emergency stop and its braking capability is limited.



(Q)

### Non-detection of fixed obstacles and objects of a small size

**The system cannot detect:**

- pedestrians, bikes, scooters, etc. ;
- animals;
- fixed obstacles (toll barriers, walls, etc.) (e.g. **Q**).

These are not taken into account by the system. They do not trigger any alert or reaction by the system.



## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (12/13)



This function is an additional driving aid. It can under no circumstances replace the driver's responsibility to respect speed limits and safe distances and to be vigilant.

The driver must always be in control of the vehicle.

The driver must always adapt their speed to the surroundings and driving conditions, regardless of system indications.

Except for lines delimiting lanes, traffic indicators (traffic lights, signs, pedestrian crossings etc.) are not recognised by the system. These do not trigger any alert or reaction by the system.

The system should under no circumstances be taken to be an obstacle detector or an anti-collision system.

**The adaptive cruise control must only be used on a motorway (or multi-lane road separated by a barrier).**

### **System servicing/repairs**

- In the event of an impact, the radar and/or camera alignment may be changed and its operation may consequently be affected. Deactivate the system and consult an authorised dealer.
- Any work in the proximity of the radar and/or camera (replacements, repairs, windscreen modifications, paintwork etc.) must be carried out by a qualified professional.

Only an authorised dealer is qualified to service the system.

### **Deactivating the function**

You must disable the function if:

- the vehicle is travelling on a windy road;
- the vehicle is being towed (breakdowns);
- the vehicle is towing a trailer or a caravan;
- the vehicle is being driven in a tunnel or close to a metallic structure;
- the vehicle arrives at a toll point, a roadwork area or on a narrow lane;
- the vehicle is being driven up or down a very steep slope;
- the visibility is poor (glaring sun, fog etc.);
- the vehicle is being driven on a slippery road surface (rain, snow, gravel, etc.);
- the weather conditions are poor (rain, snow, side winds, etc.);
- the radar area has been damaged (impacts etc.) ;
- the camera area has been damaged (e.g. on the inside or outside of the windscreen);
- the windscreen is cracked or distorted.

**In the event of the system behaving abnormally, deactivate it and consult an authorised dealer.**



### In the event of system disturbance

Some conditions can disturb or damage the operation of the system, such as:

- the windscreen or radar area is obscured (by dirt, ice, snow, condensation, number plate etc.);
- a complex environment (tunnel etc.);
- poor weather conditions (snow, heavy rain, hail, black ice, etc.);
- poor visibility (night, fog etc.);
- poor contrast between the vehicle preceding it and the surrounding area (e.g. white vehicle in a snowy area etc.) ;
- being dazzled (glaring sun, lights of vehicles travelling in the opposite direction etc.);
- narrow, winding or undulating road (tight bends etc.) ;
- a slower vehicle with a significant difference in speed;
- use of mats not adapted to the vehicle. On the driver's side, only use mats suitable for the vehicle, attached with the pre-fitted components, and check the fitting regularly. Do not lay one mat on top of another. **There is a risk of wedging the pedals.**

**In these cases, the system may wrongly intervene.**

### Risk of unwanted braking or acceleration.

Many unforeseen situations may affect the system operation. Certain objects or vehicles that can appear in the camera or radar detection zone may be interpreted by the system incorrectly, possibly leading to inappropriate acceleration or braking.

**You should always be attentive to sudden events that might occur while you are driving. Always keep your vehicle under control by keeping your feet near the pedals, so that you are ready to act in any event.**

## MOTORWAY AND TRAFFIC ASSISTANT (1/16)

The Motorway and Traffic Assistant is a driving aid system designed for use on long motorway journeys, where traffic is flowing or in jams.

Depending on the vehicle, this system comprises the **adaptive cruise control function Stop and Go** ➔ 2.105 and the “Lane Centring” function.

When these two functions are activated simultaneously, the system allows the driver to:

- maintain vehicle speed based on a previously saved speed;
- adjust the distance between this vehicle and the vehicle in front;
- direct the vehicle to the centre of the lane.

### The Stop and Go adaptive cruise control function

Based on information from a radar or camera, the Stop and Go adaptive cruise control function gives you the option of maintaining a selected speed, known as the cruising speed, while keeping a safe distance from the vehicle in front in the same lane.


If the vehicle in front stops, the Stop and Go adaptive cruise control may brake your vehicle to a complete stop before setting off again.



Important: you should keep your feet near the pedals and your hands on the steering wheel at all times to prepare for any event.

The system controls acceleration and deceleration of your vehicle using the engine and braking system.

The Stop and Go adaptive cruise control function can be activated from 0 to 105 mph (0 to 170 km/h) according to conditions on the road (traffic, weather etc.).

It is represented by the following symbol  ➔ 2.105.

#### Note:

- the driver must observe the maximum speed limit and safe distances in the country where they are driving;
- the Stop and Go adaptive cruise control can brake the vehicle up to a third of the braking capacity. Depending on the situation, the driver may need to brake harder.

The Stop and Go adaptive cruise control does not trigger an emergency stop and its braking capability is limited.

## MOTORWAY AND TRAFFIC ASSISTANT (2/16)

### The “Lane centring” function


Using information from a camera, the “Lane Centring” function manipulates the steering system to direct the vehicle to the middle of the lane. This function is only available while the Stop and Go adaptive cruise control is activated ➡ 2.105.

If the conditions allow it, the function is available between:

- 0 mph and 99 mph (160 km/h) approximately with a vehicle in front;

or

- 37 mph (60 km/h) et 99 mph (160 km/h) approximately without a vehicle in front.

The “Lane Centring” function is a comfort feature. It is represented by the symbol .

**Note:** in the event of a sharp bend, the function’s lateral retention capacities are limited and require the driver to take immediate action on the steering wheel.

### Additional information

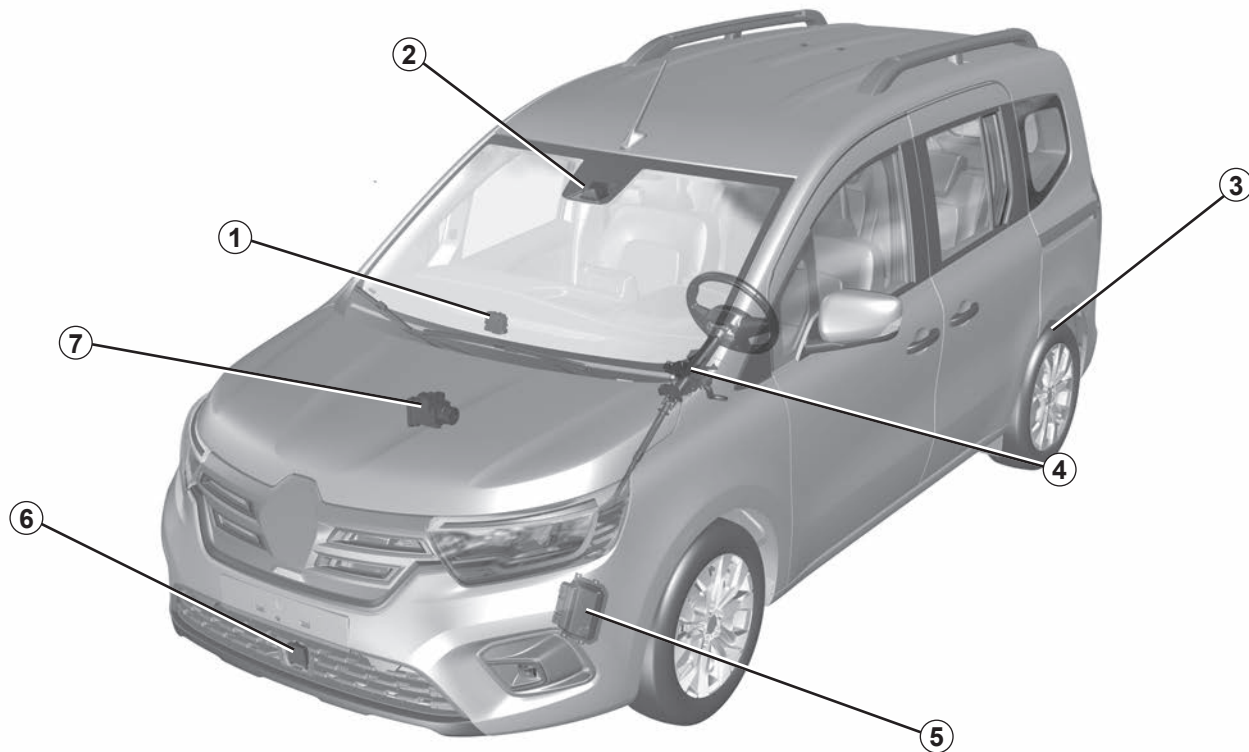
Depending on the vehicle, the “Motorway and Traffic Assistant” function may be used with other driving aid functions.

Please note that:

- activating the speed limiter causes deactivation of the system;
- the system cannot be activated when the “Park Assist” function is active;
- activation of the “Lane Centring” function leads to suspension of the “Lane Departure Warning” or “Lane Keep Assist” functions if these have been activated. They will be reactivated when the driver decides to stop the “Lane Centring” function.

## MOTORWAY AND TRAFFIC ASSISTANT (3/16)

57860



# MOTORWAY AND TRAFFIC ASSISTANT (4/16)

## Computer 1

Receives information from the radar and camera to determine the vehicle trajectory and speed (acceleration or braking). Amongst other things, it controls the system activation/deactivation parameters (door opening, etc.).

## Camera 2

Detects markings on the ground and the position of vehicles on the various traffic lanes. It complements the information transmitted by the **6** radar.

Make sure the windscreen is not obscured (by dirt, mud, snow, etc.).

## Electronic parking brake 3

It the vehicle stationary under certain conditions.

## Power-assisted steering 4

Operates the front wheels to assist the trajectory of your vehicle according to details transmitted by the **1** computer. It also enables detection of the driver's hands on the steering wheel.

## Engine computer 5

It controls and directs the engine to carry out the required acceleration.

## Radar 6

Calculates the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front.

The system's maximum range is approximately 150 m. This may vary according to the road conditions (ground relief, weather conditions, etc.)

Ensure that the radar area is not obstructed (dirt, mud, snow, a badly fitted front number plate), impacted, modified (including painting) or hidden by any accessory fitted on the front of the vehicle (on the grille or logo etc.).

## Active vehicle control 7

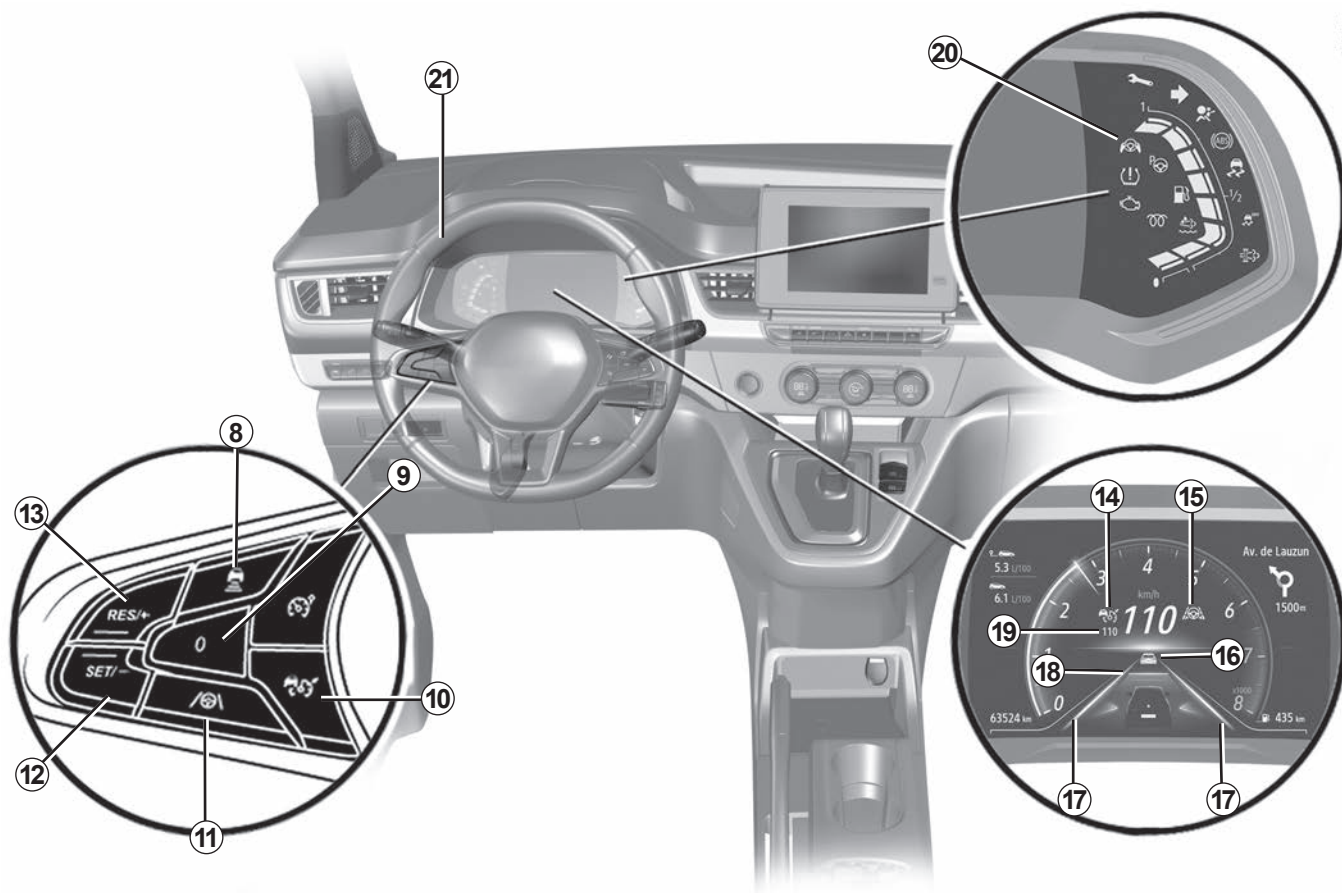
This system provides information on vehicle dynamics to the computer **1** (speed, lateral acceleration, etc.) and acts on the braking system to control deceleration and to keep the vehicle stationary.



The radar and camera zones must be kept clean and free of any tampering in order to ensure the proper operation of the system.



## MOTORWAY AND TRAFFIC ASSISTANT (5/16)

58152






# MOTORWAY AND TRAFFIC ASSISTANT (6/16)

## Controls

- 8** Safe distance settings
- 9** Set active functions to standby (with cruising speed saved) (0).
- 10** Stop and Go Adaptive cruise control main stop/start switch .
- 11** "Lane Centring" function activation/deactivation switch .
- 12** Cruising speed activation, storage and decrease switch (SET/-).
- 13** Switch to activate and increase cruising speed or to recall the memorised cruising speed (RES/+).

## Displays on the instrument panel

- 14** Stop and Go adaptive cruise control function warning light .
- 15** "Lane Centring" function warning light .
- 16** Vehicle in front.
- 17** Left-hand and right-hand line indicators.
- 18** Stored safe distance.
- 19** Stored cruising speed.
- 20** "Hands off steering wheel" detection warning light .

## Steering wheel 21

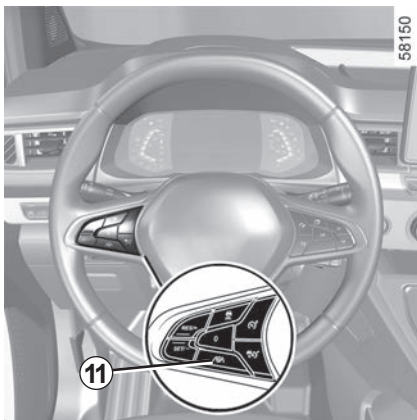
The driver must always keep their hands on the steering wheel. If too much force is applied when turning the steering wheel, the "Lane Centring" function is put on standby so the driver can regain control of the vehicle.

Under certain conditions (sharp bends, etc.) a vibration may be triggered on the steering wheel to warn the driver that they must regain control of the vehicle.



If the driver does not handle the steering wheel (no hands are detected) the "Lane Centring" function is deactivated after several alerts.




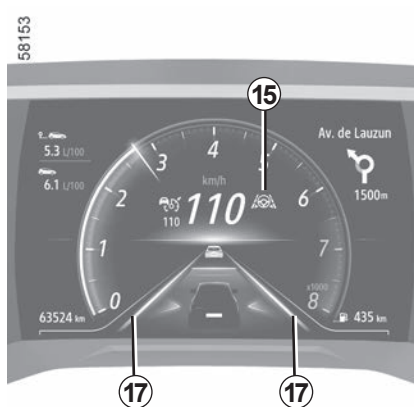
## MOTORWAY AND TRAFFIC ASSISTANT (7/16)




### Activating the “Lane Centring” function

Once the Stop and Go adaptive cruise control is activated ➔ 2.105, press button **11** to activate the “Lane Centring” function. The message “Lane centering activated” appears on the instrument panel accompanied by the **15**  warning light and the  symbol to confirm that the function is activated.

**Note:** you must keep your hands on the driving wheel when using the “Lane Centring” function. The  symbol is displayed to confirm that the function is activated.



The warning light **15**  is displayed in green and the left-hand and right-hand line indicators **17** are displayed on the instrument panel to confirm that the function is activated and directing your vehicle to the centre of the lane.

**Note:** if you press button **11** when the Stop and Go adaptive cruise control is not activated, the message: “First activate Adapt. cruise ct” appears on the instrument panel.

## MOTORWAY AND TRAFFIC ASSISTANT (8/16)

### “Lane Centring” function on standby


The “Lane Centring” function is put on standby automatically when:

- the Stop and Go adaptive cruise control is put on standby ➡ 2.105;
- the system no longer detects the lines or only one line is detected in your lane;
- the lane is too narrow or too wide;
- the system does not detect any hands on the steering wheel;
- the bend is too sharp.

- the vehicle speed is over approximately 99 mph (160 km/h);
- the vehicle speed is below approximately 37 mph (60 km/h), without any vehicle in front;
- the vehicle touches or breaches a line;
- the system is temporarily disrupted (for example: camera obscured by dirt, mud, snow, condensation, etc.).

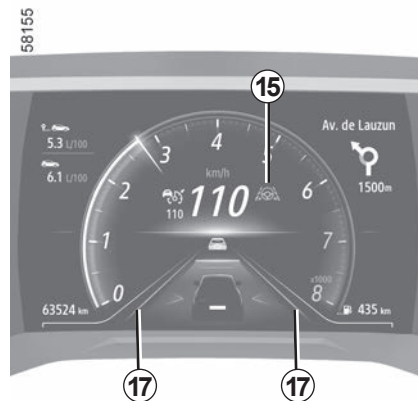
Certain actions carried out by the driver also suspend the “Lane Centring” function:


- activating the indicators;
- too much force is used when handling the steering wheel.

Standby of the function is confirmed by the **15**  warning light and the left-hand and right-hand line indicators **17** appearing in grey on the instrument panel.



Important: you should keep your feet near the pedals and your hands on the steering wheel at all times to prepare for any event.



Once the conditions are met, the function again directs the vehicle to the centre of the lane. The **15**  warning light and left-hand and right-hand line indicators **17** are displayed in green on the instrument panel.

You can affect the **vehicle trajectory** at any point by turning the steering wheel.

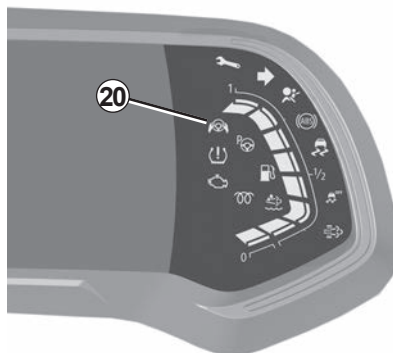
## MOTORWAY AND TRAFFIC ASSISTANT (9/16)





### “Hands off steering wheel” detection warning

When the “Lane Centring” function no longer detects your hands on the steering wheel, several warning levels will be triggered:

- **after 15 seconds**, the message: “Keep hands on steering wheel” is shown in yellow on the instrument panel **22**;



- **after approximately 30 seconds**, the message: “Keep hands on steering wheel” appears on the instrument panel **22** and the warning light **20**  appears in red, accompanied by an audible signal of gradually increasing volume;
- **after approximately 45 seconds**, the audio sources go on standby, the audible signal sounds continually, the warning light **20**  is switched off and the message “Lane centering deactivated” appears in red on the instrument panel **22**: **the “Lane Centring” function is deactivated.**

**Note:** in some situations, the Lane Centring function may no longer detect your hands on the steering wheel and may sound a signal:

- the vehicle is moving along a long straight lane and the driver's hands are immobile on the steering wheel;
- the driver is holding the steering wheel very lightly;
- ...

If the “Lane Centring” function is deactivated due to the driver's hands not being detected on the steering wheel, the Stop and Go adaptive cruise control function continues to function.

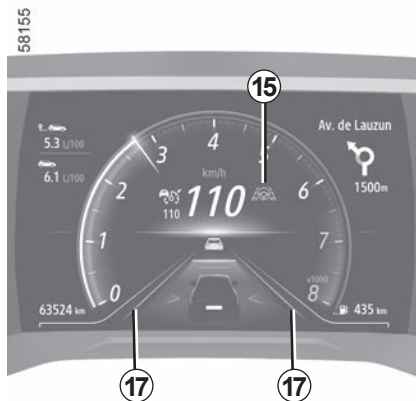
In the first two alert levels, when the system again detects the presence of the driver's hands on the steering wheel, the system stops the alerts. The function continues to direct the vehicle to the centre of the lane.

## MOTORWAY AND TRAFFIC ASSISTANT (10/16)





### In the case of a sharp bend

In the case of a sharp bend, and depending on the vehicle speed, the function's side retaining capacities will be limited and require the driver to carry out immediate action on the steering wheel so that the function can continue to maintain the vehicle in the centre of the lane.

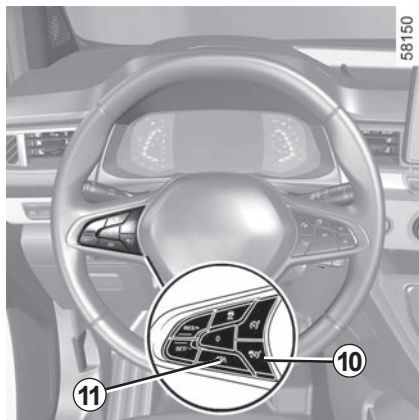


If the driver does not intervene, the function triggers the vibration of the steering wheel to signal that the vehicle is about to breach a line and that the driver needs to carry out immediate action.

The **15**  warning light and the left-hand or right-hand line indicator **17** appear in red on the instrument panel.

If the vehicle crosses a line completely and moves out of lane, the “Lane Centring” function is put on **standby**. Standby of the function is confirmed by the **15**  warning light and the left-hand and right-hand line indicators **17** appearing in grey on the instrument panel.

## MOTORWAY AND TRAFFIC ASSISTANT (11/16)

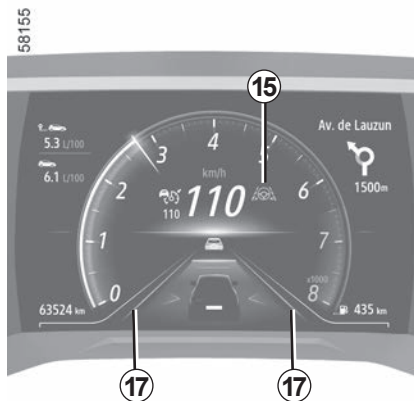


### Deactivating the “Lane Centring” function


The “Lane Centring” function is deactivated when:

- you press switch **11**. The function's deactivation is confirmed by the appearance of the message: “Lane centering deactivated” on the instrument panel.


**Note:** pressing the **11** switch once deactivates the “Lane Centring” function but does not affect operation of the Stop and Go adaptive cruise control function;



- the Stop and Go adaptive cruise control is deactivated ➔ 2.105.

**Note:** pressing the **10**  button once deactivates both the Stop and Go adaptive cruise control function and the “Lane Centring” function;


- the system will no longer detect the driver's hands on the steering wheel for a period over 45 seconds approximately.

The **15**  warning light and the left-hand and right-hand line indicators **17** disappear from the instrument panel.

# MOTORWAY AND TRAFFIC ASSISTANT (12/16)

## Temporary unavailability

The radar is able to detect vehicles in front of your vehicle. The system cannot operate correctly if the radar detection area is obscured or if its signal is disrupted.

If the radar detection area is obstructed or the radar signal is disrupted, the message “Front radar no visibility” is displayed on the instrument panel and the Stop and Go adaptive cruise control is interrupted. The green warning light  disappears to confirm that the function has been automatically deactivated.

Ensure that the radar area is not obstructed (dirt, mud, snow, a badly fitted front number plate), impacted, modified (including painting) or hidden by any accessory fitted on the front of the vehicle (on the grille or logo etc.).

Conditions in certain geographical areas may hinder the function, for example:

- arid zones, tunnels, long bridges or lightly used roads without road lines, without signs or trees nearby;

- a military or airport zone.

You must leave such areas in order for the function to work.

In all cases, if the message is not erased after the engine is restarted, please contact an authorised dealer.

## Operating faults


If a Lane Centring function operating fault is detected, the message “Lane centering to check” is displayed on the instrument panel and the function is disabled.

The Stop and Go adaptive cruise control function remains in operation.

Consult an approved dealer.

If a Stop and Go adaptive cruise control function operating fault is detected, the message “Check Adaptive Cruise control” appears on the instrument panel and both the Stop and Go adaptive cruise control and Lane Centring functions are suspended.

Consult an approved dealer.

If an operating fault is detected on one or more components of the “Motorway and Traffic Assistant” system, the  warning light appears on the instrument panel, alongside, depending on the nature of the fault, the message:

- “Front camera to check”;
- “Front radar to check”;
- “Camera/Radar to check”;
- “Check vehicle”.

The Stop and Go adaptive cruise control function and Lane Centring function are both suspended.

Consult an approved dealer.

## MOTORWAY AND TRAFFIC ASSISTANT (13/16)



The “Motorway and Traffic Assistant” function is an additional driving aid. This system does not take the place of the driver.

Therefore, it can under no circumstances replace the driver’s responsibility to respect speed limits and safe distances and to be vigilant (the driver must always be ready to brake).

The driver must always be in control of the vehicle. The driver must always adapt their trajectory and speed according to the surroundings and traffic conditions.

The “Motorway and Traffic Assistant” uses the Stop and Go adaptive cruise control function and the Lane Centring function. It must only be used on a motorway or multi-lane road (separated by a barrier).

It must not be used in heavy traffic, on winding or slippery roads (black ice, aquaplaning, gravel) or during bad weather (fog, rain, side winds etc.).

**There is a risk of accidents.**

## MOTORWAY AND TRAFFIC ASSISTANT (14/16)



The “Motorway and Traffic Assistant” function is an additional driving aid. It can under no circumstances replace the driver’s responsibility to respect speed limits and safe distances and to be vigilant.

The driver must always be in control of the vehicle.

The driver must always adapt their trajectory and speed according to the surroundings and driving conditions, regardless of system indications.

Except for lines delimiting lanes, traffic indicators (traffic lights, traffic signs except for speed limit signs within the limits of the system’s detection capacity, pedestrian crossings, etc.) are not recognised by the system. These do not trigger any alert or reaction by the system.

The “Motorway and Traffic Assistant” uses the Stop and Go adaptive cruise control function and the Lane Centring function. The system should under no circumstances be taken to be an obstacle detector or an anti-collision system.

The Motorway and Traffic Assistant function must only be used on a motorway or multi-lane road separated by a barrier.

### **System servicing/repairs**

- In the event of an impact, the radar and/or camera alignment may be changed and its operation may consequently be affected. Deactivate the system and consult an authorised dealer.
- Any work in the proximity of the radar and/or camera (replacements, repairs, windscreen modifications, paintwork etc.) must be carried out by a qualified professional.

Only an authorised dealer is qualified to service the system.





### Deactivating the system

You must deactivate the system if:

- the vehicle is travelling on a windy road;
- the vehicle is being towed (breakdowns);
- the vehicle is towing a trailer or a caravan;
- the vehicle is being driven in a tunnel or close to a metallic structure;
- the vehicle arrives at a toll point, a roadwork area or on a narrow lane;
- the vehicle is being driven up or down a very steep slope;
- the visibility is poor (glaring sun, fog etc.);
- the weather conditions are poor (rain, snow, side winds, etc.);
- the vehicle is being driven on a slippery road surface (rain, snow, gravel, etc.);
- the camera area has been damaged (e.g. interior or exterior windscreen area); the windscreen is cracked or distorted;
- the radar area has been damaged (impacts, etc.) ;
- the surface of the steering wheel is damaged or damp.

**In the event of the system behaving abnormally, deactivate it and consult an authorised dealer.**

## MOTORWAY AND TRAFFIC ASSISTANT (16/16)



**Some conditions can disrupt or damage the operation of the system, for example:**

- obstruction of the windscreen or the radar area (by dirt, ice, snow, condensation etc.) Frequently check the cleanliness and condition of the windscreen, front wiper blades and front bumper;
- a complex environment (tunnel etc.);
- poor weather conditions (snow, heavy rain, hail, black ice, etc.);
- poor visibility (night, fog etc.);
- poor contrast between the vehicle preceding it and the surrounding area (e.g. white vehicle in a snowy area etc.) ;
- being dazzled (glaring sun, lights of vehicles travelling in the opposite direction etc.);
- narrow, winding or undulating road (tight bends etc.);
- the tar lines detected as a line by the system;
- narrowing/widening lanes;
- road markings which are worn, lacking in contrast or very widely spaced from one another (lines partially erased etc);
- multiple markings on the road (roadworks area, slip roads connecting to adjacent motorways, hard shoulder etc.);
- road signs that do not include an arrow, located in a motorway exit;
- an area with low connectivity that makes it impossible to geolocate the vehicle or maps that are not up-to-date;
- a slower vehicle with a significant difference in speed;
- use of mats not adapted to the vehicle. On the driver's side, only use mats suitable for the vehicle, attached with the pre-fitted components, and check the fitting regularly. Do not lay one mat on top of another. **There is a risk of wedging the pedals.**

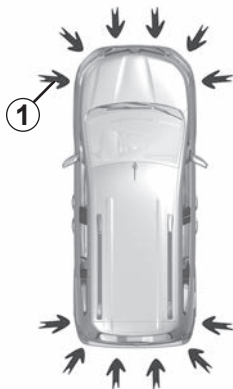
**In these cases, the system may wrongly intervene.**

- **Risk of unwanted braking or acceleration.**
- **Risk of unwanted, incorrect correction or no correction of trajectory.**

Many unforeseen situations may affect the system operation. Certain objects or vehicles that can appear in the camera or radar detection zone may be interpreted by the system incorrectly, possibly leading to inappropriate acceleration or braking.

**You should always be attentive to sudden events that might occur while you are driving. Always maintain your vehicle under control by keeping your feet near the pedals and your hands on the steering wheel, so that you are ready to act in any event.**

## PARKING DISTANCE CONTROL (1/8)



55064

### Operating principle

Ultrasonic sensors, indicated by the arrows **1**, are fitted in the rear bumper (and in the front bumper, depending on the vehicle) to measure the distance between the vehicle and an obstacle.

This measurement is indicated by beeps which become more frequent the closer you come to the obstacle, until they become a continuous beep when the vehicle is approximately 30 centimetres from the obstacle.

Depending on the vehicle, the system detects obstacles to the front, the rear and the sides of the vehicle.

The parking distance control system is only activated when the vehicle is driven at a speed below approximately 6 mph (10 km/h).

The function does not take into account towing or carrying systems that are not recognised by the system.

### Location of the ultrasonic sensors **1**

Ensure that the ultrasonic sensors indicated by the arrows **1** are not obscured (by dirt, mud, snow, a badly fitted/attached number plate), impacted, modified (including paintwork) or obstructed by any accessory fitted to the rear and/or, depending on the vehicle, to the front or sides of your vehicle.

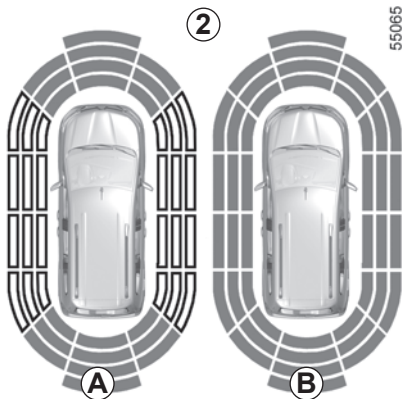


This function is an additional aid that uses sound signals to indicate the distance between the vehicle and an obstacle during reversing.

Under no circumstances should it replace the driver's care or responsibility whilst reversing.

The driver should always be ready for sudden incidents while driving: always ensure that there are no small, narrow moving obstacles (such as a child, animal, pushchair, bicycle, stone, post, etc.) in the blind spot when manoeuvring.

## PARKING DISTANCE CONTROL (2/8)



**Note:** the display 2 shows the vehicle surroundings and emits beeps.

It is necessary to travel a few metres before the side detection is activated.

If all areas have a grey background, the whole area around the vehicle is being monitored:

- **A:** analysis of the vehicle surroundings in progress;
- **B:** analysis of the vehicle surroundings carried out.



### Operation

Most objects located less near the front, rear and sides of the vehicle are detected.

Depending on the distance of the obstacle, the frequency of the beep will be higher while approaching it, and will become a continuous beep around 20 cm away for obstacles to the sides, and around 30 cm for obstacles to the front or rear. The green, orange (or yellow depending on the vehicle) and red zones will be shown on the display C.

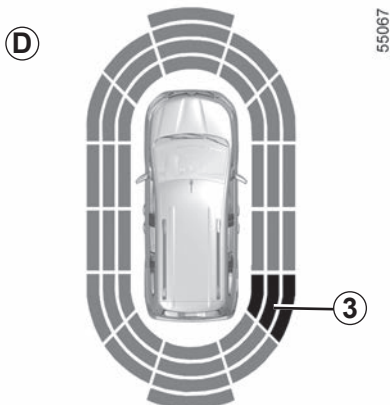
**Note:** in the event of a change in trajectory during a manoeuvre, the risk of collision with an obstacle may be signalled late.



An impact to the underside of the vehicle while manoeuvring (e.g. striking a post, raised kerb or other street furniture) may result in damage to the vehicle (e.g. deformation of an axle).

To avoid any risk of accident, have your vehicle checked by an approved dealer.

## PARKING DISTANCE CONTROL (3/8)



### Detection of obstacles to the side

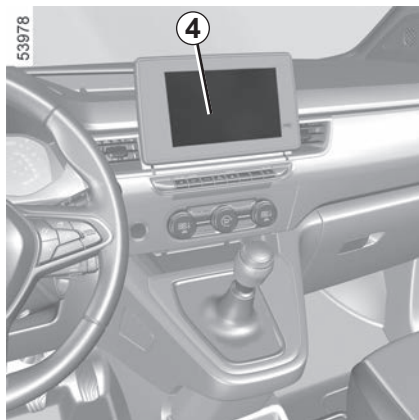
Depending on the direction of the wheels, the system determines the trajectory of the vehicle and notifies the driver of any risk or otherwise of a collision with an obstacle **3** to the side of the vehicle.

If a side obstacle is detected:

- the beeps become faster and then sound continuously as the obstacle gets nearer. Green, orange and red zones will be displayed on the display **D**;
- if there is no risk of collision, no beep will sound when approaching the obstacle. Green, orange and red zones will be displayed interspersed on the display **D**.

**Note:** in the event of a change in trajectory during a manoeuvre, the risk of collision with an obstacle may be signalled late.

## PARKING DISTANCE CONTROL (4/8)



### Vehicles fitted with a multimedia screen

#### Activation/deactivation

To activate or deactivate the various zones covered by the ultrasonic detectors from the multimedia screen **4**, refer to the multimedia instructions.

Select “ON” or “OFF”.

When the engine is started, the system recalls the last position stored before the ignition was switched off.

#### Adjustment

Depending on the vehicle, with the engine running, some settings can be adjusted from the multimedia screen **4**. Please refer to the multimedia instructions for further information.

#### Parking distance control audio volume

Adjust the volume of the parking distance control by pressing **+** or **-**.

#### System sound

Enables the system sound to be chosen.

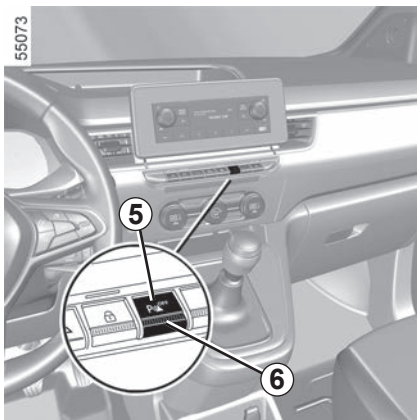
#### Deactivating the system sound

Activate or deactivate the parking distance control sound.

**Note:** if you deactivate the sound, you will no longer be notified with beeps when approaching an obstacle.

When the vehicle is travelling at a speed below approximately 6 mph (10 km/h), some noises (motorcycle, lorry, pneumatic drill etc.) may trigger the beeping sound of the parking distance control.

## PARKING DISTANCE CONTROL (5/8)

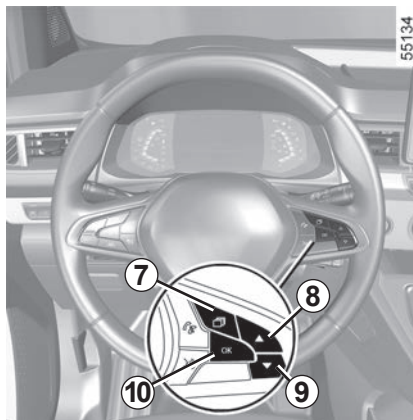


### Vehicles not fitted with a multimedia screen

#### Activation/deactivation

With the vehicle stopped, press the **6** switch to deactivate parking distance control. Warning light **5** in the switch lights up. Press again on the **6** switch to activate the function. The indicator light built into the **5** switch goes out.

When the engine is started, the system recalls the last position stored before the ignition was switched off.



### Special feature on vehicles fitted with front, rear and side Park Assist

You can also activate/deactivate the function from the instrument panel:

- with the vehicle stationary, press the **7** switch as many times as required to reach the “Vehicle” tab;
- press the **8** or **9** control repeatedly to reach the “Settings” menu. Press the switch **10** OK;

- press the **8** or **9** control repeatedly to reach the “PARKING ASSIST” menu. Press the switch **10** OK;
- select “ON” or “OFF” to activate or deactivate the function.

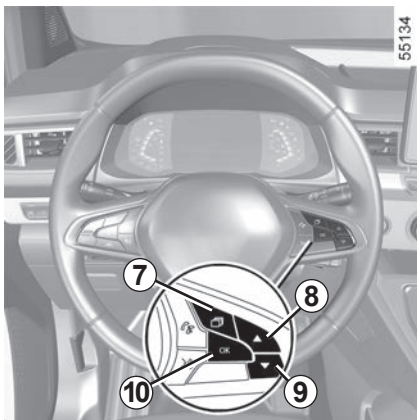
If the **6** button cannot be used to reactivate Park Assist, check that the function has not been deactivated on the instrument panel. To reactivate it, please refer to the paragraph entitled “Special feature on vehicles fitted with front, rear and side Park Assist”.



An impact to the underside of the vehicle while manoeuvring (e.g. striking a post, raised kerb or other street furniture) may result in damage to the vehicle (e.g. deformation of an axle).

To avoid any risk of accident, have your vehicle checked by an approved dealer.

## PARKING DISTANCE CONTROL (6/8)



### Adjustment

- With the vehicle stopped, press the **7** switch as many times as required to reach the “Vehicle” tab;
- press the **8** or **9** control repeatedly to reach the “Settings” menu. Press the switch **10** OK;
- press the **8** or **9** control repeatedly to reach the “PARKING ASSIST” menu. Press the switch **10** OK;

- select “Beep volume” to adjust the volume of Park Assist using control **8** or **9**.

### Automatic deactivation of the parking distance control

The system deactivates:

- when the vehicle speed is above approximately 6 mph (10 km/h);
- depending on the vehicle, when the vehicle is stationary for more than approximately three seconds and an obstacle is detected (such as when in a traffic jam etc.);
- when the vehicle is in neutral on manual gearboxes, or in position **N** or **P** on automatic gearboxes;
- when an operating fault is detected.

**Note:** if the vehicle is fitted with a towbar recognised by the system, only the rear Park Assist is deactivated.

### Deactivating the parking distance control manually

You must disable the function if:

- if towing, carrying or trailer equipment that is unrecognised by the system is present in front of the ultrasonic sensors;
- in the event of damage to the ultrasonic sensors.

### Operating faults

When the system detects an operating fault, a beep sounds for approximately three seconds each time reverse gear is selected and is accompanied by the message “Check parking sensor” shown on the instrument panel. Consult an approved dealer.



## PARKING DISTANCE CONTROL (7/8)

### **System servicing/repairs**

- In the event of an impact, the alignment of the sensors may be altered and their operation may consequently be affected. Deactivate the function and consult an authorised dealer.
- Any work in the area where the sensors are located (repairs, replacements, etc.) must be carried out by a qualified professional.

Only an authorised dealer is qualified to service the system.

### **System disturbance**

Some conditions can disrupt or damage the operation of the system, for example:

- poor weather conditions (rain, snow, hail, black ice, etc.);
- in the event of exposure to strong electromagnetic waves (under high-voltage lines, etc.);
- some types of noise (motorcycle, lorry, pneumatic drill etc.);
- fitting a non-compatible towing ball or hook;
- ...

### **Risk of false alarms or absence of warnings**

In the event of the system behaving abnormally, deactivate it and consult an authorised dealer.

## PARKING DISTANCE CONTROL (8/8)

### **Limitation of the system operation**

- The area around the sensors must be kept clean and free of any modifications in order to ensure the proper operation of the system.
- Small objects moving close to the vehicle (motorcycles, bicycles, pedestrians, etc.) may not be recognised by the system.
- The system may not detect objects that are too close to the vehicle.
- The system may not provide a warning when the other vehicles or objects are travelling at a significantly different speed.
- When there is a change in trajectory during a manoeuvre, the system may be slow in reporting obstacles.
- When the vehicle is towing a trailer, the rear Park Assist system must be deactivated.

### **Deactivating the function**

You must disable the function if:

- the area around the sensors has been damaged;
- the vehicle is equipped with a towing device that is not recognised by the system (electrical adapter, ball, hook, etc.).

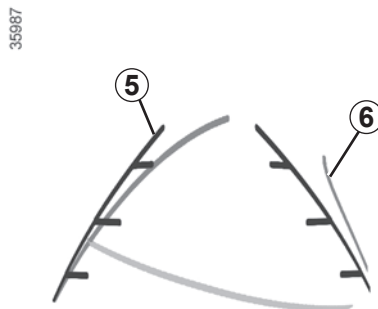
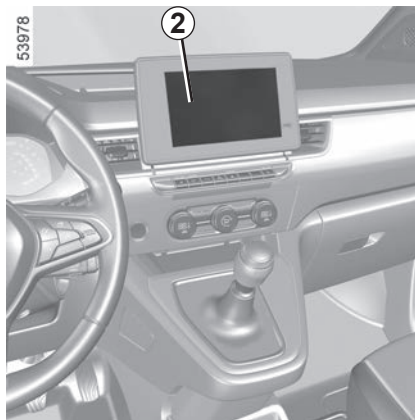
## REVERSING CAMERA (1/3)



### Operation

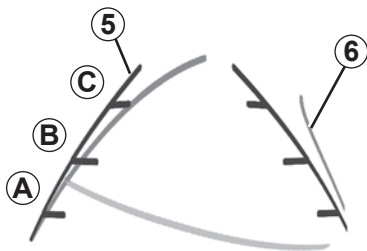
Depending on the vehicle, when the reverse gear is engaged, the camera **1** located on the tailgate or on the rear hinged door transmits a view of the surroundings behind the vehicle to:

- the multimedia screen **2**, accompanied by one or two guidelines **5** and **6** (fixed and moving);
- or
- the rear view mirror **3**, accompanied by a fixed guideline **5**;
- or
- the camera rear view system screen **4**, accompanied by a fixed guideline **5**.



## REVERSING CAMERA (2/3)

35987



This system uses several guidelines for its operation (mobile for trajectory and fixed for distance). When the red zone is reached, use the bumper image to stop accurately.

### Fixed clearance gauge 5

The fixed clearance gauge comprises coloured markers **A**, **B** and **C** indicating the distance behind the vehicle:

- **A**(red) approximately 30 centimetres from the vehicle;
- **B**(yellow) approximately 70 centimetres from the vehicle;
- **C**(green) approximately 150 centimetres from the vehicle.

This gauge remains fixed and indicates the vehicle trajectory if the wheels are in line with the vehicle.

### 6 moving guide line:

This is shown in blue and indicates the vehicle trajectory in relation to the steering wheel position.

### Special feature

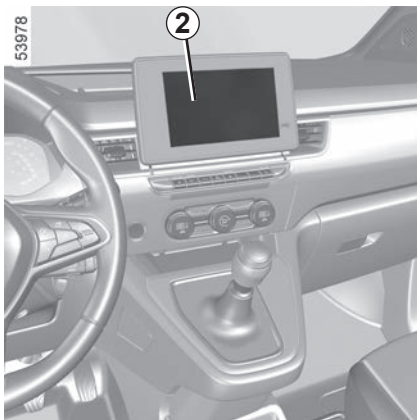
Make sure that the camera is not obscured (by dirt, mud, snow, condensation etc.).



This function is an additional aid. It cannot, therefore, under any circumstances replace the vigilance or the responsibility of the driver.

The driver should always be ready for sudden incidents while driving: always ensure that there are no small, narrow moving obstacles (such as a child, animal, pushchair, bicycle, stone, post, etc.) in the blind spot when manoeuvring.

## REVERSING CAMERA (3/3)



### Settings

While the engine is running, from the multimedia screen **2** you can add or remove the guides and adjust the camera image settings (brightness, contrast etc.). Please refer to the multimedia instructions for further information.

The screen shows a reverse mirror image.

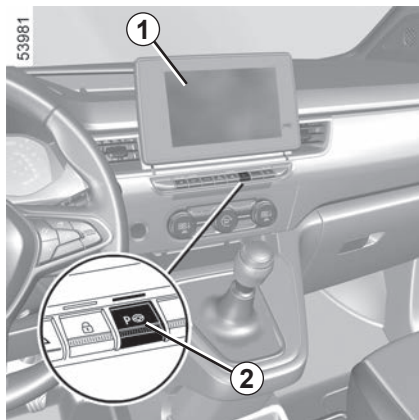
The frames are a representation projected on a flat surface. This information is to not be taken into account when superimposed on a vertical object or an object on the ground.

Objects which appear on the edge of the screen may be deformed.

In very bright light (snow, vehicle in sunshine, etc.), the camera vision may be adversely affected.

If the luggage compartment is open or incorrectly closed, the message “WARNING: Boot Open” appears on the multimedia screen.

## ASSISTED PARKING (1/5)

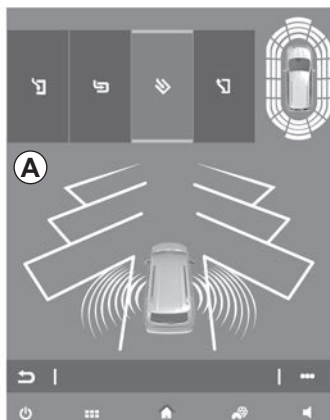


Using ultrasonic detectors as indicated by the **3** arrows installed in the vehicle bumpers, this function helps to find accessible parking spaces and assists in the parking manoeuvre.

Remove your hands from the steering wheel, you only control:

- the accelerator pedal;
- the brake pedal;
- the gear lever.

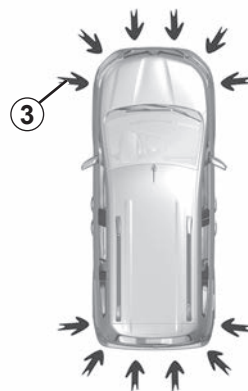
At any time, you can regain control by using the steering wheel.



### Switching on

While the engine is running, vehicle stationary or driving at less than approximately 19 mph (30 km/h):

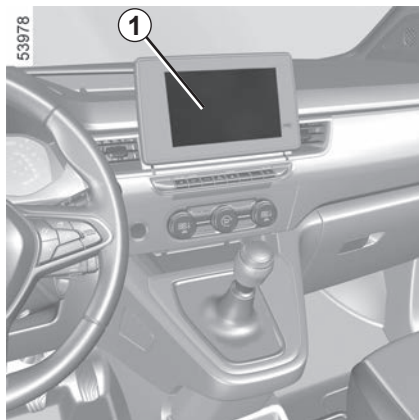
- press switch **2**. The indicator light in switch **2** lights up and display **A** appears on the multimedia screen **1**.
- set the direction indicator to the side of the vehicle where you want to park.



### Special features

Ensure that the ultrasonic sensors indicated by arrows **3** are not obscured (by dirt, mud, snow, etc.).

## ASSISTED PARKING (2/5)



### Choice of manoeuvre

The system can perform four types of manoeuvres:

- parallel parking;
- perpendicular parking;
- angle parking;
- moving out of a parallel parking space.

From the **1** multimedia screen, select the manoeuvre to carry out.

**Note:** when starting the vehicle, or after having successfully completed parallel parking using the system, the default manoeuvre proposed by the system is assistance in exiting a parallel parking space. In other cases, the default manoeuvre can be set from the multimedia screen **1**. Please refer to the multimedia instructions for further information.

## Operation

### Parking

As long as the vehicle speed is less than 19 mph (30 km/h), the system searches for available parking spaces on the side of the vehicle chosen by the driver.

**Note:** if parking spaces are available on the other side of the vehicle, set the direction indicator to the other direction to enable the system to search for spaces.

Once a space has been found, it is displayed on the multimedia screen, indicated by a small letter “**P**”. Drive slowly, with the direction indicator activated on the side where the space is available, until the “Stop” message is displayed and a beep sounds.

The system start up is accompanied by activation of the parking distance control and, on those vehicles equipped, the reversing camera to help the driver visualise the manoeuvre. ➡ 2.134 and ➡ 2.142.

## ASSISTED PARKING (3/5)

The space is then indicated on the multimedia screen by a capital letter "P".

- Stop the vehicle;
- select reverse gear.

The indicator light  lights up on the instrument panel and a beep sounds.

- Release the steering wheel;
- follow the instructions shown on the multifunction screen **1**.

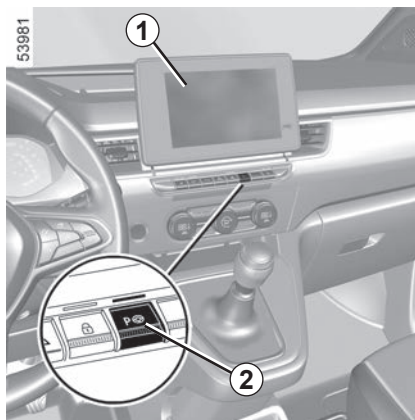
Your speed should not exceed around 4 mph (7 km/h).

Once the warning light  on the instrument panel goes off and a beep sounds, the manoeuvre has been completed.



This function is an additional driving aid.

Therefore, it can under no circumstances replace the driver's vigilance and responsibility during manoeuvres (the driver must always be ready to brake).




### Exiting a parallel parking space

- Briefly press the **2** switch;
- Select the "Exit parallel parking space" mode;
- activate the direction indicator on the side you wish to go out of;
- press and hold switch **2** (approx. two seconds).

The indicator light  lights up on the instrument panel and a beep sounds.

- Release the steering wheel;
- carry out manoeuvres at the front and rear by following the instructions shown on the multimedia screen **1** and using the parking distance control system alerts.

Your speed should not exceed around 4 mph (7 km/h).

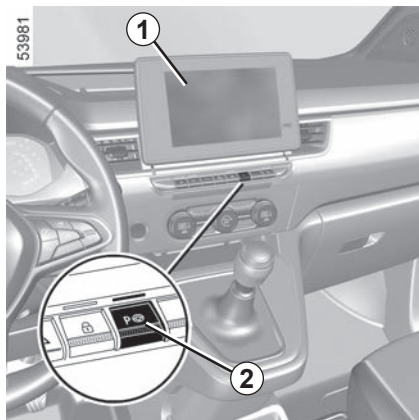
Once the vehicle is in a position to exit the parking space, the  warning light disappears from the instrument panel and a sound signal and message appear on the multimedia screen **1** to confirm that the manoeuvre is complete.



When manoeuvring, the steering wheel may turn quickly: do not put your hands inside, and make sure that nothing is caught inside.



## ASSISTED PARKING (4/5)



### Suspending/Resuming the manoeuvre

The manoeuvre is suspended in the following circumstances:

- you take control of the wheel;
- the vehicle is stationary for more than one minute;
- an obstacle in the direction of movement prevents the manoeuvre from being completed;
- the engine stops;
- a door or the luggage compartment is opened.

The switch warning light **2** goes out, the **P** warning light disappears from the instrument panel and an audible signal confirms that the manoeuvre has been suspended. The reason for suspending the manoeuvre will be displayed on the multimedia screen **1**.

Make sure:

- the vehicle is stationary;
- and
- you have released the steering wheel;
- and
- that all doors and the boot are closed;
- and
- that no obstacles are in the way of the direction of movement;
- and
- that the engine is started.

If the warning light on the **2** switch flashes, this indicates that the system is once again available to resume the manoeuvre.

To resume the manoeuvre, press and hold the **2** switch. The **2** switch warning light appears and **P** is displayed on the instrument panel.

Follow the instructions shown on the multimedia screen **1**.

### Cancelling the manoeuvre

The manoeuvre is cancelled in the following cases:

- the vehicle is too far from the desired parking space;
- the vehicle speed has exceeded 4 mph (7 km/h);
- by pressing switch **2** or by deactivating from the multimedia screen;
- you have performed more than 14 forwards/backwards movements in one manoeuvre;
- the parking distance control sensors are dirty or blocked;
- a fault in the Park Assist system;
- the vehicle wheels have skidded.

The **2** switch warning light and the **P** warning light disappear from the instrument panel and a sound signal confirms that the manoeuvre has been cancelled. The reason for cancelling the manoeuvre will be displayed on the multimedia screen **1**.

## ASSISTED PARKING (5/5)



This function is an additional driving aid. This function is not under any circumstances intended to replace the due care and attention of the driver, who should at all times be in control of the vehicle. Make sure that the manoeuvre complies with the applicable traffic regulations in your location.

The driver should always be ready for sudden incidents while driving: always ensure that there are no small, narrow moving obstacles (such as a child, animal, pushchair, bicycle, stone, post, towing equipment, etc.) in the blind spot when manoeuvring.

### System servicing/repairs

- In the event of an impact, the alignment of the sensors may be changed and their operation may consequently be affected. Deactivate the function and consult an authorised dealer.
- Any work in the area where the sensors are located (repairs, replacements, exterior trim modifications, etc.) must be carried out by a qualified professional.

Only an authorised dealer is qualified to service the system.

### In the event of system disturbance

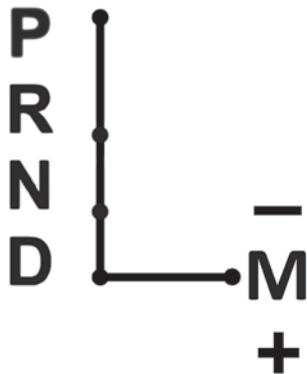
Certain conditions may disrupt or impair operation of the system, such as poor weather conditions (snow, hail, ice, etc.). In the event of the system behaving abnormally, deactivate it and consult an authorised dealer.

### Risk of erroneous false alarms.

### Limitations of the system operation

- The system cannot detect objects located in the sensor blind spots.
- Always visually check that the parking space proposed by the system is still available and contains no obstacles.
- The system should not be used when towing a trailer or when there is a towing or load carrying system on the vehicle or on surrounding vehicles.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION (1/4)



### Selector lever 1

**P:** park

**R:** reverse

**N:** Neutral

**D:** automatic mode

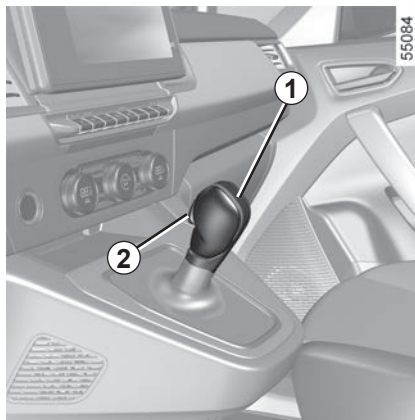
**M:** Manual mode

**+**: upshifting gear

**-**: descending gear

The gear currently engaged is displayed on the instrument panel **A**.


**Note:** Press button **2** to go from position **D** or **N** to **R** or **P**.

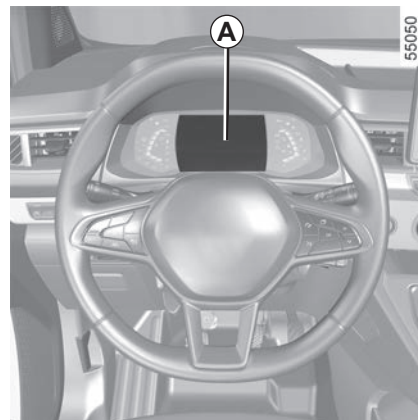


### Operation

With the selection lever **1** in position **P**, switch on the ignition.

To move out of position **P**, you must depress the brake pedal before pressing the unlocking button **2**.

With your foot on the brake pedal (warning light  on the display goes out), move the lever out of position **P**.



**Only engage D or R when the vehicle is stopped, with your foot on the brake and the accelerator pedal released.**

# AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION (2/4)

## Driving in automatic mode

Put lever **1** into position **D**.

In most road conditions you will encounter, you will not need to touch your lever again: the gears will change automatically at the right time and at the most suitable engine speed because the automatic system takes into account the vehicle load and road contour and adjusts itself to the particular driving style you have chosen.

## Economical driving

When driving, always leave the lever in position **D**, keeping the accelerator pedal lightly depressed to ensure automatic gear changes at a lower engine speed.

## Accelerating and overtaking

Depress the accelerator pedal firmly and fully (so that it goes beyond the kickdown point).

**This will enable you to change down to the optimum gear within the engine range.**

## Driving in manual mode

With the selector lever in position **D**, move the lever to the right into the **M** position. Shifting the lever repeatedly allows you to change gears manually:

- to move down through the gears, push the lever forwards;
- to move up through the gears, push the lever backwards.

The gear selected is displayed on the instrument panel.

## Special cases

In certain driving conditions (resulting in, for example, engine protection, operation of the Electronic Stability Control programme: ESC etc.) the automated system may change the gear automatically. Likewise, to prevent incorrect manoeuvres, a gear change may be refused by the automatic system: in this case the gear display flashes for a few seconds as a warning.

## Special circumstances

- **If the road type or weather conditions** (steep uphill slopes, sudden downhill slopes, deep snow, sand or mud) make it difficult to stay in automatic mode, depending on the vehicle, it is advisable to switch to manual mode using the paddles. This will prevent the automatic gearbox from changing gears repeatedly when climbing, and permit engine braking on long descents.
- **In cold weather**, to prevent the engine from stalling, wait a few seconds before moving the selector lever from position **P** or **N** and engaging it in **D** or **R**.

When facing uphill, to remain stopped, do not keep your foot on the accelerator.

**Risk of overheating the automatic gearbox.**

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION (3/4)

### Parking the vehicle

When the vehicle is stopped, move the lever to position **P** while keeping your foot on the brake pedal: the gearbox is in neutral and the drive wheels are mechanically locked by the driveshaft.

**Apply the handbrake or, depending on the vehicle, ensure that the electronic parking brake is applied.**



An impact to the underside of the vehicle while manoeuvring (e.g.: striking a post, raised kerb or other street furniture) may result in damage to the vehicle (e.g.: deformation of an axle).

To avoid any risk of accident, have your vehicle checked by an approved Dealer.

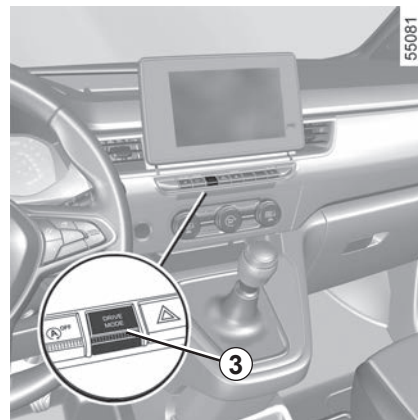
### Maintenance period

Refer to the maintenance document for your vehicle or consult an Approved Dealer to check whether the automatic gearbox requires scheduled maintenance.

If it does not need to be serviced, there is no need to top up the oil.



For safety reasons, do not switch off the ignition before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill.



### Load mode

When the vehicle is driven loaded, press the **3** switch on the dashboard. The indicator light **Perfo** on the instrument panel will light up.

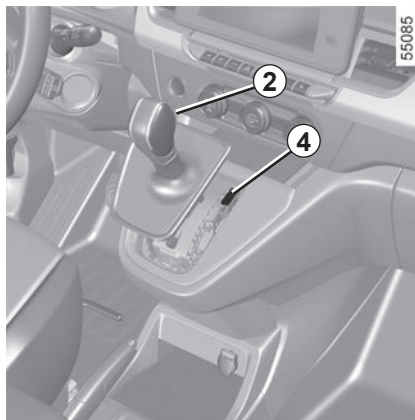
Load mode is deselected every time the engine is switched off. It will be necessary to select it again.

Load mode may be used to equal effect in both automatic and manual modes.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION (4/4)

### Operating faults

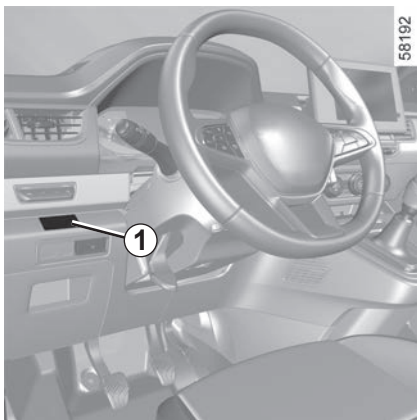
- **When driving**, if the “WARNING: Check Gearbox” message appears on the instrument panel, it indicates a fault.  
Contact your approved Dealer as soon as possible;
- **When driving**, if the message “WARNING: Gearbox Overheating” appears on the instrument panel, stop as soon as possible to allow the gearbox to cool down and wait for the message to disappear.
- **Breakdown of a vehicle with an automatic gearbox ➡ 5.40.**



**When setting off**, if the lever is stuck in **P** when you press the brake pedal (e.g. battery fault), it is possible to manually release the lever to unblock the drive wheels. To do this, unclip the base of the gaiter and press the **4** button while simultaneously pressing the **2** button on the lever to unlock the lever and shift to position **N**.

Contact an authorised dealer as soon as possible.

## VEHICLE WITH OVERSPEED FUNCTION



The vehicle speed may be permanently set at a fixed value depending on the vehicle or on local legislation.

To adjust the value or activate/deactivate the function, consult an approved dealer.

In the event of statutory limits, depending on the vehicle, this function cannot be deactivated.

Label **1** attached to the dashboard shows the speed limit.

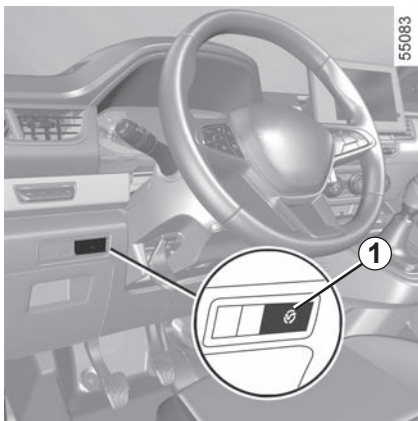
**Special case:** if your vehicle is fitted with the Cruise control/Speed limiter, fully pressing the accelerator pedal (beyond the kickdown point) will not enable you to exceed the overspeed function set speed. ➔ 2.96.

In exceptional circumstances (e.g. steep gradient), the overspeed function speed may be exceeded slightly as the function does not affect the braking system.



The function does not take the place of the driver. Under no circumstances should it replace observation of speed limits nor vigilance and responsibility on the part of the driver.

## FAST IDLE SPEED





Press control **1**, and the function will be activated after a few seconds.

### Modifying fast idle speed

To increase or reduce the speed, contact an approved dealer.

### Switching off the function

The function is interrupted when:

- you depress the clutch pedal and/or accelerator pedal;
- the vehicle speed is above 0 mph;
- the **STOP** indicator light is lit up on the instrument panel;
- the  indicator light is lit up on the instrument panel;
- the  indicator light is lit up on the instrument panel.

**Special feature of the Stop and Start function:** activating the “Fast Idle Speed” function prevents the engine from going into standby.  
➡ 2.8.



## EMERGENCY CALL (1/3)

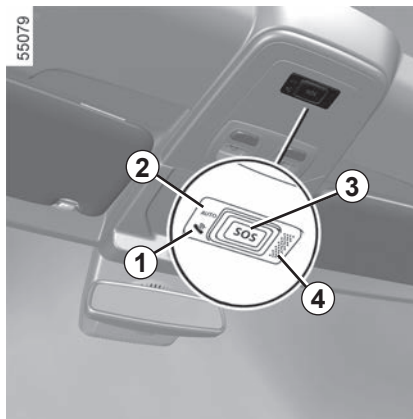
If the vehicle is equipped, the emergency call function can be used to call the emergency services (without charge) automatically or manually in the event of an accident or illness, reducing the time it takes for the emergency services to arrive.

**Note:** the emergency call operates:

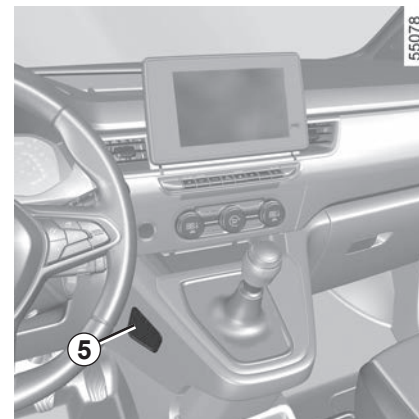
- in countries covered by the associated telematics emergency services and infrastructure compatible with the system;
- depending on the network coverage in the geographical region where the vehicle is being driven.

If you use the emergency call function to report an accident which you have witnessed, this implies stopping where traffic conditions allow in order for the emergency services to locate your vehicle and therefore the location of the reported accident.

In all cases, comply with local legislation.



- 1** System operation warning light:
- green: operational (network available);
  - off: non-operational (network unavailable);
  - red: operating fault;
  - green flashing: call in progress.
- 3** Automatic mode warning light;
- 3** SOS button;
- 4** Microphone;
- 5** Speaker.

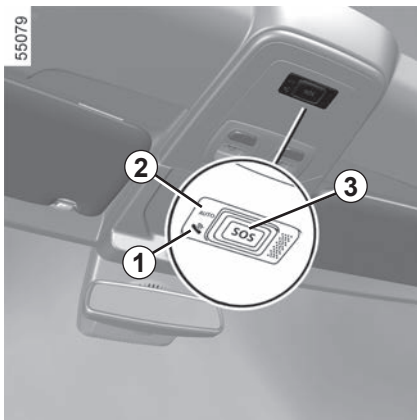


Use the emergency call only in the event of an emergency you are involved in, if you witness an accident or if you feel ill.



In the event of an accident, if the location and traffic conditions permit, stay close to the vehicle in order to be able answer the call centre quickly if necessary.

## EMERGENCY CALL (2/3)



A call is always made as follows:

- the call is set up with the emergency services;
- send data related to the incident (vehicle identification plate, local time of the call, last positions, direction of the vehicle) ;
- voice communication with the emergency services;
- if necessary, emergency assistance is called.

Emergency call has two modes:

- automatic mode;
- Manual mode.

### Automatic mode

If the automatic mode **2** warning light appears in green this confirms that the automatic system is activated.

The emergency call starts automatically in the event of an accident that has required the activation of the protective equipment (seat belt pretensioners, airbag etc.).

### Manual mode

The emergency call is carried out by:

- pressing and holding the **3** button for at least three seconds;

or

- pressing the **3** button five times within ten seconds.

In the event of unintended operation, it is possible to cancel the call by pressing the **3** button for around two seconds, before the call is connected to the call centre.

Once a call is established, only the call centre can end the call.

### Test mode

(depending on local laws)

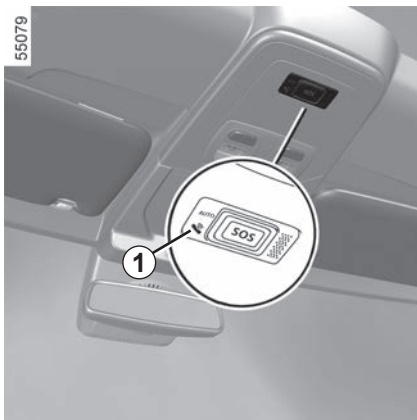
Test mode is reserved exclusively for Approved Dealers to check that the emergency call feature is working properly.

To activate test mode:

- briefly press the **3** button three times;
- wait approximately 15 seconds;
- briefly press the **3** button three times.

Exit from test mode is automatic.

## EMERGENCY CALL (3/3)



### Operating faults

In some cases, the emergency call may not work (e.g. low battery).

When the system detects an operating fault, the **1** warning light turns red for over 30 minutes; consult an Approved Dealer as soon as possible.

The system operates with a dedicated battery. The battery service life is approximately four years (the **1** warning light lights up in red to warn you when approaching expiry).

Consult an approved dealer



To guarantee your safety and the proper operation of the system, any operation carried out on the battery (removal, disconnection, etc.) must be carried out by a qualified specialist.

### Risk of serious burns or electric shocks.

You must respect the replacement intervals (without exceeding them) as stated in the maintenance document.

The battery is a specific type. Please ensure it is replaced with the same type.

Call an approved Dealer.

Without the emergency call feature, the system is not trackable and will not be under constant surveillance. Data is automatically and constantly erased, and the system stores only the last three positions of the vehicle.

According to local legislation, data is only sent in the event of an emergency call. Data sent to the call centre is treated according to the personal data protection laws applicable in the country where you are located. The system stores activity history data for 13 hours only.

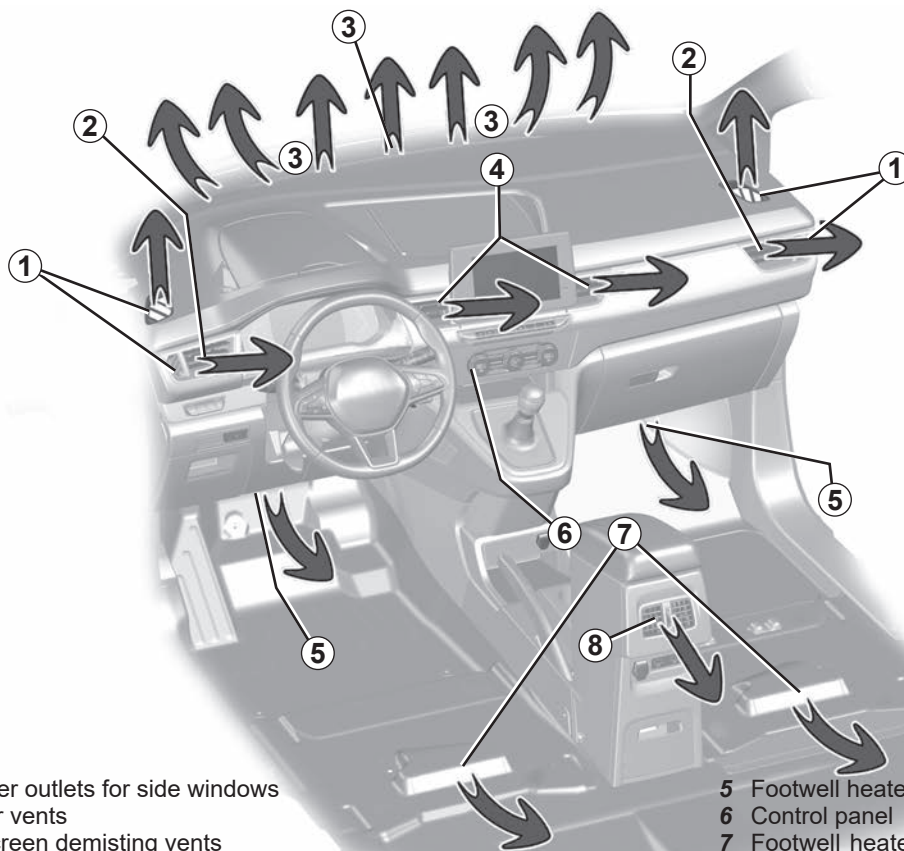
The vehicle owner has the right of access to their data. They can request that the data be corrected, deleted or locked.

## ***Section 3: Your comfort***

Air Vents . . . . .	3.2
Manual air conditioning, heating system . . . . .	3.5
Automatic climate control . . . . .	3.9
Air conditioning: information and advice on use . . . . .	3.14
Multimedia equipment . . . . .	3.16
Electric windows . . . . .	3.19
Interior lighting . . . . .	3.22
Sun visor, mirrors, grab handle . . . . .	3.24
Passenger compartment storage, fittings . . . . .	3.25
Accessories socket . . . . .	3.32
Rear headrests . . . . .	3.33
Rear bench seat: functions . . . . .	3.34
Rear parcel shelf . . . . .	3.36
Luggage net. . . . .	3.37
Luggage compartment storage space and fittings . . . . .	3.38
Transporting objects in the luggage compartment . . . . .	3.39
Transporting objects: towbar . . . . .	3.43
Roof bars . . . . .	3.44
Roof anchorage points . . . . .	3.46

## AIR VENTS, air outlets (1/3)

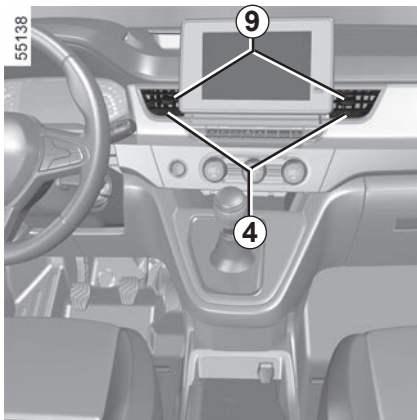
55403



- 1 Demister outlets for side windows
- 2 Side air vents
- 3 Windscreen demisting vents
- 4 Centre air vents

- 5 Footwell heater outlets for front passengers
- 6 Control panel
- 7 Footwell heater outlets for rear passengers (depending on the vehicle)
- 8 Rear console air vents (depending on the vehicle)

## AIR VENTS, air outlets (2/3)



### Centre air vents 4

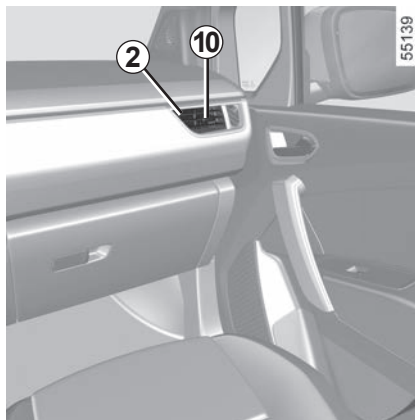
#### Air flow

To close: move the cursor **9** towards the outside of the vehicle up to the point of resistance.

To open: move the cursor **9** towards the inside of the vehicle.

#### Direction

Move the cursor **9** to the desired position.



### Side air vents 2

#### Air flow

To close: move the cursor **10** towards the inside of the vehicle.

To open: move the cursor **10** towards the outside of the vehicle up to the point of resistance.

#### Direction

Move the cursor **10** to the desired position.

Do not attach any objects to the air vents (e.g. telephone mounting).

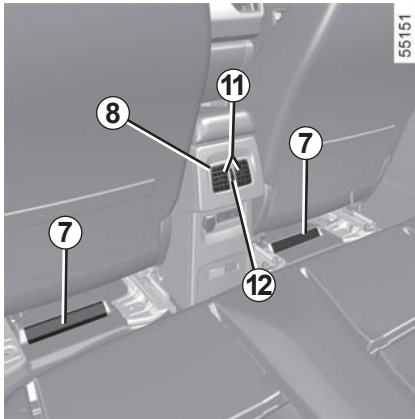
**Risk of damage.**



Do not add anything to the vehicle's ventilation circuit (for example, to remove bad odours).

**There is a risk of damage or of fire.**

## AIR VENTS, air outlets (3/3)



### Rear seats

(depending on vehicle)

Passenger footwell heater outlets 7.

### Rear console air vents 8

(depending on vehicle)

### Right/left direction

Move cursor 11.

### Up/down direction

Move cursor 11.

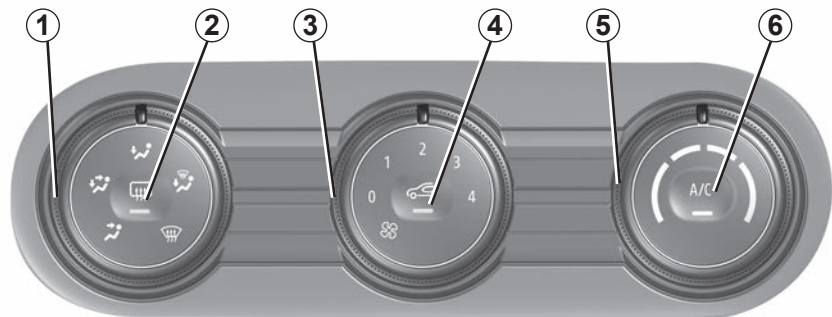
### Air flow

Turn control knob 12:

up: maximum flow;

down: closed.

# MANUAL AIR CONDITIONING, HEATING SYSTEM (1/4)



## The controls

(depending on vehicle)

- 1 Distribution of air in the passenger compartment.
- 2 De-icing/demisting the door mirrors and rear screen (if the vehicle is equipped).
- 3 Adjusting the ventilation fan speed.
- 4 Air recirculation.
- 5 Adjusting the air temperature.
- 6 Air conditioning.

## Switching air conditioning on or off

The air conditioning is switched on (indicator light on) or off (indicator light off) using button 6.

Activation is not possible if the 3 control is set to "0".

The air conditioning system is used for:

- lowering the temperature inside the passenger compartment;
- eliminating condensation more quickly.



# MANUAL AIR CONDITIONING, HEATING SYSTEM (2/4)

## Distribution of air in the passenger compartment

There are five air distribution options. Turn control **1** to choose the distribution option.



The air flow is directed to the windscreen and the front side window demisting vents.



The air flow is distributed between front side window demisting vents, the windscreen demisting vents and the footwells.



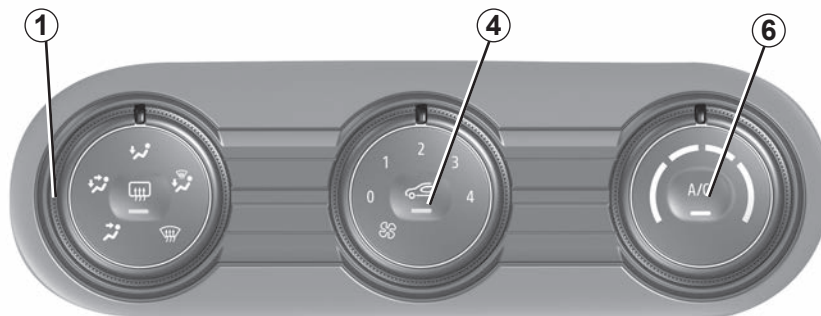
The air flow is directed mainly towards the footwells.



The air flow is directed towards the dashboard air vents, the front footwells and, depending on the vehicle, the second row footwells.



The air flow is mainly directed to the dashboard air vents.



## Switching the air recirculation on

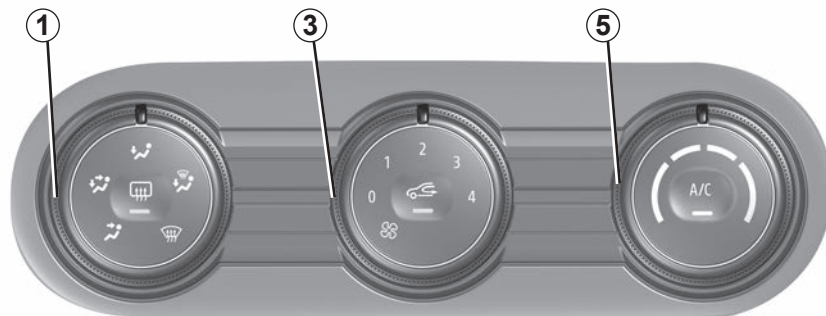
Press the **4** button: the integrated indicator light comes on. Under these conditions, air is taken from the passenger compartment and is recirculated, with no air being taken from outside the vehicle.

### Air recirculation is for:

- isolating the vehicle from the external atmosphere (driving in polluted areas, etc.);
- lowering the passenger compartment temperature as quickly as possible.

If the air conditioning is not activated (“A/C” light on the **6** switch off), prolonged use of recirculated air may cause mist to form on the side windows and windscreen as well as other problems due to the presence of non-recirculated air in the passenger compartment. We therefore advise you to return to normal mode (external air) as soon as the air recirculation function is no longer required, by pressing button **4** again.


## MANUAL AIR CONDITIONING, HEATING SYSTEM (3/4)



### Adjusting the ventilation speed

Move control **3**. The further the control is positioned to the right, the greater the amount of air blown into the passenger compartment. If you want to shut off the flow of air, set the **3** control to “0”.

The system is deactivated: the ventilation speed is zero (vehicle stationary). You can, however, still feel a slight flow of air when the vehicle is moving.

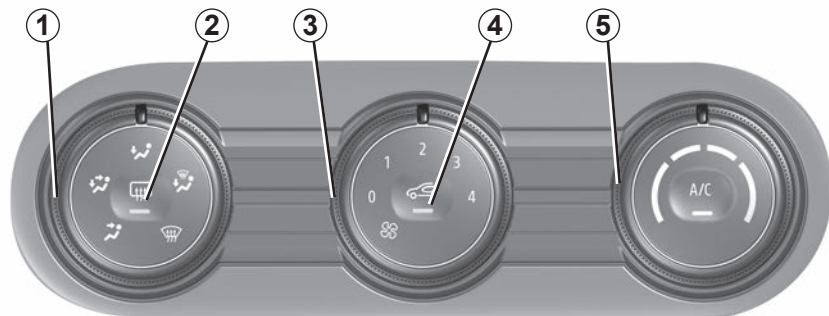
Use of the  position on the **1** control leads automatically to the air flowing out in order to prevent the risk of misting on the windscreen.

### Adjusting the air temperature

Turn control **5** to obtain the desired temperature. The further towards the red the slide is, the higher the temperature will be.

When the air conditioning system is used for long periods, it may begin to feel cold. To increase the temperature, turn control **5** to the right.

## MANUAL AIR CONDITIONING, HEATING SYSTEM (4/4)



55140

### Rear screen de-icing/ demisting

**With the engine running**, press button **2**. The operating tell-tale comes on.

This function permits rapid demisting/de-icing of the rear screen and de-icing of the door mirrors (on equipped vehicles).

**To exit this function**, press button **2** again. Warning light goes out.

Demisting automatically stops.

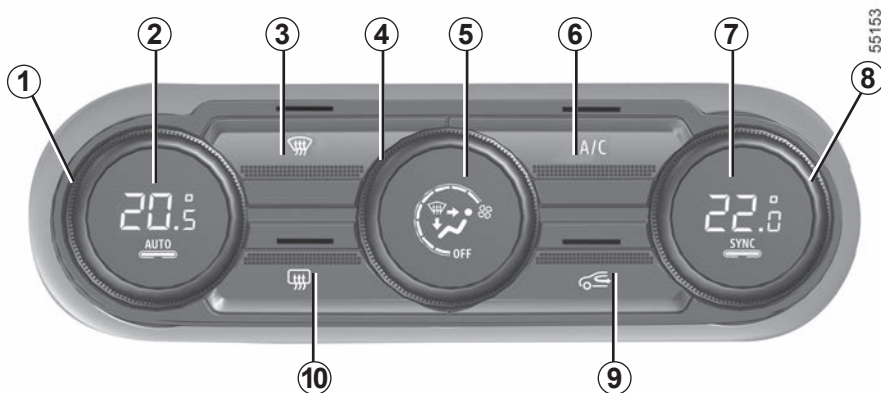
### Rapid demisting

Turn controls **1**, **3** and **5** to:

- demisting ;
- blower at speed **3** or **4**;
- maximum temperature.

Press the **4** button to disable the air recirculation (light off) and press the **2** button to activate de-icing of the rear screen (light on).

## AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL (1/5)



### The controls

- 1 Adjusting the driver's side air temperature.
- 2 "AUTO" automatic mode.
- 3 "Clear View" function.
- 4 Adjusting the ventilation fan speed.
- 5 Distribution of air in the passenger compartment.
- 6 Air-conditioning activation control.
- 7 SYNC "Synchronisation" function.
- 8 Adjusting the front passenger's air temperature.
- 9 Air recirculation.
- 10 De-icing/demisting the door mirrors and rear screen (if the vehicle is equipped).

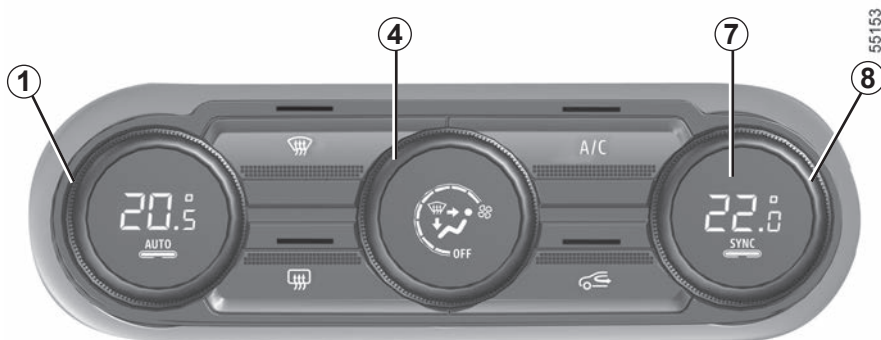
Any action on a button other than the **AUTO** button triggers deactivation of automatic mode.

### Automatic mode

The automatic climate control system guarantees comfort in the passenger compartment and good visibility (except in the event of extreme conditions), while optimising consumption. The system controls the ventilation speed, air distribution, air recirculation, and starting and stopping the air conditioning and air temperature.

**AUTO:** allows the selected comfort level to be best attained, depending on the exterior conditions. Press button 2.

## AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL (2/5)



### Adjusting the ventilation speed.

In automatic mode, the system uses the most suitable amount of air to reach and maintain the desired comfort level.

You can still adjust the ventilation speed by turning control **4** to increase or reduce the ventilation speed.

### Adjusting the air temperature

Turn control **1** or control **8** according to the temperature required.

Turning the control to the right increases the temperature.

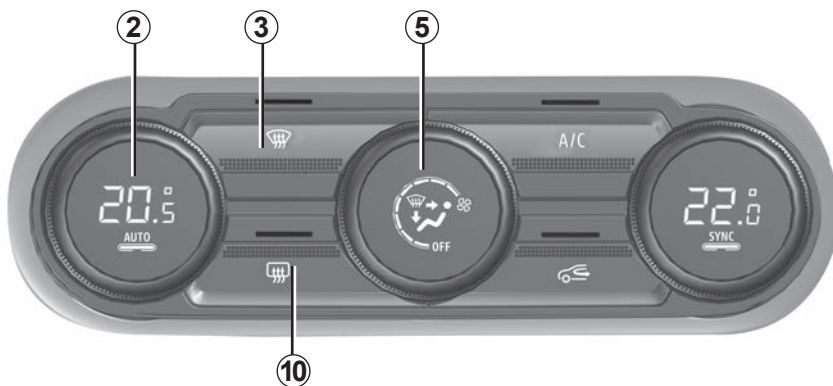
### SYNC function

Press the **7** button to enable uniform setting of the passenger compartment. The **7** button light will illuminate.

To deactivate the function, press the **7** button again or use the **8** control and adjust the right-hand side separately from the left-hand side.

The **7** button warning light switches off.

## AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL (3/5)



55153

### Clear View function

Press the **3** button: the integrated indicator light comes on.

This function quickly demists and de-ices the windscreen, the rear screen, the front side windows and the door mirrors (depending on the vehicle). The air conditioning and rear screen de-icing functions must be activated.

Press button **10** to stop the heated rear screen operating, and the integrated indicator goes out.

**To exit this function**, press button **2** or **3**.

Some buttons have an operating tell-tale which indicates the operating status.

### Adjusting the distribution of air in the passenger compartment

Press the **5** control as many times as necessary to select the passenger compartment air distribution mode. **5** is displayed to indicate the distribution mode selected.



All the air is then directed to the windscreen and front side window demisting vents.



The air flow is distributed between front side window demisting vents, the windscreen demisting vents and the footwells.



The air flow is directed towards the dashboard air vents, the front footwells and, depending on the vehicle, the second row footwells.

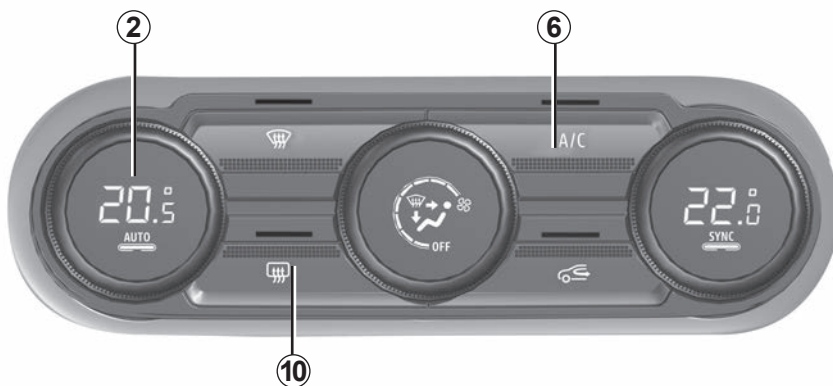


The air flow is mainly directed to the dashboard air vents.



The air flow is directed mainly towards the footwells.

## AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL (4/5)



55153

### Rear screen de-icing/ demisting

Press the **10** button: the integrated indicator light comes on. This function enables rapid demisting or de-icing of the rear screen and de-icing of the rear view mirrors (on equipped vehicles).

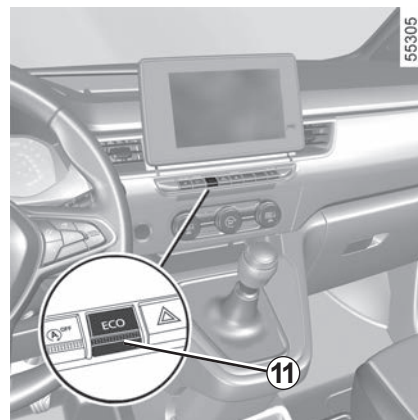
**To exit this function**, press button **10** again. Demisting automatically stops.

### Switching air conditioning on or off

In automatic mode, the system switches the air conditioning system on or off, depending on the climate conditions.

Press the **6** button to deactivate the air conditioning. The integrated indicator light goes off.

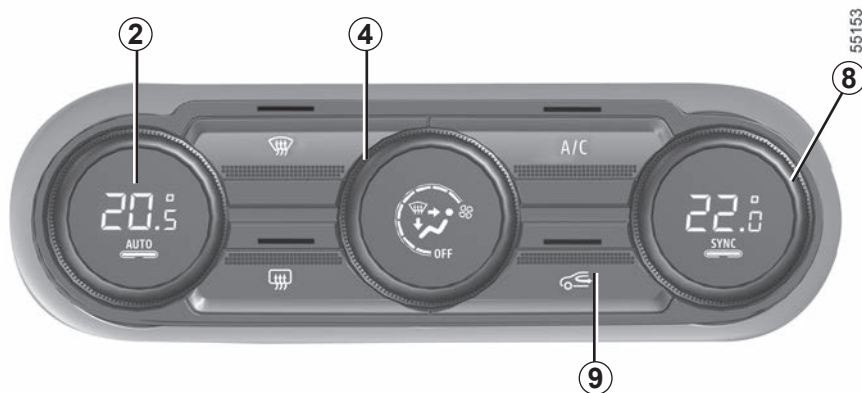
Fuel consumption increases when the air conditioning is being used (switch it off when it is not required).



55305

**Vehicles equipped with ECO mode (switch 11):** when activated, ECO mode may reduce the performance of the automatic air conditioning ➔ 2.21.

## AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL (5/5)



### Air recirculation (isolation of the passenger compartment)

This function is managed automatically but you can also activate it manually. In this case, the operation is confirmed by a warning light on the button **9**.

The demisting/de-icing will still take priority over the air recirculation.

### Stopping the system

Turn the control **4** to “**OFF**” to stop the system. To start it, turn the control **4** again, then adjust the fan speed or press the button **2**.

### Manual use

Press the **9** button: the integrated indicator light comes on.

Prolonged use of this position may lead to odours, caused by non-renewal of air, and the formation of condensation on the windows.

We therefore advise you to return to automatic mode as soon as air recirculation is no longer needed, by pressing button **9**.



## AIR CONDITIONING: information and operating instructions (1/2)

### Advice on use

In some situations (air conditioning off, air recirculation activated, ventilation speed at zero or low etc.), you may notice that condensation starts to form on the windows and windscreen.

If there is condensation, use the “**Clear View**” function to remove it, then use the air conditioning in automatic mode to stop it forming again.



Do not add anything to the vehicle's ventilation circuit (for example, to remove bad odours).

**There is a risk of damage or of fire.**

### Fuel consumption

You will normally notice an increase in fuel consumption (especially in town) when the air conditioning is operating.

For vehicles fitted with air conditioning with no automatic mode, switch off the system when it is not required.

### Advice for reducing consumption and helping to preserve the environment

Drive with the air vents open and the windows closed. If the vehicle has been parked in the sun, open the doors for a few moments to let the hot air escape before starting the engine.

### Maintenance

Refer to the Maintenance Document for your vehicle for the inspection frequency.

Use the air conditioning system regularly, even in cold weather, running it at least once a month for approximately 5 minutes.

### Operating faults

As a general rule, contact your approved dealer in the event of an operating fault.

#### – Reduction in de-icing, demisting or air conditioning performance.

This may be caused by the passenger compartment filter cartridge becoming clogged.

#### – No cold air is being produced.

Check that the controls are set correctly and that the fuses are sound. Otherwise, switch off the system.

### Presence of water under the vehicle

After prolonged use of the air conditioning system, it is normal for water to be present under the vehicle. This is caused by condensation.



**Do not open the refrigerant fluid circuit.** The fluid may damage eyes or skin.

## AIR CONDITIONING: information and operating instructions (2/2)



The refrigerant fluid circuit (of which some components are hermetically sealed) may contain fluorinated greenhouse gases.

Depending on the vehicle, you will find the following information on label **A** affixed inside the engine compartment.

The presence and location of the information on label **A** depends on the vehicle.



**Do not open the refrigerant circuit.** The fluid may damage eyes or skin.



Before carrying out any action in the engine compartment, you must switch off the ignition. ➔ 2.4 or ➔ 2.5.



Type of refrigerant fluid



Type of oil in the air conditioning circuit



Inflammable product



Consult the driver's handbook



Maintenance

x.xxx kg

Quantity of refrigerant fluid present in the vehicle.

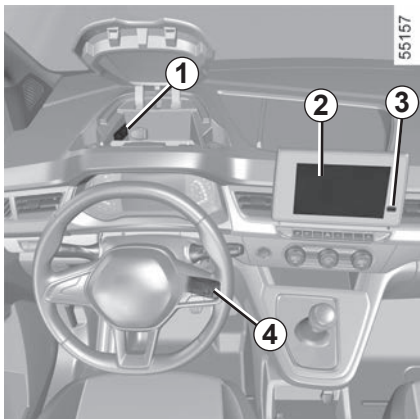
GWP xxxxx

Global Warming Potential (CO<sub>2</sub> equivalent).

CO<sub>2</sub> eq  
x.xx t

Quantity in weight and in CO<sub>2</sub> equivalent.

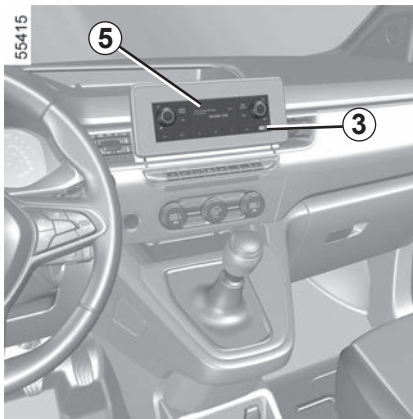
## MULTIMEDIA EQUIPMENT (1/3)



The location and operation of equipment may vary according to the vehicle.

- 1 USB sockets;
- 2 Multimedia screen;
- 3 Multimedia socket;
- 4 Steering column controls;
- 5 Radio.

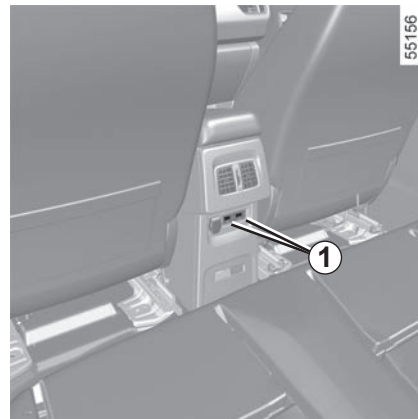
Please refer to the multimedia instructions for further information.



### Multimedia socket 3

You can use USB socket to access the multimedia content of your accessories. The various sources can be selected from the multimedia screen and from the steering column controls.

The USB ports can also be used to recharge accessories which have been approved by our Technical Department and have a maximum power rating of 12 Watts (5 V) per port.



### Sockets USB 1

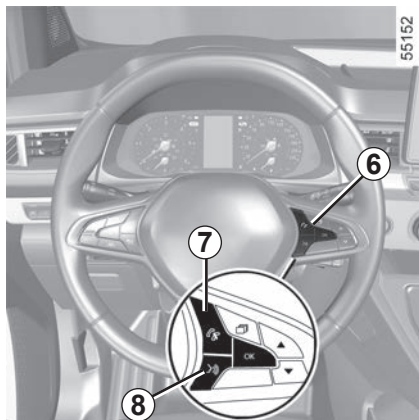
The sockets USB can only allow recharge accessories approved by the brand's Technical Services of power not exceeding 12 watts (voltage 5 V) per outlet.



Connect accessories with a maximum power of 12 watts only.

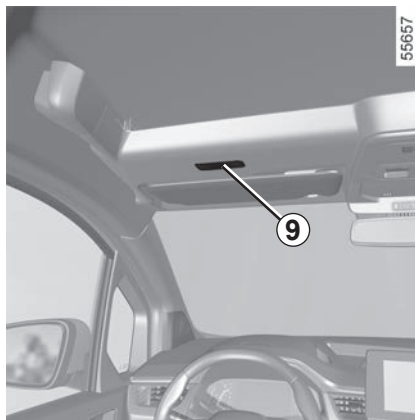
**Fire hazard.**

## MULTIMEDIA EQUIPMENT (2/3)



### Steering wheel controls 6

On those vehicles equipped, you can use the “hands-free” telephone 7 and voice recognition 8 controls.



### Microphone 9

(depending on the vehicle)

### Wireless charger - Induction charging 10

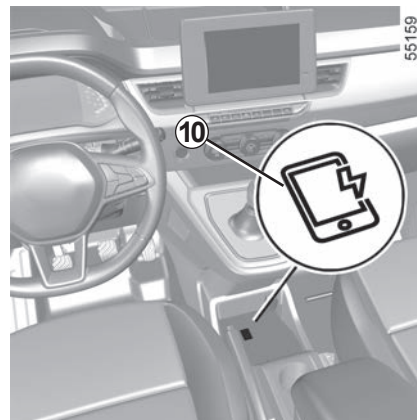
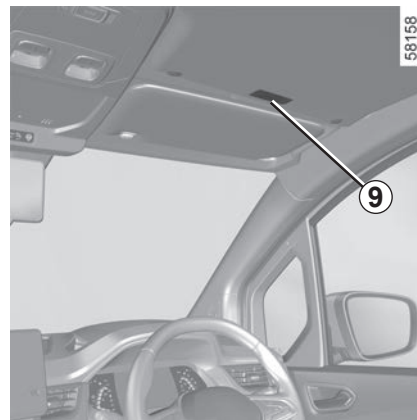
(depending on the vehicle)

➔ 3.25

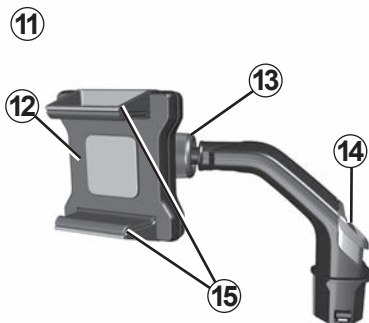


#### Using the telephone

We remind you of the need to conform to the legislation in force concerning the use of such equipment.



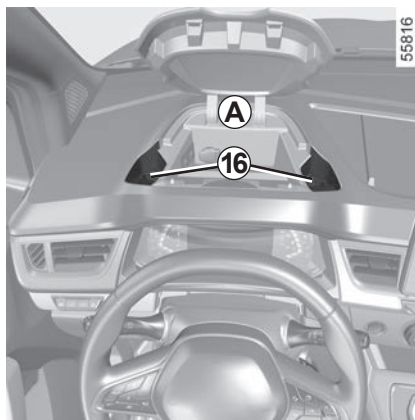
## MULTIMEDIA EQUIPMENT (3/3)



55814

### Telephone holder 11

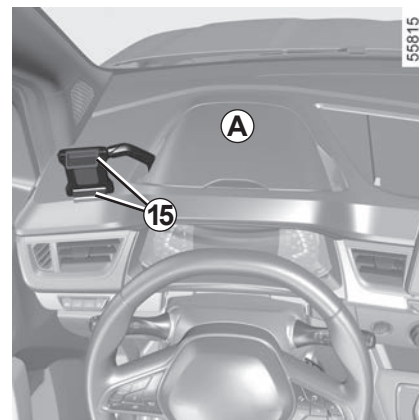
On equipped vehicles, open the storage compartment **A** and insert the phone holder into one of the locations **16** while pressing the button **14**.



55816

To place your smartphone in the **12** holder:

- move the clips **15**;
- place your smartphone in the phone holder **12** while pressing the clips **15**;
- release the clips so that the smartphone is held firmly in place.



55815

**Note:** the holder **12** can be repositioned. Use the tightening nut **13** to attach the holder in the desired position.

To remove the telephone holder **11**, open the storage compartment **A** and remove the holder while pressing the button **14**.



Make sure that the base of the telephone holder is correctly fitted and that the telephone is securely held in place in the telephone holder, so that it is not thrown onto the occupants during sudden turning or braking.



For safety reasons, carry out any adjustments when the vehicle is not being driven.

## ELECTRIC WINDOWS (1/3)

### Electric windows

**These systems operate** with the ignition on or off, until one of the front doors is opened (limited to about 3 minutes).

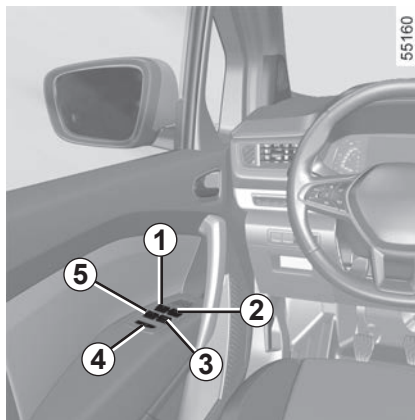
Press the switch for the window concerned to lower it to the desired height.

Lift the switch to raise the window to the desired height.

#### From the driver's seat

Operate the switches as follows:

- **1** for the driver's side;
- **2** for the front passenger's side;
- depending on the vehicle, **3** and **5** for the rear passengers.



#### Safety of rear occupants

The driver can prevent operation of the rear electric windows by pressing switch **4**. A confirmation message is displayed on the instrument panel.



#### Driver's responsibility

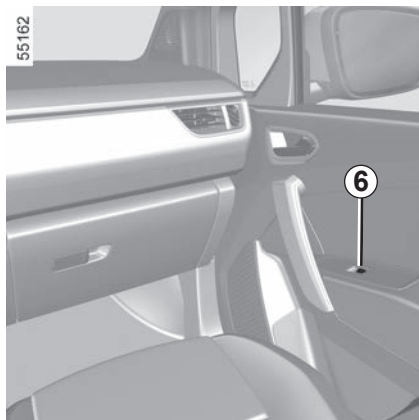
Never leave your vehicle with the card or key inside, with a child, adult who is not self-sufficient or a pet in the vehicle, even for a short while.

They may pose a risk to themselves or to others by starting the engine or activating equipment (such as the gear lever or electric windows).

If any part of the body becomes trapped, reverse the direction of the window immediately by pressing the relevant switch.

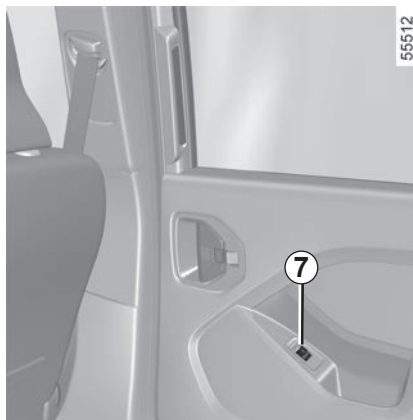
**Risk of serious injury.**

## ELECTRIC WINDOWS (2/3)



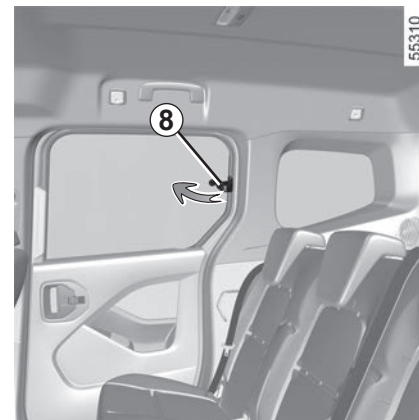
### From the front passenger seat

Press switch **6**.



### From the rear seats

With the doors closed, press switch **7**.

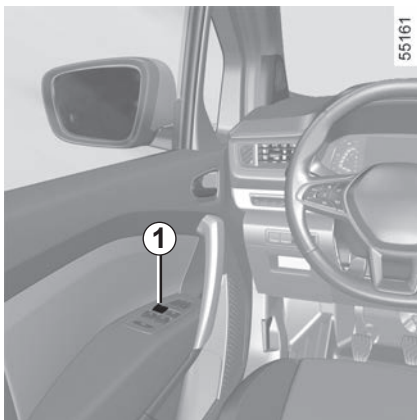


### Half-opening window

To half-open the window, turn handle **8** in the direction of the arrow, then lock it by pushing the handle. When closing it, check that it is properly locked.

Avoid resting any objects against a half-open window: there is a risk that the electric window winder could be damaged.

## ELECTRIC WINDOWS (3/3)



### One-touch electric window

The one-touch mode works in addition to the operation of the electric windows described previously.

#### It is fitted to the driver's window.

Briefly press or pull the switch **1** as far as it will go: the window will be fully raised or lowered.

Pressing the switch again while the window is moving will stop its movement.

**Note:** if the window detects resistance when closing (e.g. tree branch etc.), it stops and then lowers again by a few centimetres.

## Operating faults

In case of a fault when closing a window, the system reverts to normal mode: pull the switch concerned up as often as necessary to fully close the window (the window will close gradually), hold the switch (still on the closing side) for one second then lower and raise the window fully to reinitialise the system.

If necessary, contact an approved Dealer.

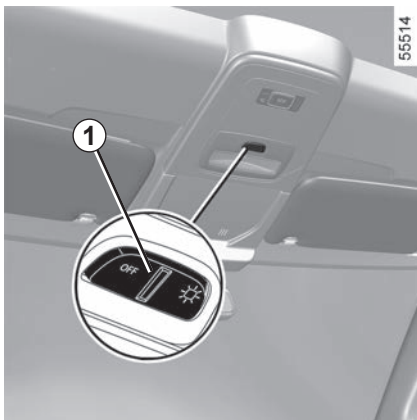


When closing the windows, ensure that no part of the body (arm, hand, etc.) is protruding from the vehicle.

**Risk of serious injury.**



## INTERIOR LIGHTING (1/2)



### Courtesy light

Pressing switch **1** provides:

- continuous lighting;
- or temporary lighting by opening one of the front doors, or by opening one of the four doors, depending on the vehicle. The light only goes out when the doors are correctly closed;
- no lighting.



### Map reading lights

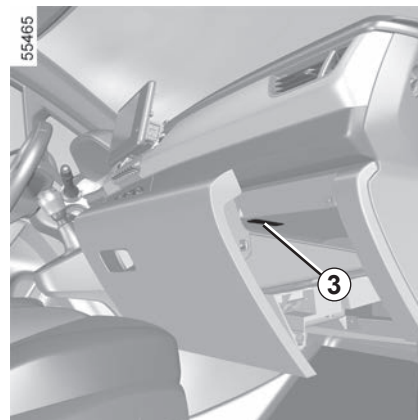
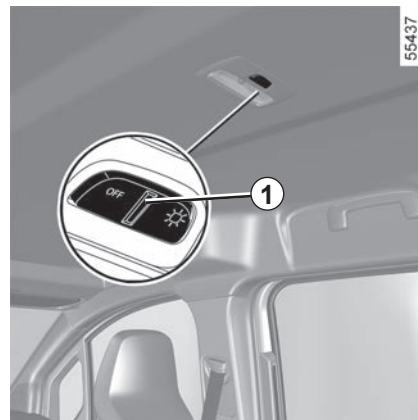
(depending on vehicle)

Pressing switch **2** provides:

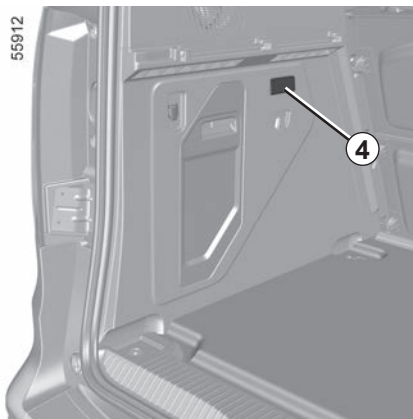
- continuous lighting;
- or temporary lighting by opening one of the front doors, or by opening one of the four doors, depending on the vehicle. The light only goes out when the doors are correctly closed;
- no lighting.

### Glovebox light **3**

Light **3** comes on when the cover is opened.



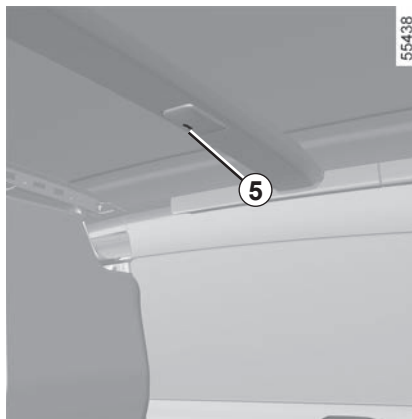
## INTERIOR LIGHTING (2/2)



### Boot light 4

Light **4** comes on when the luggage compartment is opened.

When the doors or luggage compartment are unlocked and opened the courtesy and footwell lights come on temporarily.



### Rear light

Turning the switch **5** gives you:

- continuous lighting;
- or temporary lighting, controlled by opening one of the front doors, or by opening one of the four doors, depending on the vehicle. The light only goes out when the doors are correctly closed;
- or else the light definitively turned off.

## Special features

Depending on the vehicle, remote unlocking of the doors triggers timed lighting of the passenger compartment. If one of the front or rear doors is opened, the period for which the light is switched on will start again.

Then the courtesy light and the luggage compartment light dim and go out.

The lighting timer will cut out for various reasons:

- if a door has been open for 15 minutes;
- if all the doors have been closed for 15 seconds or 5 minutes, depending on the vehicle;
- when the ignition is switched on.

# SUN VISOR, MIRRORS, GRAB HANDLE



## Front sun visor

Lower sun visor **2**.

## Courtesy mirrors

(depending on the vehicle)

Lift the cover **1**.

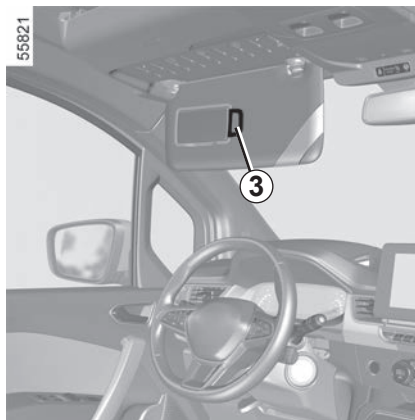
## Sun visor storage **3**

This can be used for storing motorway tickets, cards, etc.



When driving, ensure the courtesy mirror cover is closed.

**Risk of injury.**



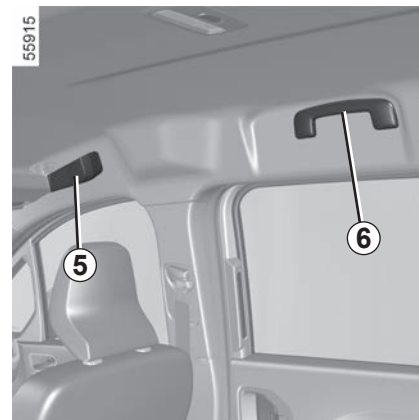
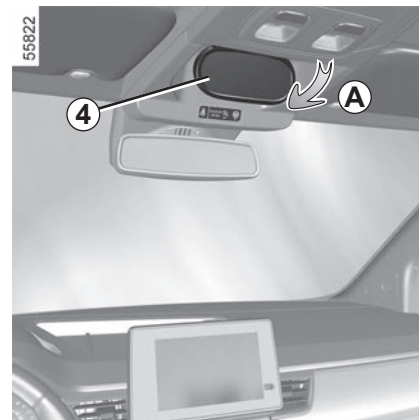
## Child minder mirror **4**

(depending on the vehicle)

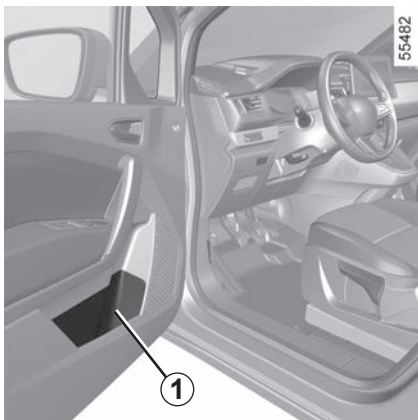
The child minder mirror allows you to keep an eye on your child in the back seat. Pull downwards (movement **A**) to set it to its operating position.

## Front **5** and rear **6** grab handles

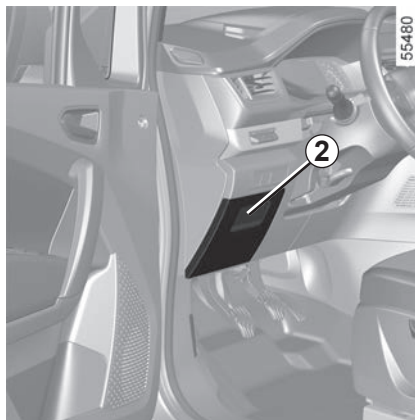
These can be used for support by passengers while the vehicle is moving. Do not use them for getting into or out of the vehicle.



## PASSENGER COMPARTMENT STORAGE, FITTINGS (1/7)



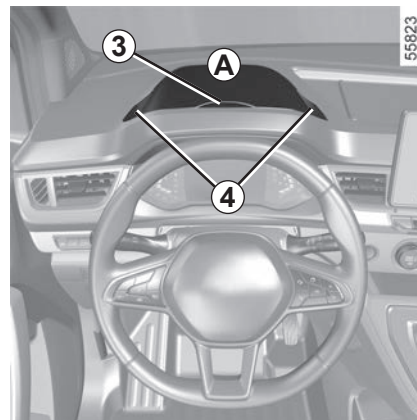
**Front door storage pockets 1**



**Open storage compartment 2**



Nothing should be placed on the floor area in front of the driver as such objects may slide under the pedal during braking manoeuvres, thus obstructing its use.



**Driver's dashboard upper storage compartment A**

Press the button 3, place your hand in areas 4 and lift to open the storage compartment A.

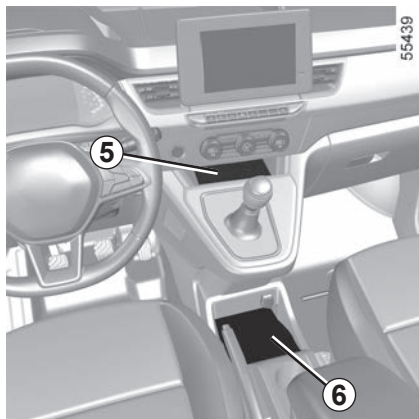
It is recommended that you open the storage compartment only when the vehicle is stationary.



Check that the dashboard storage compartment A is correctly closed before driving the vehicle.

**Risk of the driver's field of vision being obstructed if it inadvertently opens.**

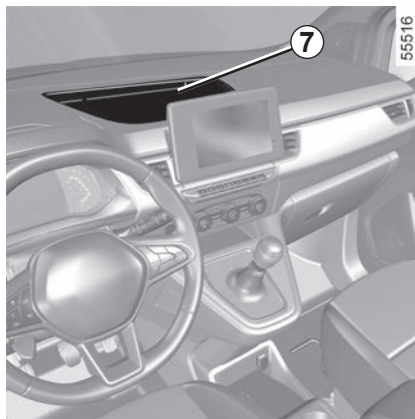
## PASSENGER COMPARTMENT STORAGE, FITTINGS (2/7)



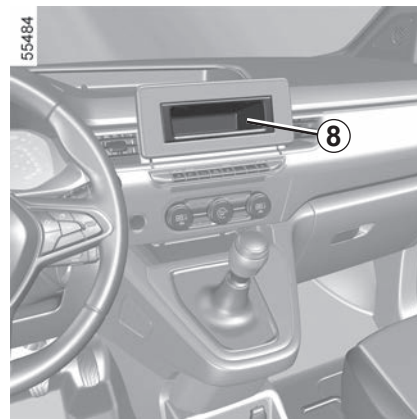
**Storage compartment 5**

### **Centre console storage compartment/Wireless charger - Induction charging 6**

For more information on the induction charging zone, please refer to the multimedia instructions.



**Dashboard storage 7**

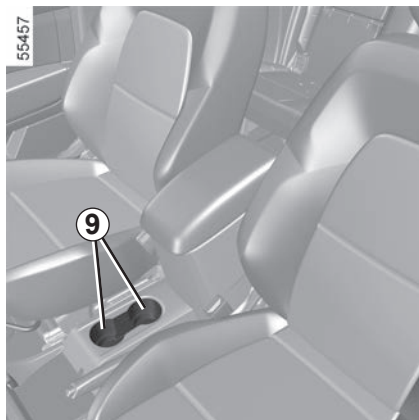


**Storage compartment 8**



Ensure that no hard, heavy or pointed objects are placed in the “open” storage compartments in such a way that they may fall onto passengers during sudden turning, braking or in the event of an accident.

## PASSENGER COMPARTMENT STORAGE, FITTINGS (3/7)



### Cup holders 9

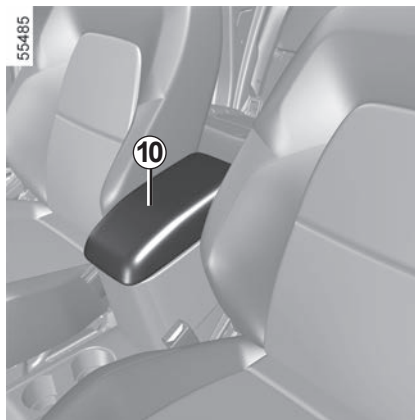
Depending on the vehicle, the cup holder may be equipped with retaining hooks to keep the cup in place.

This can be used to store a mobile ash-tray, drink cans, etc.



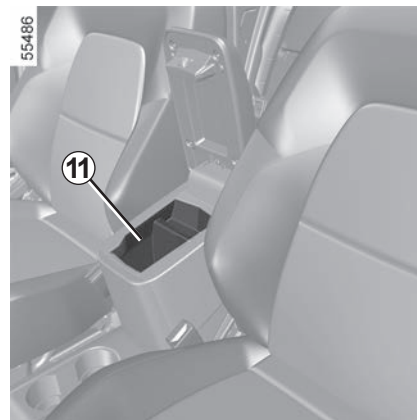
When turning corners, accelerating or braking, ensure that the receptacle being held by the cup holder is not dislodged.

**There is a risk of injury if hot liquid escapes.**

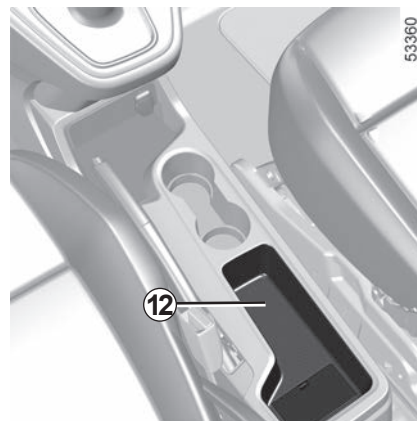


### Centre armrest storage compartment 11

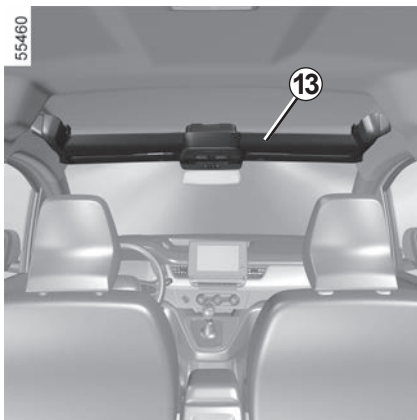
Lift the armrest cover 10.



### Centre console storage compartment 12



## PASSENGER COMPARTMENT STORAGE, FITTINGS (4/7)



### Front upper cab storage compartment 13

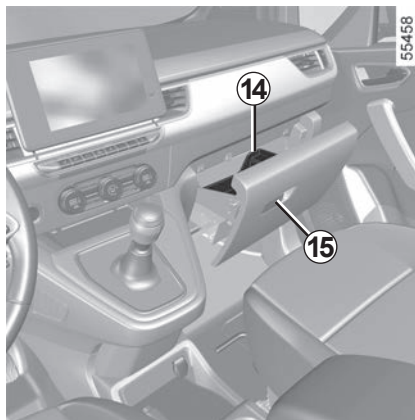
Do not use it for getting into or out of the vehicle and do not hang from it.

Do not place wet items or containers with liquid in them in the upper cab storage compartment.



Do not hang any heavy and/or sharp objects which may fall whilst driving.

**Risk of injury.**



### Passenger storage drawer 14

If fitted on the vehicle, pull paddle 15 to open.

### Glovebox

If fitted on the vehicle, pull paddle 16 to open.

### Passenger storage compartment 17



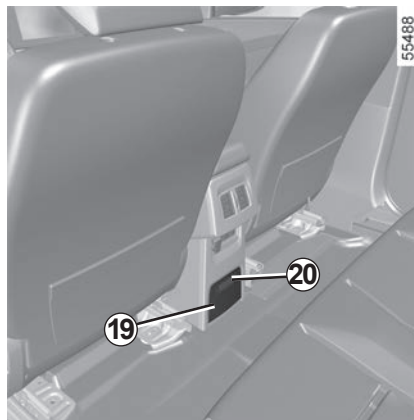


## PASSENGER COMPARTMENT STORAGE, FITTINGS (5/7)



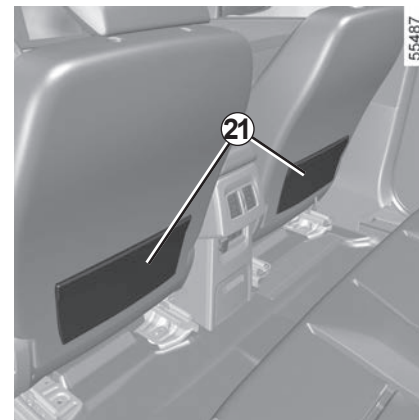
### Sliding side door storage compartment 18

Items stored in the sliding side door storage compartments should not stick out from the storage compartment, so as not to hamper the sliding of the door.



### Storage compartment 19

Pass a hand in location 20 and pull to open the storage compartment 19.

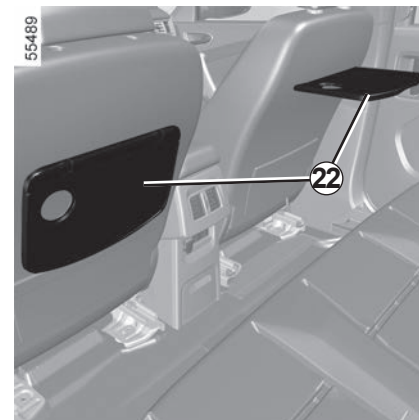


### Rear seat storage pockets 21

#### Rear parcel shelves 22

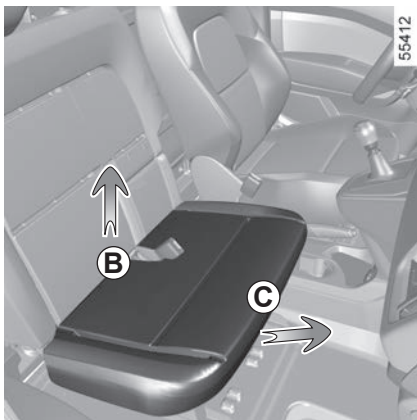
Raise them to their horizontal position.

**Note:** the maximum permissible load on the parcel shelf is 5 kg, evenly distributed.





## PASSENGER COMPARTMENT STORAGE, FITTINGS (6/7)

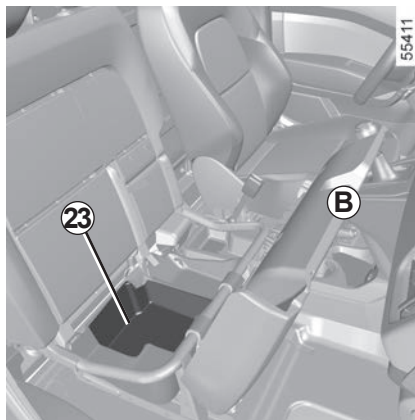


### Storage compartment 23 under front passenger seat (for vehicles fitted with front bench seat for two)

To get to it:

- pull the front of the bench seat cushion **C** as far as the stop;
- then, lift the rear section **B** of the cushion and pivot the seat base.

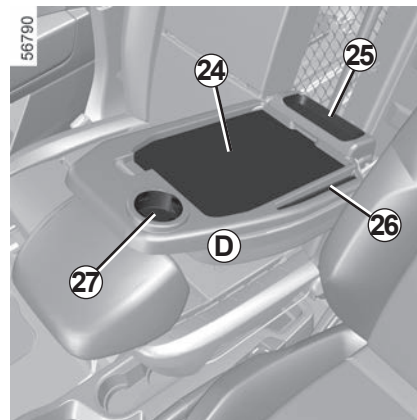
Maximum load weight allowed in the storage area **23**: 10 kg.



To replace the seat, proceed in reverse:

- lift the bench seat cushion so as to position the rear section **B** of the cushion under the seatback;
- push down on the front of the cushion **C** so as to lock the seat base.

Check that the bonnet is correctly locked.



### Parcel shelf 24, storage area 25, pen holder 26 and cup holder 27 (depending on the vehicle)

Lower the seatback **D** ➔ 1.34.

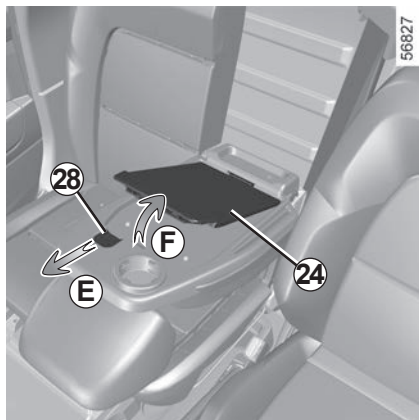
Depending on the vehicle, the cup holder may be equipped with retaining hooks to keep the cup in place. This can be used for storing a mobile ash-tray, cup holder, etc.



When turning corners, accelerating or braking, ensure that the receptacle being held by the cup holder is not dislodged.

**There is a risk of injury if hot liquid escapes.**

## PASSENGER COMPARTMENT STORAGE, FITTINGS (7/7)

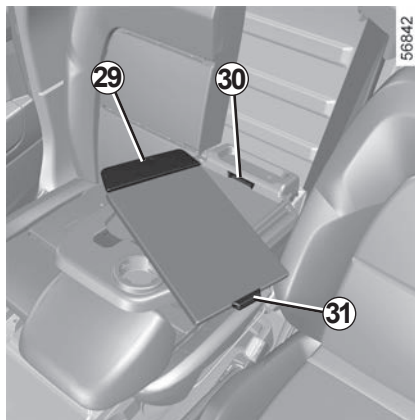


### Tray 24

To remove the parcel shelf, press control **28** (movement **E**) and raise the parcel shelf (movement **F**).

You can attach documents using the clamp **29**.

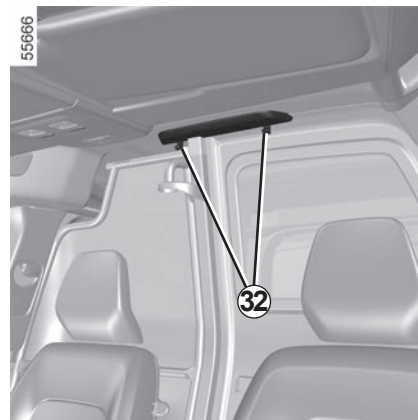
You can attach sticky notes to the dedicated area on the clamp **29**.



To refit the parcel shelf:

- insert the end **31** of the parcel shelf into the slot **30**;
- press the **28** control (movement **E**) and place the parcel shelf in the storage position;
- release the **28** control.

**Note:** make sure that you refit the parcel shelf properly and remove any items from the cup holder before raising the centre seatback. Check that the back of the centre seat is properly locked.



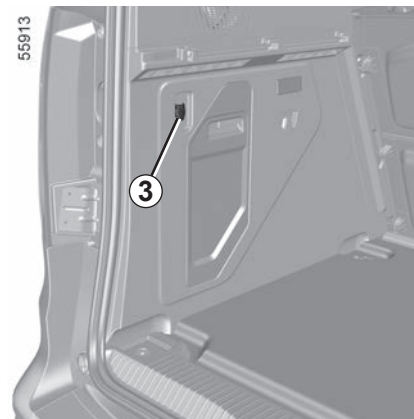
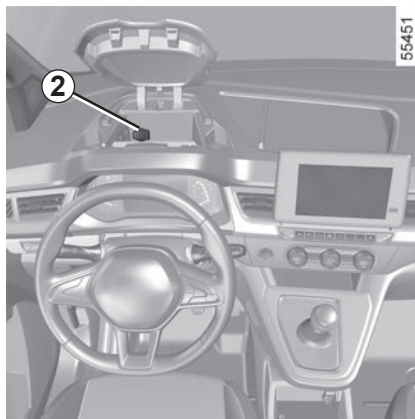
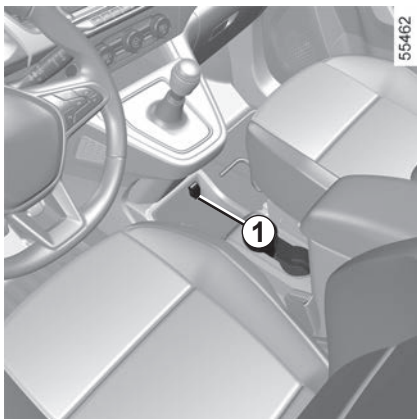
### Clothes hooks 32

Depending on the vehicle, the hooks may be located on the ceiling behind the seats.

For safety reasons, these hooks may only be used to hang clothes.

**Note:** the maximum permitted load is 4 kg.

## ACCESSORIES SOCKET



### Accessories sockets 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5

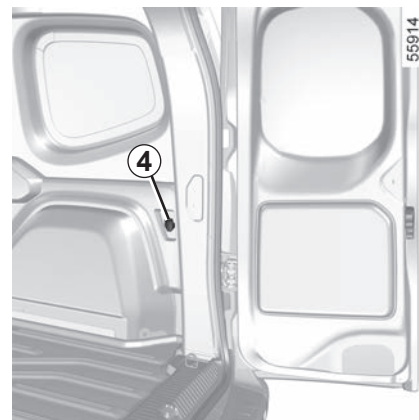
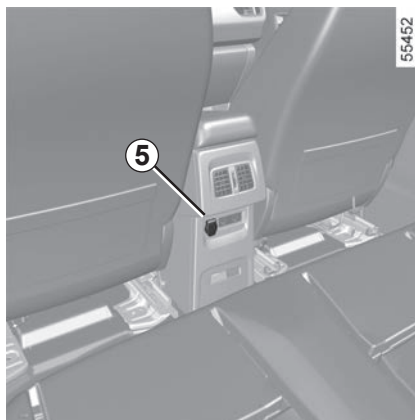
Depending on the vehicle, they are provided to connect accessories approved by our Technical Department.



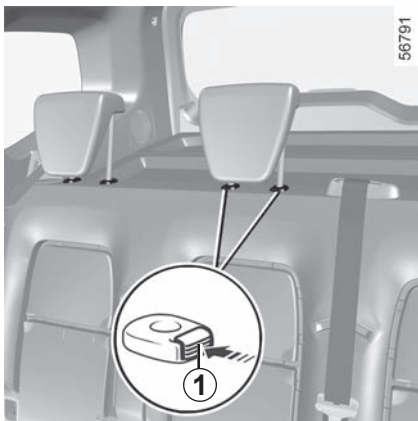
Connect accessories with a maximum power of 120 watts (12 V) only.

When several accessory sockets are used at the same time, the total power of the connected accessories must not exceed 180 watts.

**Fire hazard.**



# REAR HEAD RESTS



## To raise it

Slide it to the required height.

## To lower it

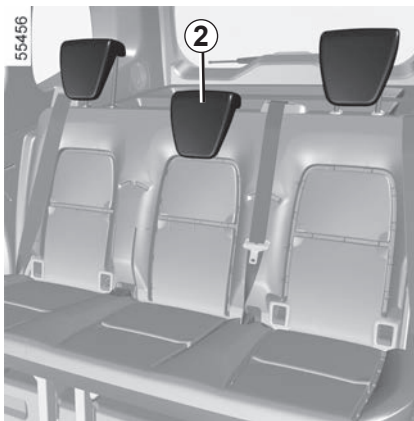
Pull it towards you and slide it to the required height.

## To remove it

Raise the headrest then press tabs **1** to release it.

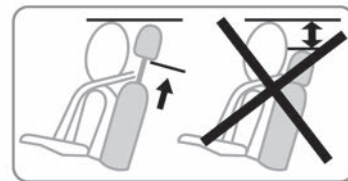
## To refit it

Press tab **1** and insert the rods into the holes, with the notches facing forwards.



## Storage position 2

Pull it towards you and lower it completely.

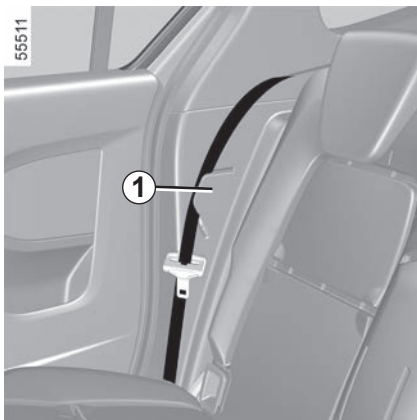


**When the headrest is set at the lowest position, this is for storage only.** It should not be in this position when a seat is occupied.



The headrest is a safety component; check that it is fitted and in the correct position. The top of the headrest should be as close as possible to the top of the head.

## REAR BENCH SEAT: functions (1/2)

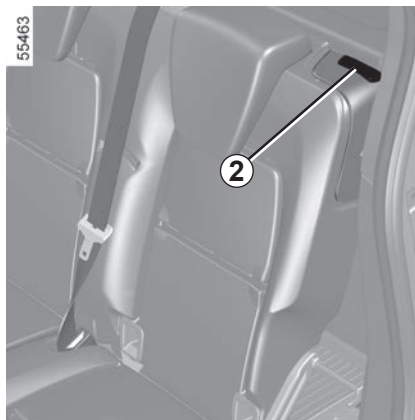


### To fold down the seatback

Before moving the bench seat, ensure that the front seats are pushed forward sufficiently, that no objects are present on the floor and that nothing will obstruct the manoeuvre.

Place the seat belt in the hook **1** to prevent it from being damaged and lower the rear headrests to the storage position.

Pull lever **2** of the seatback you wish to fold down (on the right or left-hand side of the bench seat), and bring the seatback down.



### To raise the seatback

Before raising the seatback, ensure that no objects (water bottle, tool box, etc.) will prevent it from locking properly and that the seat belt is correctly placed in its hook.

Raise the seatback and click it into position. Check that it is correctly locked.



Check that the rear seat belts are positioned and operating correctly each time the rear bench seat is moved.



Maximum load weight ➔ 3.39 .



**When refitting the seat-back,** make sure it is correctly locked in place.

**If seat covers are fitted,** make sure these do not prevent the seatback latch from locking in. Make sure that the seat belts are positioned correctly. Reposition the headrests.

## REAR BENCH SEAT: functions (2/2)

30913



### Use restriction

It is forbidden to drive with a seatback or a front seat folded down when there is a passenger occupying a rear seat.

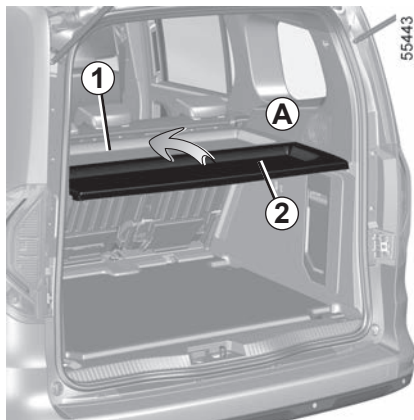


For safety reasons, carry out any adjustments when the vehicle is not being driven.



When moving the rear seats, ensure that nothing obstructs the anchorage points (passenger's arm or leg, a pet, gravel, cloth, toys, etc.).

## REAR PARCEL SHELF

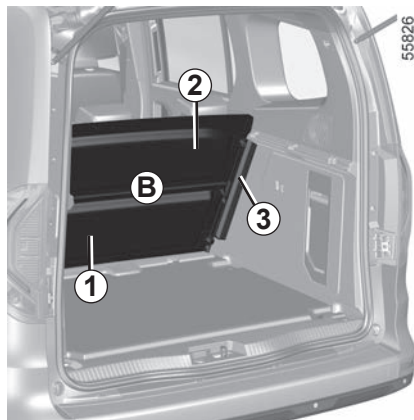


The shelf is made up of two rigid sections.

There are two possible positions:

- top position **A**;

In this case, you can fold section **2** onto section **1** by lifting it as shown by the arrow.



- Storage position **B**.

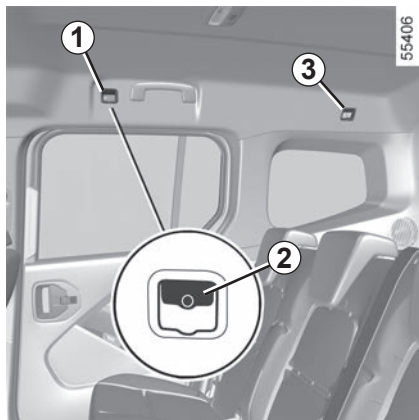
To store the parcel shelf, slide it into the runner **3** behind the rear bench seat-back.



Do not place any heavy or hard object on the parcel shelf. These may pose a risk to the vehicle occupants if the driver has to brake suddenly or if the vehicle is involved in an accident.



# LUGGAGE NET



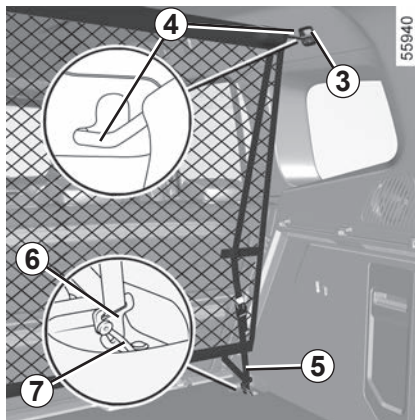
On equipped vehicles, the luggage net can be used, when transporting animals or luggage, to separate them from the passenger section.

It is fitted behind the rear bench seat or behind the driver and front passenger seats.



The luggage net must not be used to restrain or hold objects.

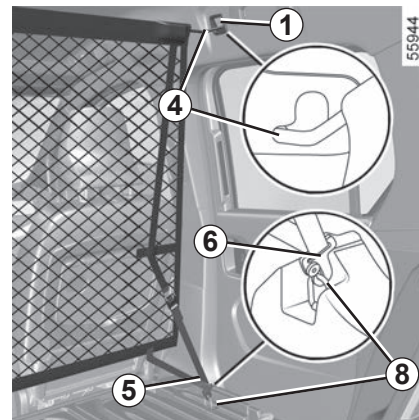
**Risk of injury.**



## Fitting the luggage net behind the rear seats

Inside the vehicle on each side:

- insert the upper rod of the net **4** into the anchoring points **3**;
- attach the two hooks **6** of the straps **5** from the net onto the anchoring points **7**;
- adjust the net strap **5** so that it is taut.



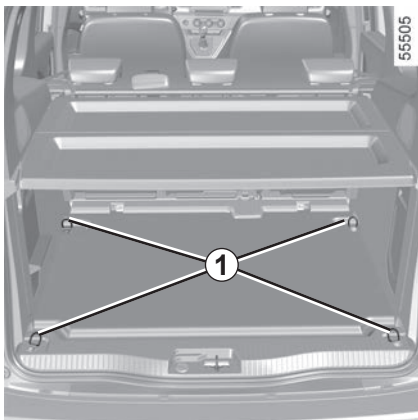
## Fitting the luggage net behind the front seats

Inside the vehicle on each side:

- lift the covers **2** to access the anchoring points **1** and remove the anchoring point covers **8**;
- insert the upper rod of the net **4** into the anchoring points **1**;
- attach the two hooks **6** for the net straps **5** to the anchoring points **8**;
- adjust the net strap **5** so that it is taut.

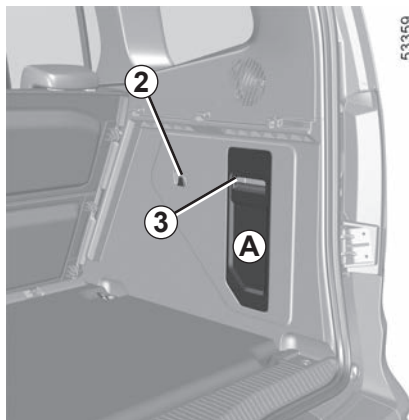


# LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT STORAGE SPACE AND FITTINGS



## Anchorage points

Attachment points **1**.



## Bag hooks **2**

Maximum weight per hook: 5 kg.

## Storage compartment **A**

Unclip the access flap **3**.

## TRANSPORTING OBJECTS IN THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT (1/4)

Always position the objects transported so that the largest surface is against:

- the rear bench seatback, for normal loading (example **A**);

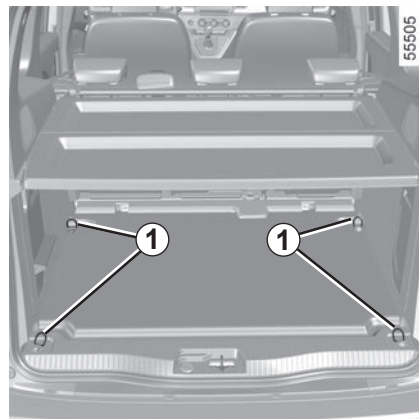


- the front seatbacks with the rear seatbacks folded down, as is the case for maximum loads (example **B**).

**Maximum weight:** 280 kg evenly distributed on the rear bench seatback and in the luggage compartment.

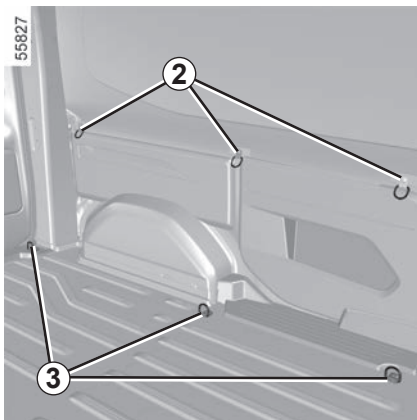


If you have to place objects on the folded seatback, it is necessary that you lower the headrests before folding the seatback so that it can be folded as flat as possible against the seat.



Always position the heaviest items directly on the floor. Use the lashing points **1** on the boot floor, if these are fitted to the vehicle. The luggage should be loaded in such a way that no items will be thrown forward and strike the occupants if the driver has to brake suddenly. Fasten the rear seat belts, even if the seats are not occupied.

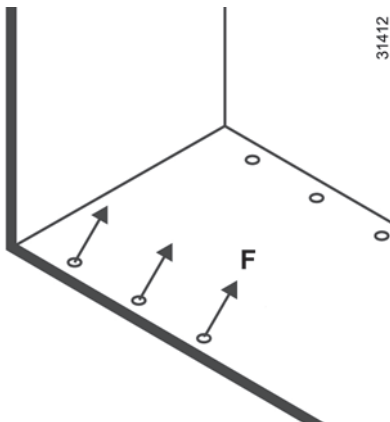
## TRANSPORTING OBJECTS IN THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT (2/4)



### Transporting objects in the rear load area

Depending on the vehicle, rotating rings **2** and **3** can be used to prevent transported objects from moving. The number of rings and their locations may vary depending on the vehicle.

The sole purpose of these rings **2** is to prevent transported objects from moving. The objects must be secured to the mounting rings **3** on the vehicle floor beforehand.



### Special note for van version

**Rotary rings 3:**  
F max: 400 daN



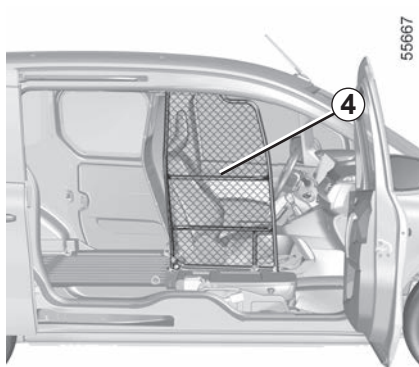
For your safety, check that all the vehicle's doors are properly closed before starting the engine.



While driving with the right rear hinged door open, always secure transported loads. The left-hand door, which remains shut, should not be used to hold transported loads in place. Using the right rear hinged door open while driving should only be done in exceptional cases. In any event, please refer to local legislation.

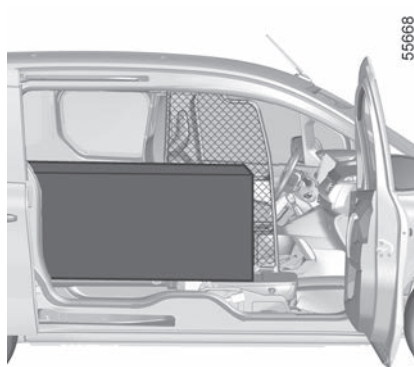
**Risk of loads falling on the road surface.**

## TRANSPORTING OBJECTS IN THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT (3/4)

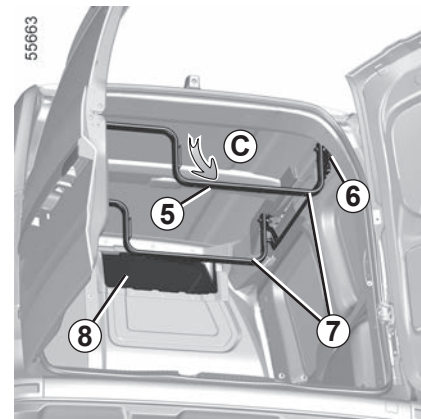


### “Open Sesame” version

Depending on the width and length of objects carried in the rear load area, use the front passenger door and sliding side door openings.



To do this, pivot the partition 4. Please observe the procedure when pivoting the partition. ➔ 1.41.



### Recess 8 and roof rack 7 (depending on the vehicle)

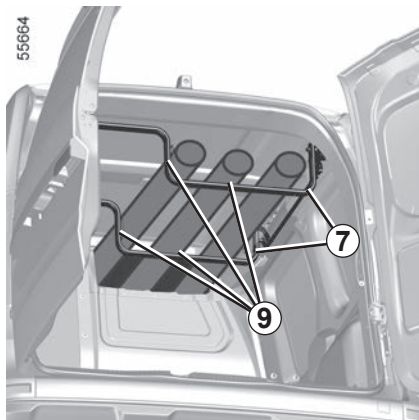
Depending on the length of the objects being transported in the rear load area, you can use the recess 8 or the roof rack 7.

#### Position for use

With the roof rack in the storage position, pull the lever 6 downwards to unlock the roof rack, then hold the roof rack bar 5 and pull it towards you until it locks (movement C).

The roof rack locks automatically. Check that the bonnet is correctly locked.

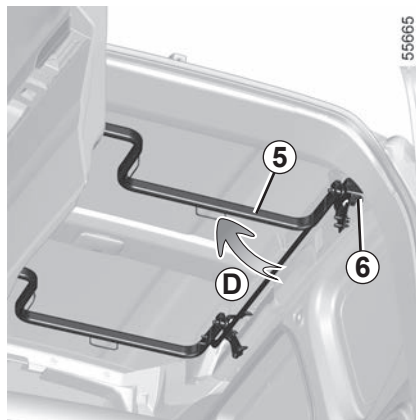
## TRANSPORTING OBJECTS IN THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT (4/4)



Always secure the transported loads using the rings **9**.

Make sure that you abide by the maximum authorised length and load weight.

Prepare any protections that may be required and adapt your driving to minimise the movement of the transported load and to avoid damaging the vehicle or the load.



### Storage position

With the roof rack in the operating position, pull the handle **6** downwards to unlock the roof rack, hold the roof rack bar **5** and push it upwards until it locks (movement **D**).

The roof rack locks automatically. Check that the bonnet is correctly locked.

Maximum permissible load weight on roof rack **7**: 30 kg evenly distributed.

Maximum load length: 2 metres.

When handling the roof rack, ensure that nobody is near the moving parts.

## TRANSPORTING OBJECTS towbar

**Permissible nose weight, maximum permissible towing weight braked and unbraked:** ➔ 6.10.

### **Choice and fitting of towing equipment**

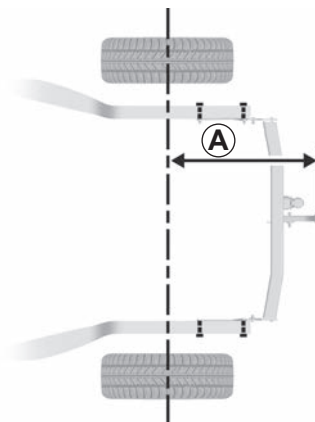
Maximum weight of towing equipment:

- 7.2 kg on a vehicle with towing pre-equipment;
- 28.5 kg on a vehicle without towing pre-equipment.

For fitting and conditions of use, refer to the equipment's fitting instructions.

Please keep these instructions with the rest of the vehicle documentation.

24981



**Maximum dimension A:  
935 mm**

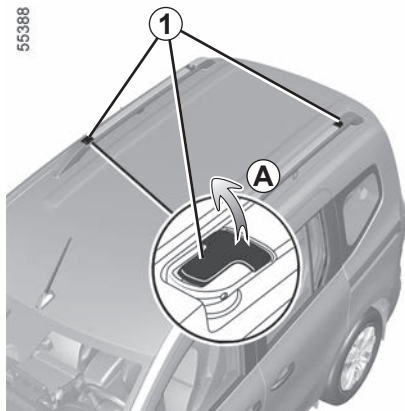
24982



Any towing device must not obstruct any lighting component or the number plate when not in use. Towing devices (ball, hook, etc.) which can be removed without tools and retractable objects must be removed or repositioned when they are not in use.

In all cases, you must comply with the regulations of the particular country you are in.

## MODULAR ROOF BARS (1/2)



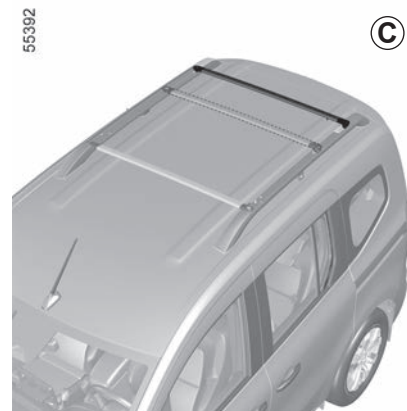
Before transporting a load on the modular roof bars, they must be set to their operating position:

- Unclip the levers **1** (movement **A**);
- Raise the bars sufficiently to allow them to be pivoted (figure **B**);
- Lock the bars in the transverse position by clipping the levers **1** (figure **C**);
- Check that they are correctly locked.



When handling, ensure that the bars do not touch the vehicle roof as they may scratch the roof.

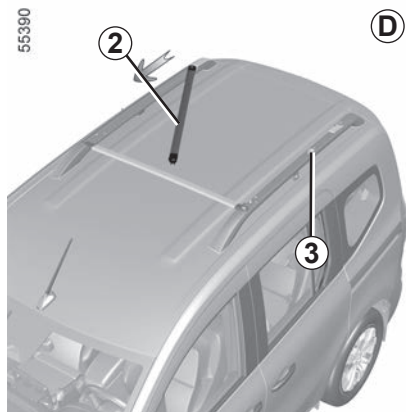
It is strictly forbidden to place the modular roof bars in the transverse position (carrying position) when entering a roller-type car wash.



Make sure that the two roof bars are correctly positioned and locked.

Maximum weight on each roof bar:  
40 kg evenly distributed (80 kg over two roof bars).

## MODULAR ROOF BARS (2/2)

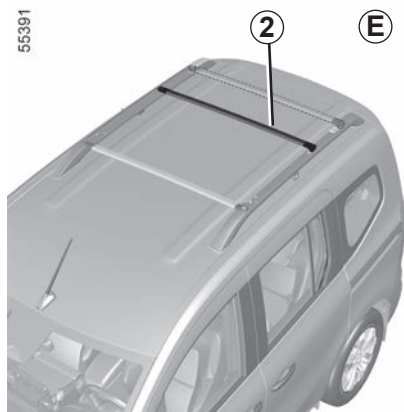


### To slide the bar

Roof bar **2** can be slid to move it closer to or further from the other bar (figure **D**).

There are two positions: centre or rear.

With the bar unlocked, pull it towards the front or the rear of the vehicle to slide it in rail **3**.



Once you have chosen the position, pivot the bar and lock it in the transverse position (figure **E**).

Check that both bars are correctly locked in position.

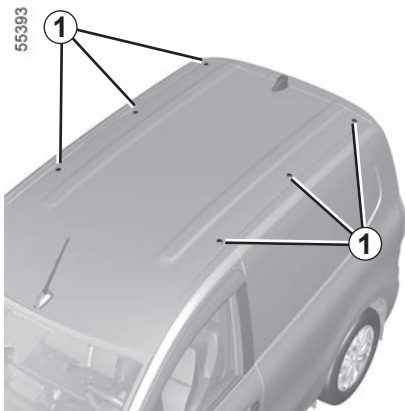
When not using the bars in transverse position, refit the bars in longitudinal position in order to optimise fuel consumption and avoid air noise.



Check that the objects and/or accessories (bike rack, roof box, etc.) fitted to the roof bars are correctly positioned, evenly distributed and secured.



## ROOF ANCHORAGE POINTS



Unscrew the blanking covers **1** in order to access the mounting points.

For information on the range of equipment adapted to your vehicle, we advise you to consult an approved Dealer.

Refer to the fitting instructions for information on how to fit roof bars and conditions of use.

Please keep these instructions with the rest of the vehicle documentation.

**Maximum permissible load on roof:** 100 kg (including carrying devices).



If original roof bars, approved by our Technical Department, are supplied with screws, only use these screws for attaching the roof bars to the vehicle.

## User precautions

### Handling the tailgate

Before operating the tailgate, check the objects and/or accessories (bike rack, roof box, etc.) fitted on the roof bars: these must be correctly positioned and secured, and must not prevent the tailgate from operating correctly.

# ***Section 4: Maintenance***

Bonnet . . . . .	4.2
Engine oil level: general information . . . . .	4.4
Engine oil level: topping up, filling . . . . .	4.5
Oil change . . . . .	4.6
Levels . . . . .	4.7
engine coolant . . . . .	4.7
brake fluid . . . . .	4.8
windscreen washer reservoir . . . . .	4.9
Filters . . . . .	4.9
Tyre pressure . . . . .	4.10
Battery . . . . .	4.12
Bodywork maintenance . . . . .	4.14
Interior trim maintenance . . . . .	4.17

## BONNET (1/2)



To open the bonnet, open a door and pull the **1** handle, located on the left-hand side of the dashboard.

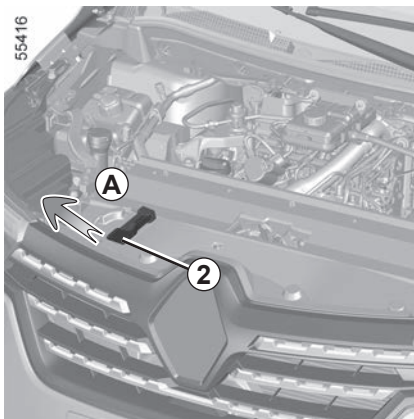


Before carrying out any action in the engine compartment, you must switch off the ignition. ➔ 2.4

➔ 2.5.



Do not press down on the bonnet: there is a risk that the bonnet may accidentally close.



### Opening the bonnet

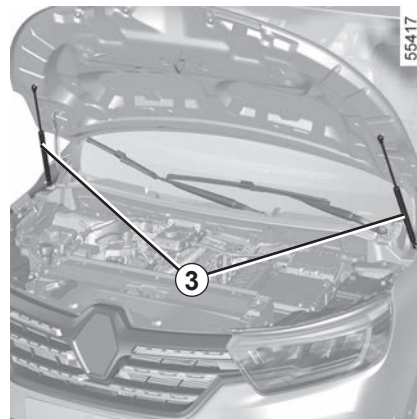
To unlock, gently lift the bonnet and push tab **2** in the direction of arrow **A** to release the bonnet.

Lift the bonnet, guiding it up, and it will rest in position with the help of two struts **3**.




When working in the engine compartment, ensure that the windscreen wiper stalk is in the park position.

**Risk of injury.**



Please note when working close to the engine that it may be hot. The engine cooling fan may also start



at any moment. The  label in the engine compartment reminds you of this.

**Risk of injury.**

## BONNET (2/2)

### Closing the bonnet

Before closing the bonnet, make sure that nothing has been left in the engine compartment.

To close it again, hold the bonnet in the middle and lower it to 25 cm above the closed position, then release it. Ensure that the bonnet is properly closed. If it does not lock itself under its own weight, gently push it until it fully locks.



Ensure that the bonnet is properly locked. Check that nothing is preventing the catch from locking (gravel, cloth, etc.).



After any procedure in the engine compartment, make sure that you do not forget anything (cloth, tools, etc.). These may damage the engine or cause a fire.



In the event of even a slight impact involving the radiator grille or bonnet, have the bonnet lock checked by an approved dealer as soon as possible.

## ENGINE OIL LEVEL: general information

It is normal for an engine to use oil for lubrication and cooling of moving parts and it is normal to top up the level between oil changes.

However, contact your approved Dealer if more than 0.5 litres is being consumed every 600 miles (1,000 km) after the running in period.

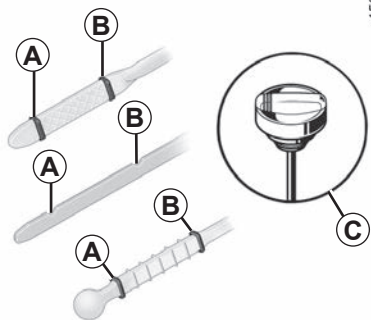
**Oil change frequency: check the oil level from time to time and certainly before any long journey to avoid the risk of damaging your engine.**

### Reading the oil level

The oil level should be read with the vehicle on level ground, after the engine has been switched off for some time.

**The dipstick must be used to read the exact oil level and make sure that the maximum level has not been exceeded (risk of engine damage).**

The instrument panel display only alerts the driver when the oil level is at its minimum.



- Remove the dipstick and wipe with a clean, lint-free cloth;
- push the dipstick in as far as it will go (for vehicles equipped with a cap-type dipstick **C**, screw the cap in as far as it will go);
- take out the dipstick again;
- read the level: it should never fall below the “mini” mark **A** and never exceed the “maxi” **B** mark.

Once the operation has been completed, ensure that the dipstick is pushed in as far as it will go or that the “cap-type dipstick” is completely screwed in.



#### Adding engine oil

Use a funnel or protect the filling neck area to avoid engine oil escaping on to a hot part of the engine compartment or a sensitive part (e.g. electrical components).

**Fire hazard.**



#### Exceeding the maximum engine oil level

Under no circumstances should maximum filling level **B** be exceeded: this could damage the engine and the anti-pollution system.

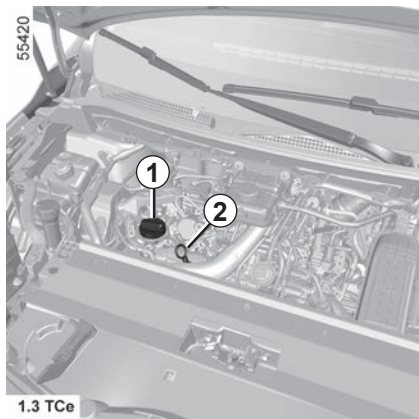
If the oil level exceeds the maximum level, **do not start your vehicle** and contact an approved Dealer.



Before carrying out any action in the engine compartment, you must switch off the ignition. ➡ 2.4 or

➡ 2.5.

## ENGINE OIL LEVEL: topping up, filling, oil change (1/2)



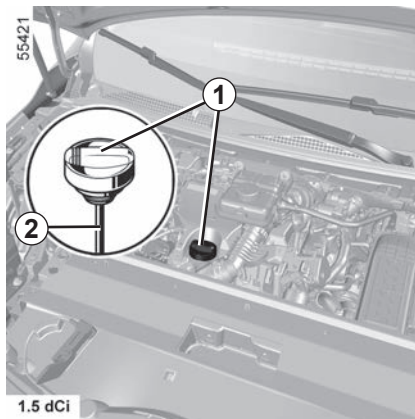
### Topping up/filling

The vehicle must be parked on level ground and the engine should be cold (for instance, before the engine is started up for the first time in the day).



Before carrying out any action in the engine compartment, you must switch off the ignition. ➔ 2.4 or

➔ 2.5.



- Unscrew cap **1**;
- top up the level (capacity between “mini” and “maxi” of the gauge **2** and between 0.9 to 2 litres according to the engine);
- wait for approximately 20 minutes to allow the oil to flow into the engine;
- check the level using the dipstick **2** (as described above).

Once the operation has been completed, ensure that the dipstick is pushed in as far as it will go or that the cap-type dipstick is completely screwed in.

Do not exceed the “**maxi**” level and do not forget to refit the cap **1** and the dipstick **2**.



### Adding engine oil

Use a funnel or protect the filling neck area to avoid engine oil escaping on to a hot part of the engine compartment or a sensitive part (e.g. electrical components).

**Fire hazard.**

# ENGINE OIL LEVEL: topping up, filling, oil change (2/2)

## Oil change

**Service interval:** refer to the Maintenance Service Booklet for your vehicle.

### Oil change capacity


Please refer to the maintenance document for your vehicle, or contact an authorised dealer. Always check the engine oil level using the dipstick, as explained previously (it should never fall below the minimum level, or be over the maximum level on the dipstick).

### Engine oil grade

Refer to the Maintenance Service Booklet for your vehicle.



Please note when working close to the engine that it may be hot. The engine cooling fan may also start

at any moment. The  label in the engine compartment reminds you of this.

**Risk of injury.**

Consult your approved dealer at once if you notice an abnormal or repeated drop in any of the fluid levels.



When working in the engine compartment, ensure that the windscreen wiper stalk is in the park position.

**Risk of injury.**



**Filling:** take care when topping up the oil that no oil drips onto engine components - risk of fire.

Remember to refit the cap securely as there is a risk of fire if oil splashes onto hot engine components.



### Exceeding the maximum engine oil level

Under no circumstances should the maximum filling level be exceeded: this could damage the engine and the emission control system.

If the oil level exceeds the maximum level, **do not start your vehicle** and contact an approved Dealer.



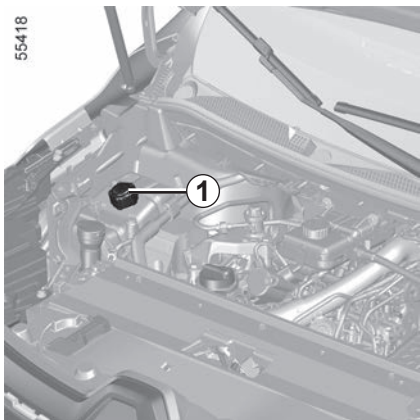
Never run the engine in an enclosed space as exhaust gases are poisonous.



**Engine oil change:** if you are changing the oil when the engine is hot, be careful not to scald yourself if the oil overflows.

## LEVELS, FILTERS (1/3)

55418



### Coolant

With the engine switched off and on level ground, the level **when cold** must be between the "MINI" and "MAXI" marks on coolant reservoir **1**.

Top this level up **when cold** before it reaches the MINI mark.

### Frequency of checking coolant level

**Check the coolant level regularly** (very severe damage is likely to be caused to the engine if it runs out of coolant).

If the level needs to be topped up, only use products approved by our Technical Department which ensure:

- protection against freezing;
- an anti-corrosion protection for the cooling system.



➡ 2.5.

Before carrying out any action in the engine compartment, you must switch off the ignition. ➡ 2.4 or

### Replacement interval

Refer to the Maintenance Document for your vehicle.



When working in the engine compartment, ensure that the windscreen wiper stalk is in the park position.

**Risk of injury.**

Consult your approved dealer at once if you notice an abnormal or repeated drop in any of the fluid levels.

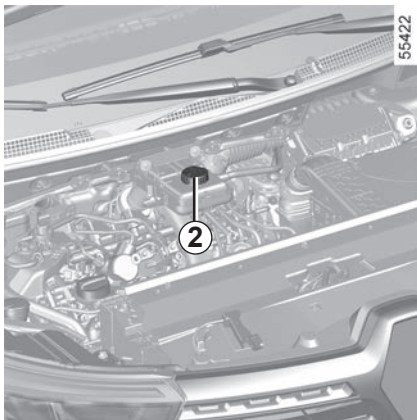


No operations should be carried out on the cooling circuit when the engine is hot.

**Risk of burns.**



## LEVELS, FILTERS (2/3)



### **Brake fluid**

This should be checked frequently, and immediately if you notice even the slightest loss in braking efficiency.

The level should be read with the engine switched off and on level ground.

### **Level 2**

It is normal for the level to drop as the brake shoes become worn, but it must never drop lower than the “**MINI**” warning line.

If you wish to check the disc and drum wear yourself, you should obtain the document explaining the checking procedure from the manufacturer’s network or website.

### **Topping up**

After any operation on the hydraulic circuit, a specialist must replace the brake fluid.

Only use fluids approved by our Technical Department (and taken from a sealed container).


### **Replacement interval**

Refer to the Maintenance Document for your vehicle.

Consult your approved dealer at once if you notice an abnormal or repeated drop in any of the fluid levels.

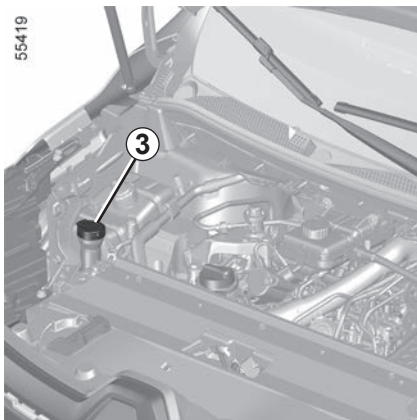


Please note when working close to the engine that it may be hot. The engine cooling fan may also start

at any moment. The  label in the engine compartment reminds you of this.

**Risk of injury.**

## LEVELS, FILTERS (3/3)



### Windscreen washer reservoir

#### Topping up

With the engine switched off, open the cap **3**. Fill until you can see the fluid, then replace the cap.

**Note:** check the reservoir level regularly and top up the liquid before taking a trip.

### Liquid

Windscreen washer fluid. In winter, use anti-freeze product. Use products recommended by an authorised dealer.

**Note:** do not use pure water (risk of damage to the priming pump, limescale building up on the pump and the jets).

### Jets

To adjust the height of the windscreen washer jets, please consult an authorised dealer.



➡ 2.5.

Before carrying out any action in the engine compartment, you must switch off the ignition. ➡ 2.4 or

### Filters

The replacement of filter components (air filter, cabin filter, diesel filter, etc.) is scheduled in the maintenance operations for your vehicle.

**Replacement intervals for filter elements:** refer to the Maintenance Document for your vehicle.




When working in the engine compartment, ensure that the windscreen wiper stalk is in the park position.

**Risk of injury.**

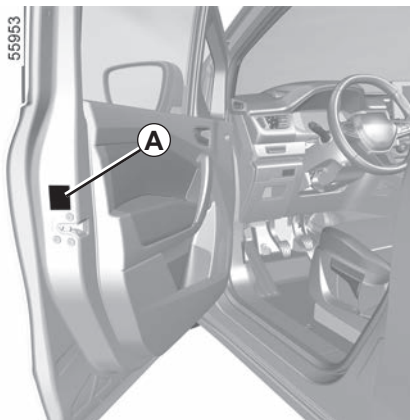


Please note when working close to the engine that it may be hot. The engine cooling fan may also start

at any moment. The  label in the engine compartment reminds you of this.

**Risk of injury.**

## TYRE PRESSURE (1/2)

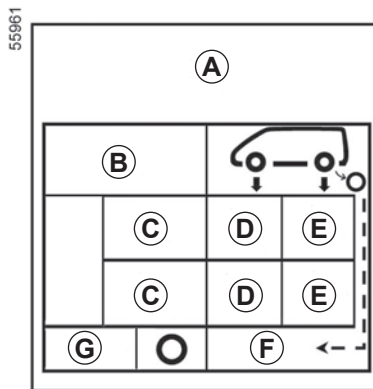


### Label A

Open the driver's door to read it.

Tyre pressures should be checked when the tyres are cold.

If the tyre pressures cannot be checked when the tyres are **cold**, increase the pressures from **0.2 to 0.3 bar** (or **3 PSI**).  
**Never deflate a hot tyre.**



**B:** dimension of the tyres fitted to the vehicle.

**C:** intended driving speed.


**D:** front tyre pressure.

**E:** rear tyre pressure.

**F:** tyre pressure for the emergency spare wheel.

**G:** emergency spare wheel dimensions.

### Vehicle fitted with a tyre pressure loss warning system

In the event of under-inflation (punctures, under-inflation etc.), the  warning light appears on the instrument panel. ➔ 2.31 ➔ 2.37.

## TYRE PRESSURE (2/2)



**Vehicles used fully laden (Maximum Permissible All-up Weight) and towing a trailer**

The maximum speed must be limited to **62 mph (100 km/h)** and the tyre pressure increased by **0.2 bar (3 psi)** ➔ 6.10.

**Risk of tyre blowouts.**

**Tyre safety and chain fitting:** for information on servicing conditions and, depending on the vehicle version, the use of chains. ➔ 5.13.



For your safety, please respect the speed limit.

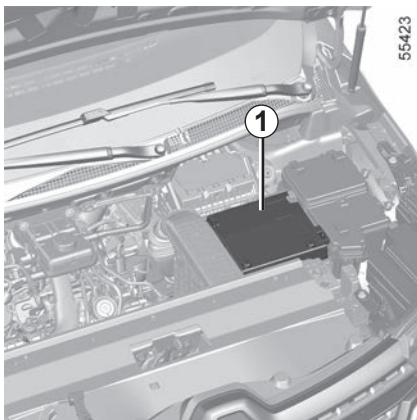
When they need to be replaced, only tyres of the same make, size, type and profile should be used on a single axle.

**They must: either have a load capacity and speed rating at least equal to those of the original tyres, or conform to those recommended by an authorised dealer.**

Failure to heed these instructions could endanger your safety and affect your vehicle's roadworthiness.

**Risk of loss of control of the vehicle.**

## BATTERY (1/2)



Battery **1** does not require any maintenance. **You should not open it or add any fluid.**



Handle the battery with care as it contains sulphuric acid which must not come into contact with the eyes or skin. If it does, wash the affected area with plenty of cold water. If necessary, consult a doctor.

Ensure that naked flames, red hot objects and sparks do not come into contact with the battery as there is a risk of explosion.

Depending on the vehicle, a system continuously checks the battery charge status. If this decreases, the “Battery Now In Standby Mode” message appears on the instrument panel followed by “Battery Low Start Engine”. In this case, start the engine and the message on the instrument panel will disappear.

**Note:** the message “Battery Now In Standby Mode” may be displayed after 5 to 30 minutes of vehicle use with the engine stopped to warn the user that power consuming functions (interior lighting, radio, navigation, ventilation, accessories power supply, etc.) may be automatically cut off.

The charge status of your battery can decrease especially if you use your vehicle:


- for short journeys;
- for driving in town;
- when the temperature drops;
- after extended use of energy-consuming devices (radio, etc.) with the engine switched off.



Before carrying out any action in the engine compartment, you must switch off the ignition. ➔ 2.4

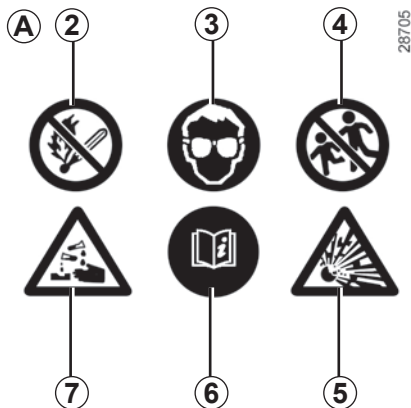
➔ 2.5.



Please note when working close to the engine that it may be hot. In addition, the engine cooling fan may start at any moment. The  warning light in the engine compartment reminds you of this.

**Risk of injury.**

## BATTERY (2/2)



### Label A

Observe the indications on the battery:

- **2** naked flames and smoking are forbidden;
- **3** eye protection required;
- **4** keep away from children;
- **5** explosive materials;
- **6** refer to the handbook;
- **7** corrosive materials.



For your own safety and for the proper operation of the vehicle's electrical equipment (lights, windscreen wipers, ABS, etc.), any intervention on the battery (removal, disconnection, etc.) must categorically be performed by a specialist professional.

Risk of serious burns or electric shocks.

You must respect the replacement intervals (without exceeding them) as stated in the maintenance document.

The battery is a specific type. Please ensure it is replaced with the same type.

Call an approved Dealer.

## Replacing the battery

As this operation is complex, we advise you to contact an approved Dealer.

## BODYWORK MAINTENANCE (1/3)

A well-maintained vehicle will last longer. It is therefore recommended to maintain the exterior of the vehicle regularly.

Your vehicle has been treated with very effective anti-corrosion products. It is nevertheless subject to various outside influences.

### Corrosive agents in the atmosphere

- atmospheric pollution (built-up and industrial areas);
- saline atmospheres (near the sea, particularly in hot weather);
- seasonal and damp weather conditions (e.g. road salt in winter, water from road cleaners, etc.).

### Minor impacts

#### Abrasive action

Dust and sand in the air, mud, road grit thrown up by other vehicles, etc.

You should take a number of minor precautions in order to safeguard your vehicle against such risks.

### You should

Wash your car frequently, **with the engine off**, with cleaning products recommended by the manufacturer (never use abrasive products). Rinse thoroughly beforehand with a jet:

- spots of tree resin and industrial grime;
  - mud in the wheel arches and underneath the body which forms damp patches;
  - **bird droppings**, which cause a chemical reaction with the paint that **rapidly discolours paintwork and may even cause the paint to peel off**;
- wash the vehicle **immediately** to remove these marks since it is impossible to remove them by polishing;
- salt, particularly in the wheel arches and underneath the body after driving in areas where the roads have been gritted.

Remove any plant matter (resin, leaves, etc.) from the vehicle regularly.

Respect local regulations about washing vehicles (e.g. do not wash your vehicle on a public highway).

Observe the vehicle stopping distances when driving on gravelled surfaces to prevent paint damage.

Repair, or have repaired quickly, areas where the paint has been damaged, to prevent corrosion spreading.

Remember to visit the body shop periodically in order to maintain your anti-corrosion warranty. Refer to the Maintenance Document.

If it is necessary to clean mechanical components, hinges, etc., spray them with products approved by our Technical Department to protect them after they have been cleaned.

We have selected special products to care for your vehicle and you can obtain these from the manufacturer's accessory outlets.

## BODYWORK MAINTENANCE (2/3)

### What you should not do

Wash the vehicle in bright sunlight or freezing temperatures.

Do not scrape off mud or dirt without pre-wetting.

Allow dirt to accumulate on the exterior.

Allow rust to form following minor impacts.

Do not use solvents not approved by our Technical Department to remove stains as this could damage the paintwork.

Do not drive in snow or muddy conditions without washing the vehicle, particularly under the wheel arches and body.



Degrease or clean using high-pressure cleaning equipment or by spraying on products not approved by our Technical Department:

- mechanical components (e.g.: engine compartment);
- the wheels (e.g. braking system components such as brake callipers);
- underbody;
- parts with hinges (e.g.: inside the doors);
- painted plastic external fittings (e.g.: bumpers).

Doing this could give rise to corrosion or operational faults.



## BODYWORK MAINTENANCE (3/3)

### Vehicles with a matte paint finish

This type of paint requires certain precautions.

#### You should do the following

Wash the vehicle by hand using plenty of water, using a soft cloth or a gentle sponge.

#### Do not do the following

Use wax-based products (polishing).

Rub too hard.

Wash the vehicle in a roller-type car wash.

Attach stickers to the paintwork (risk of leaving marks).



Wash the vehicle using a high-pressure cleaning device.

### Using a roller type car wash

Return the wiper stalk to the park position. ➡ 1.141, ➡ 1.145. Check the mounting of external accessories, additional lights and rear view mirrors, and ensure that the wiper blades are secured with adhesive tape.

Remove the radio aerial mast if your vehicle is fitted with this equipment. Check that the fuel filler flap is closed then lock the vehicle.

Remember to remove the tape and refit the antenna after washing.

### Cleaning the headlights, sensors and cameras

Use a soft cloth or cotton wool. If this does not clean them properly, moisten the cloth with soapy water, then wipe clean with a soft damp cloth or cotton wool.

Finally, carefully dry off with a soft dry cloth.

**Do not use cleaning products containing alcohol or utensils (e.g.: a scraper).**

## INTERIOR TRIM MAINTENANCE (1/2)

A well-maintained vehicle will last longer. It is therefore recommended to maintain the interior of the vehicle regularly.

A stain should always be dealt with swiftly.

Whatever type of stain is on the trim, use **cold** (or warm) **soapy water with natural soap**.

**Detergents (washing-up liquid, powdered products, alcohol-based products) should not be used.**

Use a soft cloth.

Rinse and soak up the excess.

### Multimedia screen

Maintenance of the screen may depend on the type of multimedia equipment. Please refer to the multimedia instructions for further information.

### Glass instrument panel

(e.g. instrument panel, clock, exterior temperature display, radio display, etc.)

Use a soft cloth (or cotton wool).

If this does not clean them properly, use a soft cloth (or cotton wool) slightly moistened with soapy water and then wipe clean with another soft damp cloth or cotton wool.

Finally, **carefully** dry off with a soft dry cloth.

**Do not use products containing alcohol and/or spray fluids on the area.**

### Seat belts

These must be kept clean.

Use products selected by our Technical Department (approved outlets) or warm, soapy water and a sponge and wipe with a dry cloth.

**Detergents or dyes must not be used under any circumstances.**

### Textiles (seats, door trim, etc)

Vacuum-clean the textiles **regularly**.

#### Liquid stain

Use soapy water.

Dab lightly (never rub) with a soft cloth, rinse and remove the excess.

#### Solid or pasty stain

Carefully remove the excess solid or pasty material **immediately** with a spatula (working from the edges to the centre to avoid spreading the stain).

Clean as for a liquid stain.

#### Special instructions for sweets or chewing gum

Put an ice cube on the stain to solidify it, then proceed as for a solid stain.

For further recommendations for maintaining the interior, and/or for any unsatisfactory results, please see an authorised dealer.

## INTERIOR TRIM MAINTENANCE (2/2)

### Removal/replacing removable equipment originally fitted in the vehicle

If you need to remove equipment in order to clean the passenger compartment (for example, mats), always ensure that they are correctly refitted and are the right way around (the driver's mat should be fitted on the driver's side etc.) and fit them with the components supplied with the equipment (for example, the driver mat should always be fixed using the pre-fitted mounting components).

With the vehicle stationary, always ensure that nothing will impede driving (anything obstructing the pedals, heel wedged by the mat etc.).

### You should not:

Position objects such as deodorants, scents etc. near air vents as this could damage your dashboard trim.



Use high-pressure cleaning equipment or sprays inside the passenger compartment:

without careful use, this equipment could impair the correct functioning of the electrical or electronic components in the vehicle, or have other detrimental effects.

## ***Section 5: Practical advice***


Puncture, emergency spare wheel . . . . .	5.2
Tyre inflation kit . . . . .	5.4
Tools . . . . .	5.8
Wheel trims - wheel . . . . .	5.10
Changing a wheel . . . . .	5.11
Tyres (tyre and wheel safety, use in winter) . . . . .	5.13
Headlights (changing bulbs) . . . . .	5.16
Rear lights and side lights (replacing bulbs) . . . . .	5.18
Interior lighting: changing bulbs. . . . .	5.22
Remote control key: battery. . . . .	5.27
“Hands-free” card: battery . . . . .	5.29
Battery: troubleshooting. . . . .	5.31
Fitting a radio. . . . .	5.33
Accessories . . . . .	5.34
Fuses. . . . .	5.35
Wiper blades: replacement . . . . .	5.38
Towing . . . . .	5.40
Operating faults . . . . .	5.42

## PUNCTURE, EMERGENCY SPARE WHEEL (1/2)

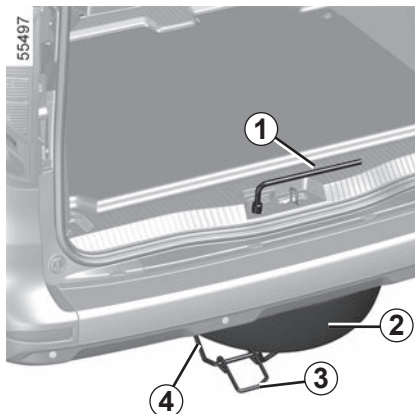
### In case of puncture

Depending on the vehicle, either an emergency spare wheel or a tyre inflation kit is provided ➔ 5.4.

### Vehicle fitted with a tyre pressure loss warning system

In the event of under-inflation (punctures, under-inflation etc.), the  warning light appears on the instrument panel. ➔ 2.31, ➔ 2.37.

In some cases (rear puncture, vehicle loaded with towing equipment), it is necessary to raise the vehicle (using the lifting point nearest the wheel concerned) to access to the emergency spare wheel ➔ 5.11.



### Emergency spare wheel 2

This is stored in cage **4** under the floor at the rear of the vehicle.

#### To access the emergency spare wheel

- Open the boot lid;
- loosen the nut using the wheel brace **1** ➔ 5.8;
- unhook the cradle, taking it by the handle **3**;
- release the emergency spare wheel.



If the vehicle is parked on the hard shoulder, you must warn other road users of your vehicle's presence with a warning triangle or with other devices as per the legislation applying to the country you are in.

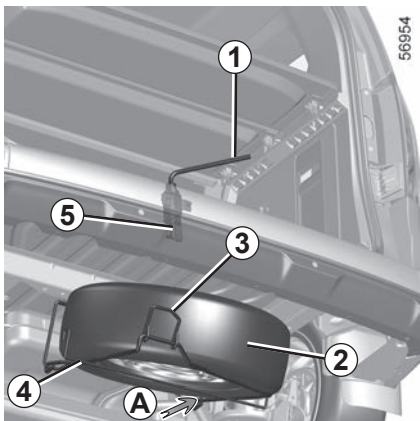


Do not leave the tools unsecured inside the vehicle as they may come loose under braking. After use, make sure the tools are correctly positioned in their mountings: **not doing so presents a risk of injury.**

If bolts are supplied with the emergency spare wheel, you must use these bolts only for the emergency spare wheel.

The jack is designed for wheel changing purposes only. Under no circumstances should it be used for carrying out repairs underneath the vehicle or to gain access to the underside of the vehicle.

## PUNCTURE, EMERGENCY SPARE WHEEL (2/2)



### To store the wheel in the cage

- Make sure that you reposition the wheel **2** correctly in the cage, with the valve facing downwards;
- position the wheel as far to the right as possible and at the bottom of the cage **4** (movement **A**);
- ensure that the handle **3** located on the left-hand side is raised and mobile;
- lift the cage **4** by the handle **3** using your left hand, while holding down the wheel **2** at the bottom of the cage using your right hand;

- attach the handle **3** by moving it slightly to the left, if necessary, to find the hook **5**;
- tighten the nut using the **1** key to refit and lock the assembly;
- check that it is correctly locked in place.



If the emergency spare wheel has been stored for several years, have it checked by your Dealer to ensure that it is safe to use.

### Vehicle fitted with an emergency spare wheel that differs from the other wheels:

- Never fit more than one emergency spare wheel to the same vehicle.
- The punctured wheel is wider than the emergency spare wheel, so the height of the vehicle ground clearance is reduced.
- Replace the emergency spare wheel as soon as possible with a wheel identical to the original one.
- When this is fitted to the vehicle, which must only be a temporary measure, the driving speed must not exceed the speed indicated on the label on the wheel.
- Fitting an emergency spare wheel may alter the way the vehicle usually runs. Avoid sudden acceleration or deceleration and reduce your speed when cornering.
- If you need to use snow chains, fit the emergency spare wheel to the rear axle and check the tyre pressure.

## TYRE INFLATION KIT (1/4)

32788



The kit repairs tyres when tread **A** has been damaged by objects smaller than 4 mm. It cannot repair all types of puncture, such as cuts larger than 4 mm, or cuts in tyre sidewall **B**.

Ensure also that the wheel rim is in good condition.

Do not pull out the foreign body causing the puncture if it is still in the tyre.



Do not attempt to use the inflation kit if the tyre has been damaged as a result of driving with a puncture.

You should therefore carefully check the condition of the tyre sidewalls before any operation.

Driving with underinflated, flat or punctured tyres can be dangerous and may make the tyre impossible to repair.

### **This repair is temporary.**

A tyre which has been punctured should always be inspected (and repaired, where possible) as soon as possible by a specialist.

When taking a tyre which has been repaired using this kit to be replaced, you must inform the specialist.

When driving, vibration may be felt due to the presence of the repair product injected into the tyre.



The kit is only approved for inflating the tyres of the vehicle originally equipped with the kit.

It must never be used to inflate the tyres of another vehicle, or any other inflatable object (rubber ring, rubber boat, etc.).

Avoid spillage on skin when handling the repair product bottle. If droplets do leak out, rinse them off with plenty of water.

Keep the repair kit away from children.

Do not dispose of the empty bottle in the countryside. Return it to your approved dealer or to a recycling organisation.

The bottle has a limited service life which is indicated on its label. Check the expiry date.


Contact an approved dealer to replace the inflation tube and repair product bottle.

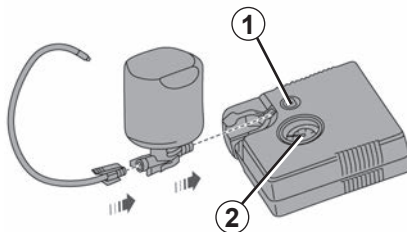
## TYRE INFLATION KIT (2/4)



Depending on the vehicle, in the event of a puncture use the kit located in the storage compartment under the flap **C** at the footwell of the front right-hand seat.

### Vehicle fitted with a tyre pressure loss warning system

In the event of under-inflation (punctures, under-inflation etc.), the  warning light appears on the instrument panel. ➔ 2.31, ➔ 2.37.



### Engine running, handbrake applied:

- Disconnect any accessories previously connected to the vehicle's accessories sockets;
- **refer to the information on the inflation kit compressor** located in the luggage compartment of the vehicle and follow the instructions;
- inflate the tyre to the recommended pressure ➔ 4.10 ;
- after a maximum of **15 minutes**, stop inflating and read the pressure (on pressure gauge **2**).

**Note:** while the bottle is emptying (approximately 30 seconds), the pressure gauge **2** will briefly indicate a pressure of **6 bar**, then the pressure drops;

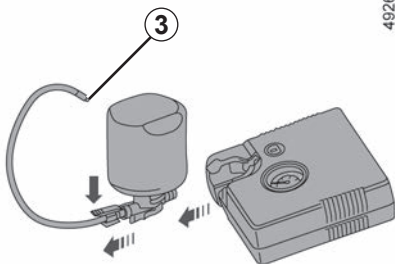
- Adjust the pressure: to increase it, continue inflation with the kit. To reduce it, press the button **1**.



Before using this kit, park the vehicle at a sufficient distance from traffic, switch on the hazard warning lights, apply the handbrake, ask all passengers to leave the vehicle and keep them away from traffic.



## TYRE PRESSURE KIT (3/4)



49261

**If a minimum pressure of 1.8 bar is not reached after 15 minutes, repair is not possible; do not drive the vehicle but contact an approved dealer.**

Once the tyre is correctly inflated, remove the kit: unclip the inflation adapter slowly from the container **3** to prevent any product spatter and store the container in plastic packaging to prevent product leaks.

- Affix the driving recommendation label (located under the container) to the dashboard where the driver can see it.
- Put the kit away.
- At the end of this initial inflation operation, air will still escape from the tyre. You must drive a short distance in order to seal the hole.
- Start immediately and drive at a speed between 12 to 37 mph (20 to 60 km/h) in order to distribute the product evenly in the tyre; after driving a distance of 2 miles (3 km), stop and check the pressure.
- If the pressure is higher than 1.3 bar but lower than the recommended pressure (refer to the label affixed to the edge of the driver's door), adjust it. Otherwise, contact an approved dealer: the tyre cannot be repaired.



Nothing should be placed around the driver's feet as such objects may slide under the pedals during sudden braking manoeuvres and obstruct their use.



If the vehicle is parked on the hard shoulder, you must warn other road users of your vehicle's presence with a warning triangle or with other devices as per the legislation applying to the country you are in.

## TYRE INFLATION KIT (4/4)

### Precautions when using the kit

The kit should not be operated for more than 15 consecutive minutes.

The container must be replaced after the first use even if liquid remains inside.



Please be aware that a poorly tightened or missing valve cap can make the tyres less airtight and may lead to pressure loss.

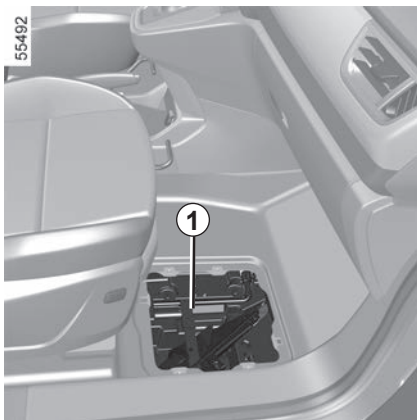
Always use valve caps identical to those fitted originally and tighten them fully.



Following repair with the kit, do not travel further than 120 miles (200 km). In addition, reduce your speed and under no circumstances exceed 48 mph (80 km/h). The sticker, which you must affix in a prominent position on the dashboard, reminds you of this.

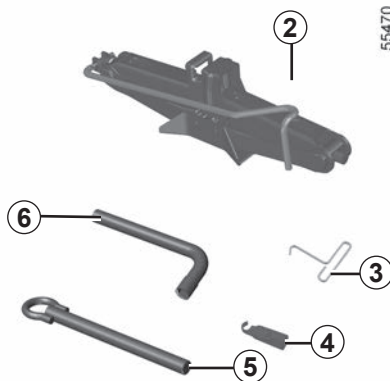
Depending on the country or local legislation, a tyre repaired with the inflation kit may need to be replaced.

## TOOLS (1/2)



### Tool kit storage

The tool kit **1** is located under the flap at the footwell of the front right-hand seat.



### Jack 2

Fold it correctly before refitting it in its housing (ensure that the wheelbrace is correctly positioned).

### Hubcap tool 3

This tool is used to remove the wheel trims.

### Wheel bolt guide 4

To finish loosening or starting to tighten the wheel bolts.

### Tow eye 5

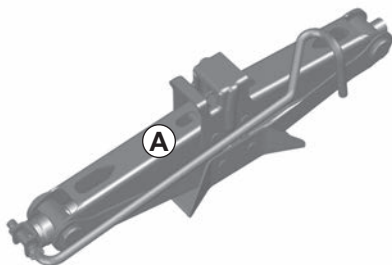
➔ 5.40

### Wheelbrace 6

Locks or unlocks the wheel bolts and tow eye **5**.

## TOOLS (2/2)

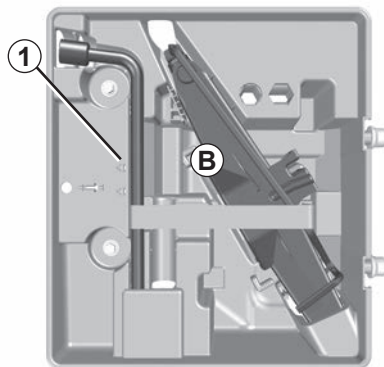
55471



### Jack storage position A

Fold the jack away correctly before storing it in its housing. Make sure that the handle is placed correctly in its storage position.

1



55472

### Storage position B in the tool kit 1

Reposition the tools in the casing and check that the assembly is correctly positioned (not doing so may result in noise).



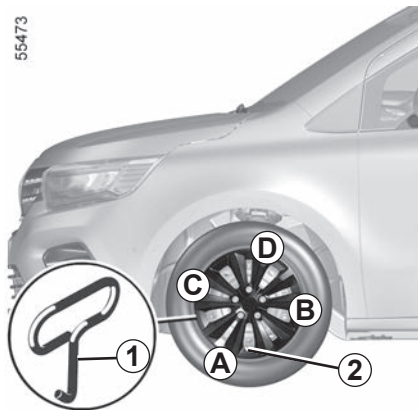
Do not leave the tools unsecured inside the vehicle as they may come loose under braking. After use, check that all the tools are correctly clipped into the tool kit, then position it correctly in its housing: risk of injury.

If bolts are supplied with the emergency spare wheel, you must use these bolts only for the emergency spare wheel.

The jack is designed for wheel changing purposes only. Under no circumstances should it be used for carrying out repairs underneath the vehicle or to gain access to the underside of the vehicle.

## WHEEL TRIMS - WHEEL

55473

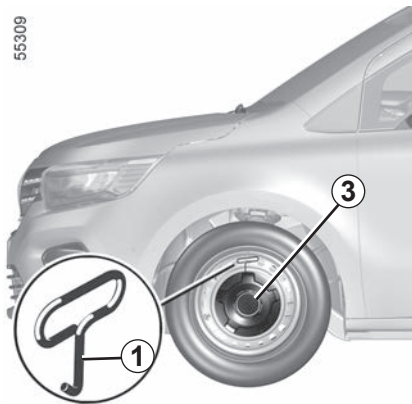


### Wheel trim with concealed wheel bolts

Remove the wheel trim using hubcap tool **1** (located in the tool kit) by engaging the hook in the opening near valve **2**.

To refit it, align it with valve **2**. Push the retaining hooks in fully, starting with side **A** near the valve, followed by **B** and **C**, finishing at **D** opposite the valve.

55309

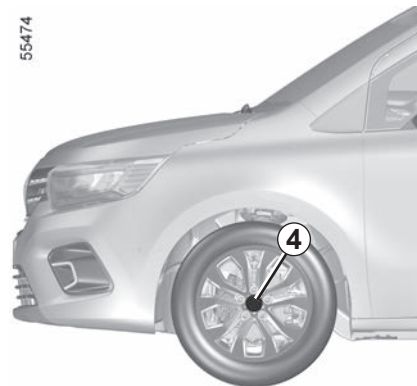


### Wheel trim 3

Remove using hubcap tool **1** (located in the tool kit) by engaging the hook in the opening near the edge of the trim.

To refit, position the trim attachments facing the wheel attachments and press hard in the middle of the trim to clip it to the wheel.

55474



### Central wheel trim with visible wheel bolts (Wheel trim 4)

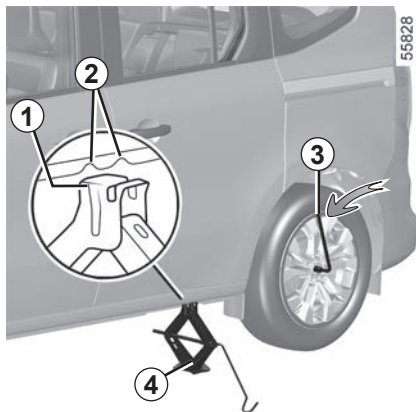
The bolts are directly accessible.



Do not leave the tools unsecured inside the vehicle as they may come loose under braking. After use, check that all the tools are correctly clipped into the tool kit, then position it correctly in its housing.

**Risk of injury.**

## CHANGING A WHEEL (1/2)



Switch on the hazard warning lights.

Keep the vehicle away from traffic and on a level surface where it will not slip.

Apply the parking brake and engage a gear (first or reverse gear, or position **P** on automatic gearboxes).

Ask all the passengers to leave the vehicle and keep them away from traffic.

### Vehicles equipped with a jack and wheelbrace

If necessary, remove the wheel trim.

Use the wheelbrace **3** to slacken off the wheel bolts. Position it so as to be able to push from above.

Position the jack **4** horizontally. The jack head **must** be positioned at the same level as the reinforced panel nearest to the wheel concerned.

Start cranking the jack by hand, positioning the jack support plate **1** in the slightly indented groove underneath the vehicle, located between the two notches **2**.

Continue to crank the jack so that the baseplate is correctly positioned (it should be underneath the vehicle and aligned with the jack head).

Turn it a few times to lift the wheel off the ground.



If the vehicle is parked on the hard shoulder, you must warn other road users of your vehicle's presence with a warning triangle or with other devices as per the legislation applying to the country you are in.

## CHANGING A WHEEL (2/2)

Undo the bolts and take off the wheel.

Fit the emergency spare wheel on the central hub and turn it to locate the mounting holes in the wheel and the hub.

Tighten the bolts, checking that the wheel is correctly positioned on its hub.

Lower the jack.


With the wheel on the ground, tighten the bolts fully and have the tightness of the bolts checked and the emergency spare wheel pressure checked as soon as possible.



If you have a puncture, replace the wheel as soon as possible.

A tyre which has been punctured should always be inspected (and repaired, where possible) by a specialist.

### Vehicle fitted with a tyre pressure loss warning system

In the event of under-inflation (punctures, under-inflation etc.), the  warning light appears on the instrument panel. ➔ 2.31 ➔ 2.37.



Do not leave the tools unsecured inside the vehicle as they may come loose under braking. After use, check that all the tools are correctly clipped into the tool kit, then position it correctly in its housing: risk of injury.

If bolts are supplied with the emergency spare wheel, you must use these bolts only for the emergency spare wheel.

The jack is designed for wheel changing purposes only. Under no circumstances should it be used for carrying out repairs underneath the vehicle or to gain access to the underside of the vehicle.

## TYRES (1/3)

### Tyre and wheel safety

The tyres are the only contact between the vehicle and the road, so it is essential to keep them in good condition.

You must make sure that your tyres conform to local road traffic regulations.

### Maintaining the tyres

The tyres must be in good condition and the tread form must have sufficient depth; tyres approved by our Technical Department have wear warning strips **1** which are **indicators moulded into the tread at several points**.



Incidents which occur when driving, such as striking the kerb, may damage the tyres and wheel rims, and could also lead to misalignment of the front or rear axle geometry. In this case, have the condition of these checked by an approved dealer.



When the tyre tread has been worn to the level of the warning strips, **they become visible 2**: it is **then** necessary to replace your tyres because the tread rubber is now only **1.6 mm deep at most, resulting in poor road holding on wet roads**.

An overloaded vehicle, long journeys by motorway, particularly in very hot weather, or continual driving on poorly surfaced minor roads will lead to more rapid tyre wear and affect safety.

### Tyre pressures

Adhere to the tyre pressures (including the emergency spare wheel). The tyre pressures should be checked at least once a month and additionally before any long journey (refer to the label affixed to the edge of the driver's door).



#### **Incorrect tyre pressures**

lead to abnormal tyre wear and unusually hot running.

These are factors which may seriously affect safety and lead to:

- poor road holding;
- risk of bursting or tread separation.

The pressure depends on the load and the speed of use. Adjust the pressure according to the conditions of use (refer to the label affixed to the edge of the driver's door).



## TYRES (2/3)

Pressures should be checked when the tyres are cold; ignore higher pressures which may be reached in hot weather or following a fast journey.

If tyre pressures cannot be checked when the tyres are **cold**, assume an increase of **0.2 to 0.3 bar (or 3 PSI)**.


**Never deflate a hot tyre.**



Please be aware that a poorly tightened or missing valve cap can make the tyres less airtight and lead to pressure loss.

Always use valve caps identical to those fitted originally and tighten them fully.

### Vehicle fitted with a tyre pressure loss warning system

In the event of under-inflation (punctures, under-inflation etc.), the  warning light appears on the instrument panel. ➔ 2.31, ➔ 2.37.

### Emergency spare wheel

➔ 5.2, ➔ 5.11.

### Changing wheels around

This practice is not recommended.

## Fitting new tyres



For your safety, please respect the speed limit.

When they need to be replaced, only tyres of the same make, size, type and profile should be used on a single axle.

**They must either have a load capacity and speed rating at least equal to those of the original tyres, or be recommended by an authorised dealer.**

Failure to heed these instructions could endanger your safety and affect your vehicle's roadworthiness.

**Risk of loss of control of the vehicle.**

## TYRES (3/3)

### Use in winter

#### Chains

**For safety reasons, fitting snow chains to the rear axle is strictly forbidden.**

**Chains cannot be fitted** to tyres which are larger than those originally fitted to the vehicle.

#### One-way tyres

An one-way tyre must only be fitted in one direction. You must observe this direction.

If an one-way tyre must be fitted in the opposite to its direction of rotation following a puncture, drive with caution, particularly on a wet road, because the tyre specifications will not be adapted.



Chains may only be fitted to tyres of the same size as those originally fitted to **your vehicle**.

### Snow or Winter tyres

We would recommend that these be fitted to all **four wheels** to ensure that your vehicle retains maximum adhesion.

**Warning:** These tyres sometimes have a specific direction of rotation and a maximum speed index which may be lower than the maximum speed of your vehicle.

#### Studded tyres

This type of equipment may only be used for a limited period and as laid down by local legislation. It is necessary to observe the speed specified by current legislation.

These tyres must, at a minimum, be fitted to the two front wheels.



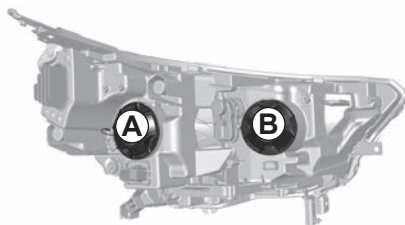
**17" wheels cannot be fitted with chains.**

If you wish to fit snow chains, you must use **special equipment**.

Consult an approved dealer

In all cases, we would recommend that you contact an approved Dealer who will be able to advise you on the choice of equipment which is most suitable for your vehicle.

## HEADLIGHTS: changing bulbs (1/2)



55475

### Vehicles with halogen headlights

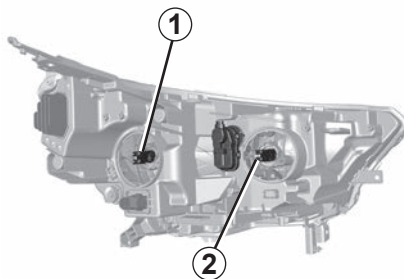
#### Dipped beam headlights

Remove cover **A**.

Tilt bulb holder **1** to release it and then replace the bulb.

**Type of bulb: H7.**

After replacing the bulb, please ensure that the lights are adjusted by a professional.



55499

### Main beam headlights

Remove cover **B**.

Tilt bulb holder **2** to release it and then replace the bulb.

**Type of bulb: H7.**

**Do not touch the bulb glass. Hold it by its base.**

It is **essential** to use anti-U.V. 55W bulbs so as not to damage the plastic on the headlights. Mark the bulb's position before removal to ensure correct positioning when replacing.

When the bulb has been changed, make sure you refit the cover correctly.

To comply with current legislation, or as a precaution, you can obtain an emergency kit from your approved dealer containing a set of spare bulbs and fuses.




The bulbs are under pressure and can break when replaced.

**Risk of injury.**

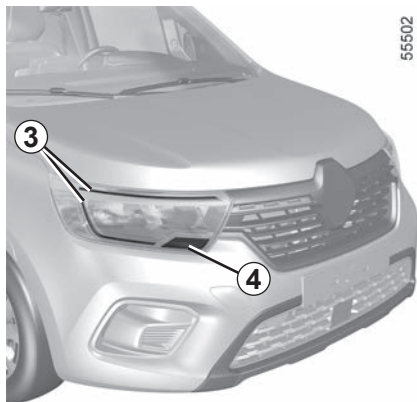


Please note when working close to the engine that it may be hot. The engine cooling fan may also start

at any moment. The  label in the engine compartment reminds you of this.

**Risk of injury.**

## HEADLIGHTS: changing bulbs (2/2)

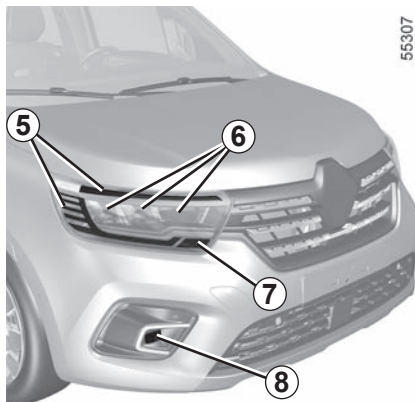


### Daytime running lights, LED front side lights 3

Please see an authorised dealer.

### LED direction indicator lights 4

Please see an authorised dealer.



### LED headlights

#### Daytime running lights, LED front side lights 5

Please see an authorised dealer.

#### LED main beam headlights, dipped beam headlights 6

Please see an authorised dealer.

#### LED direction indicator lights 7

Please see an authorised dealer.

### LED front fog lights 8

Please see an authorised dealer.

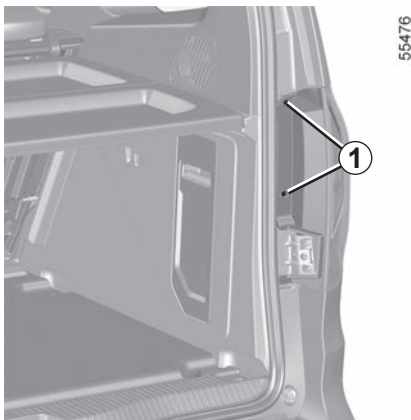


Before carrying out any operation in the engine compartment, you must switch off the ignition.



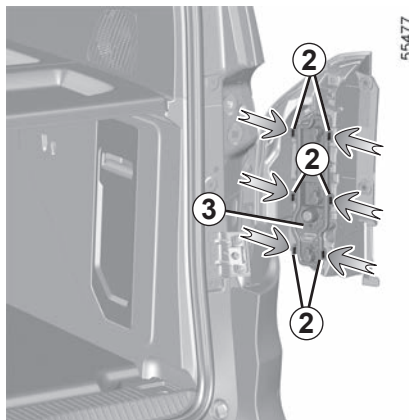
Any operation on (or modification to) the electrical system must be performed by an approved dealer since an incorrect connection might damage the electrical equipment (harness, components and in particular the alternator). In addition, your Dealer has all the parts required for fitting these units.

## REAR LIGHTS AND SIDE LIGHTS: replacing the bulbs (1/4)



### Direction indicator lights, reversing lights, fog lights and brake lights

Undo bolt **1** to remove the light.

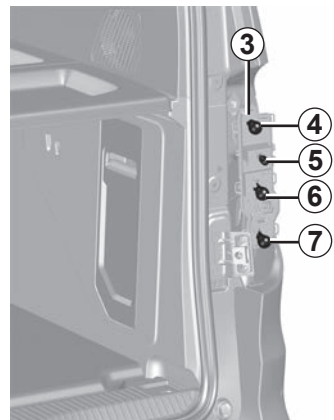


Release the light assembly from outside the vehicle by pulling towards the rear.

Remove the bulb holder **3** by releasing clips **2**.

### Refitting

To refit, proceed in the reverse order, taking care not to damage the wiring, and fasten clips **2** on the bulb holder **3**.



### 4 Brake light

**Bulb type 4: P21W** or, depending on the vehicle, **PR21W**.

### 5 Reversing light

**Bulb type 5: W16W.**

### 6 Indicator light

**Bulb type 6: PY21W.**

### 7 Fog light

**Bulb type 7: P21W.**

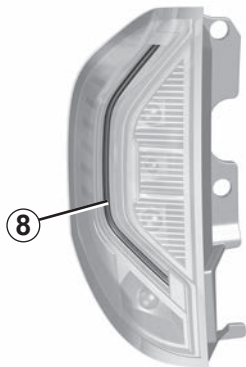


The bulbs are under pressure and can break when replaced.

**Risk of injury.**

To comply with current legislation, or as a precaution, you can obtain an emergency kit from your approved dealer containing a set of spare bulbs and fuses.

## REAR LIGHTS AND SIDE LIGHTS: replacing the bulbs (2/4)



55444

### LED side lights 8

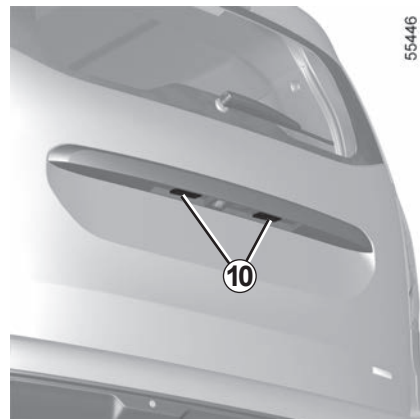
Consult an approved dealer.



55445

### High-level LED brake light 9

Consult an approved dealer.

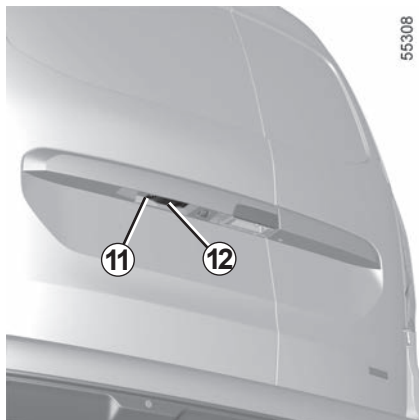


55446

### LED number plate lights 10 (depending on the vehicle)

Consult an approved Dealer.

## REAR LIGHTS AND SIDE LIGHTS: replacing the bulbs (3/4)



### Number plate light

Undo screw **11**.

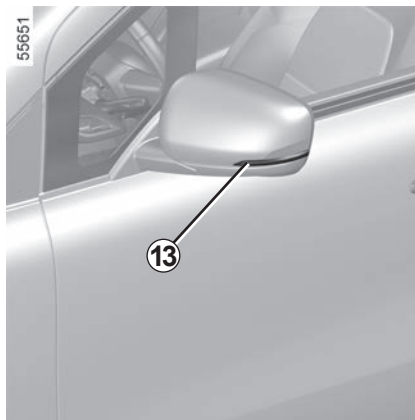
Remove the light cover **12** to access the bulb.

**Bulb type: W5W.**



The bulbs are under pressure and may break when replaced.

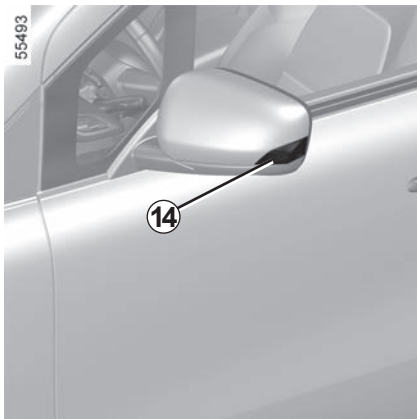
**Risk of injury.**



### LED side repeaters **13**

Consult an approved dealer.

## REAR LIGHTS AND SIDE LIGHTS: replacing the bulbs (4/4)

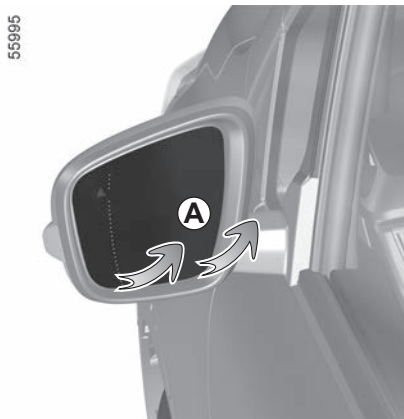


### Indicator lights 14

As the door mirror shell needs to be removed, **we advise you to have the bulb replaced by an approved dealer.**

#### To access the bulb:

- carefully unclip the door mirror shell 15 from its base 16 (movement A);
- disengage the bulb holder 17 using a flat-blade screwdriver or similar, levering at C (movement B);
- disengage and remove the bulb holder 17 then replace the bulb 18.



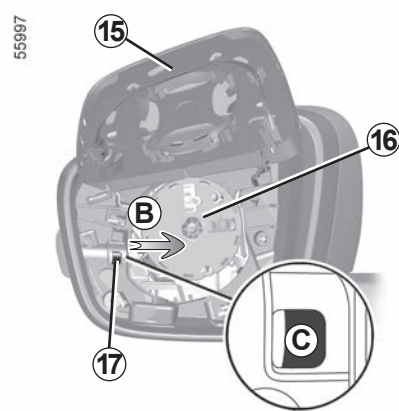
### Bulb type: WY5W.

To refit it, carry out the above operations in reverse order.

Make sure:

- that the bulb holder 17 is aligned correctly before inserting it into its housing;
- that the door mirror shell 15 clips properly onto its base 16.

**When disassembling and refitting,** ensure that the wiring and the surrounding components are not damaged.





## INTERIOR LIGHTING: changing bulbs (1/5)



### Front ceiling light 1

- Unclip the lens **2** (using a tool such as a flat screwdriver), positioned at **A**;
- unclip and release the bulb holder **3** using the tabs **4**;
- remove the bulb concerned.

**Type of bulb 5: W5W.**



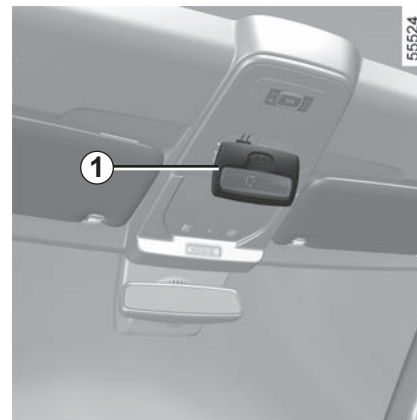
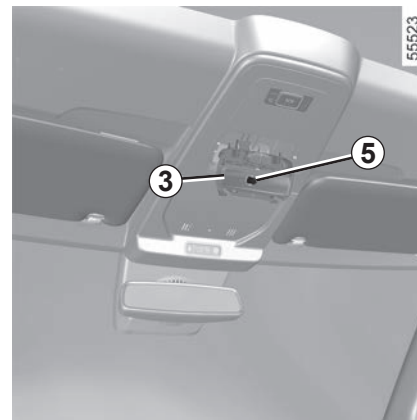
### Refitting

- Clip the lens **2** on to the bulb holder **3**;
- clip in the interior lights **1** until the unit clicks;
- ensure that the interior lights are properly positioned and locked into place.

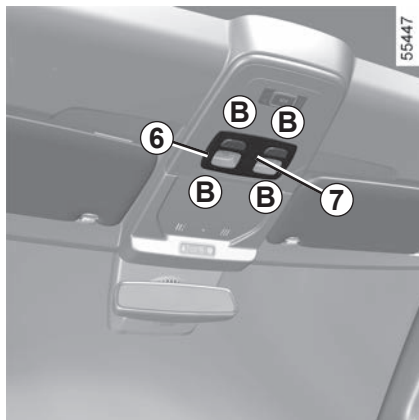


The bulbs are under pressure and can break when replaced.

**Risk of injury.**



## INTERIOR LIGHTING: changing bulbs (2/5)

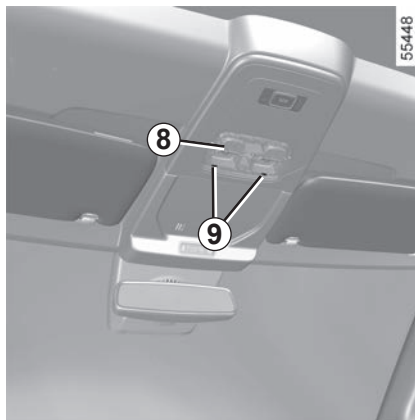


### Front map reading lights 6

(depending on the vehicle)

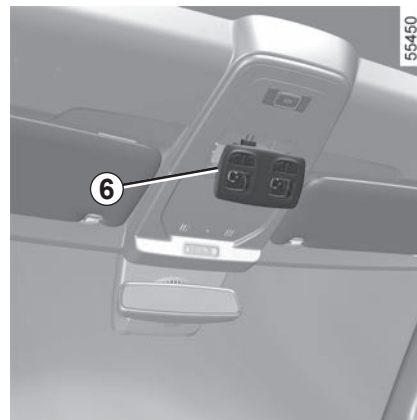
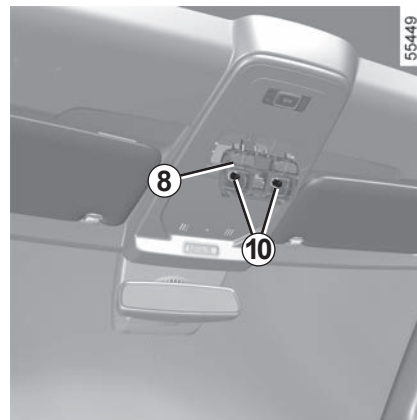
- Unclip the lens 7 (using a tool such as a flat screwdriver), positioned at B;
- unclip and release the bulb holder 8 using the tabs 9;
- remove the bulb concerned.

**Type of bulb 10: W5W.**

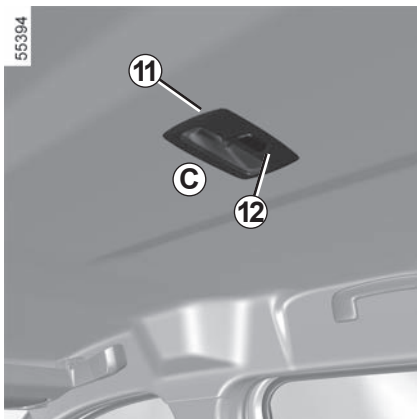


### Refitting

- Clip the lens 7 on to the bulb holder 8;
- clip in the reading spots block 6 until the unit clicks;
- make sure that the reading spots block is correctly positioned and locked into place.



## INTERIOR LIGHTING: changing bulbs (3/5)

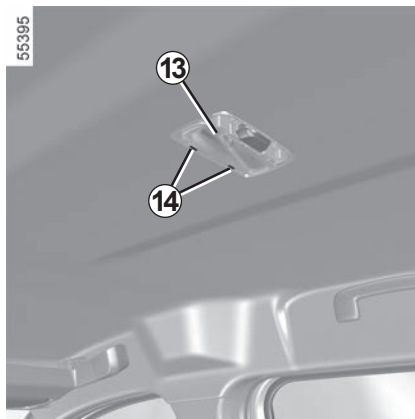


### Rear reading spot 11

(depending on the vehicle)

- Unclip the lens **12** (using a tool such as a flat screwdriver), positioned at **C**;
- unclip and release the bulb holder **13** using the tabs **14**;
- remove the bulb concerned.

**Type of bulb 15: W5W.**



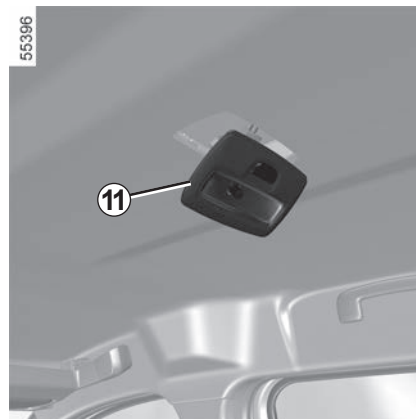
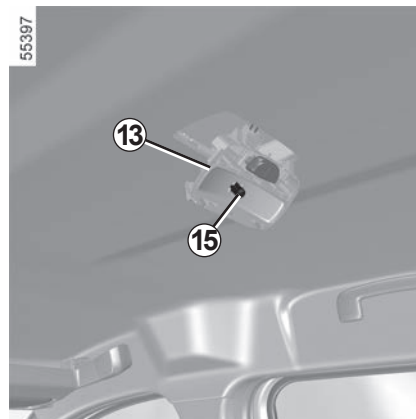
### Refitting

- Clip the lens **12** on to the bulb holder **13**;
- clip in the reading spots block **11** until the unit clicks;
- make sure that the reading spots block is correctly positioned and locked into place.

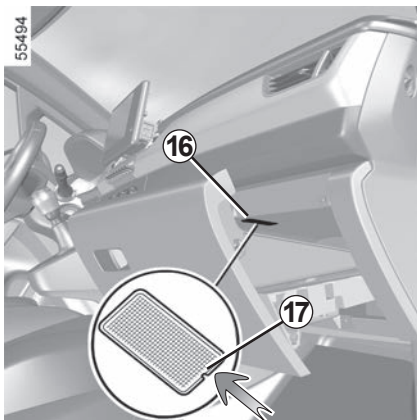


The bulbs are under pressure and can break when replaced.

**Risk of injury.**

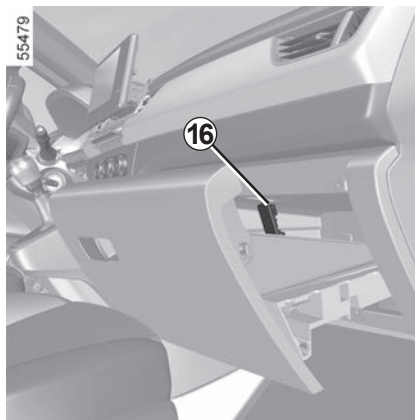


## INTERIOR LIGHTING: changing bulbs (4/5)



**Glove box light 16**  
(depending on the vehicle)

Unclip light **16** using a flat-blade screwdriver or similar) by pressing on the tab **17** to move the light towards the inside of the unit.



Remove the bulb concerned.

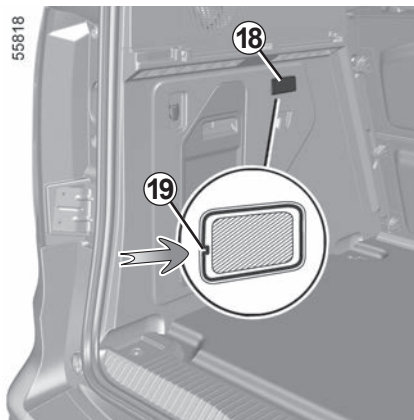
**Bulb type: W5W.**



The bulbs are under pressure and can break when replaced.

**Risk of injury.**

## INTERIOR LIGHTING: changing bulbs (5/5)

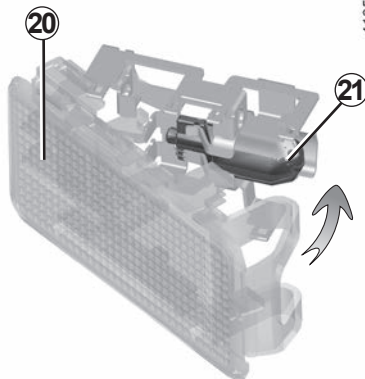


### Luggage compartment light 18

Unclip light **18** (using a flat-blade screwdriver or similar), by pressing on tab **19** to move the light towards the inside of the luggage compartment.

Remove the bulb concerned.

**Type of bulb: W5W.**



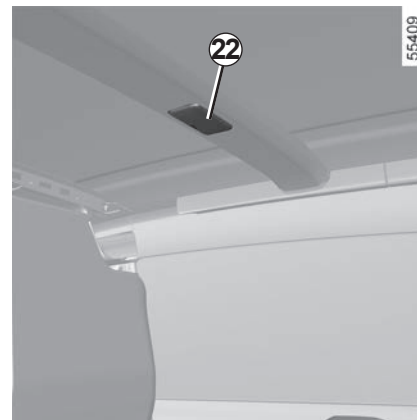
Release the lens **20** and access the bulb **21**.

**Type of bulb 21: W5W.**



The bulbs are under pressure and can break when replaced.

**Risk of injury.**



### Halogen rear light 22

Unclip the ceiling light diffuser using a flat blade screwdriver or similar.

Pull the bulb to remove it from its housing.

**Bulb type: W6W**

Replace the bulb and refit the lens.

### LED rear light 22

Consult an approved dealer.

## REMOTE CONTROL KEY: BATTERY: battery (1/2)



### Replacing the battery

Open the case at slot **1** using a flat-blade screwdriver or similar, and replace the battery **2**, observing the type and polarity shown on the back of the cover.



If they need to be replaced, be sure to use the same or equivalent type of battery (consult an Approved Dealer).



**Note:** It is not advisable to touch the electronic circuit in the key cover when replacing the battery.

When refitting, ensure that the cover is correctly clipped on and the screw tightened.

The batteries are available from approved Dealers, and their service life approximately two years.

Check that there is no dye on the battery: risk of an incorrect electrical contact.

## REMOTE CONTROL KEY: BATTERY: battery (2/2)

### Operating faults

If the battery is too weak to ensure correct operation, you will still be able to start and lock/unlock the vehicle

➡ 1.29.

26913



Do not throw away your used batteries; give them to an organisation responsible for collecting and recycling batteries.



When replacing:

- make sure that the batteries are correctly inserted.

#### **Risk of explosion.**

- if the flap does not close correctly, do not use and keep out of reach of children.



#### **Precautions relating to batteries:**

- keep (new or used) batteries out of reach of children;
  - do not swallow batteries;
- Risk of chemical burns which may lead to death.**
- if ingested or inserted into any part of the body, consult a doctor as soon as possible.

## “HANDS-FREE” CARD: battery (1/2)

40303

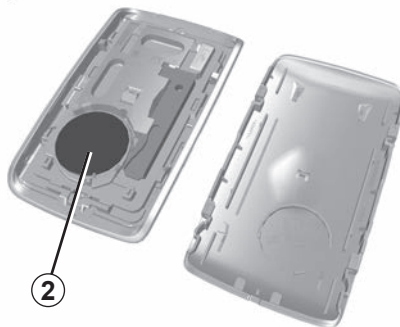


### Replacing the battery

When the message “Keycard Battery Low” appears on the instrument panel, replace the battery in the card:

- slide the rear casing **1** downwards while pressing on zone **A**;
- remove the battery cover **2**;
- remove the battery by pressing on one side and lifting the other;
- replace it according to the direction and template shown inside the cover.

43532



When refitting, proceed in the reverse order, then press one of the buttons on the card four times, close to the vehicle: the next time the vehicle is started, the message will disappear.

Check that the cover is clipped shut.

**Note:** Do not touch the electronic circuit or contacts on the card when replacing the battery.

The batteries are available from approved Dealers, and their service life approximately two years. Check that there is no dye on the battery: risk of an incorrect electrical contact.



If they need to be replaced, be sure to use the same or equivalent type of battery (consult an Approved Dealer).



When replacing:

- make sure that the batteries are correctly inserted.

#### **Risk of explosion.**

- if the flap does not close correctly, do not use and keep out of reach of children.



## “HANDS-FREE” CARD: battery (2/2)

### Operating faults

If the battery is too weak to ensure correct operation, you will still be able to start and lock/unlock the vehicle

➡ 1.29.

26913



Do not throw away your used batteries; give them to an organisation responsible for collecting and recycling batteries.



#### **Precautions relating to batteries:**

- keep (new or used) batteries out of reach of children;
- do not swallow batteries;

#### **Risk of chemical burns which may lead to death.**

- if ingested or inserted into any part of the body, consult a doctor as soon as possible.

## BATTERY: troubleshooting (1/2)

### To avoid all risk of sparks:

- Ensure that any power consumers (courtesy lights, etc.) are switched off before disconnecting or reconnecting a battery;
- when charging, stop the charger before connecting or disconnecting the battery;
- do not place metal objects on the battery as this could create a short circuit between the terminals;
- always wait at least five minutes after the engine has been switched off before disconnecting a battery;
- make sure that you reconnect the battery terminals after refitting.



Before carrying out any action in the engine compartment, you must switch off the ignition. ➡ 2.4

➡ 2.5.

### Connecting a battery charger

**The battery charger must be compatible with a battery with nominal voltage of 12 volts.**

Do not disconnect the battery when the engine is running. **Follow the instructions given by the manufacturer of the battery charger you are using.**



Special procedures may be required to charge some batteries. Contact your approved dealer.

Avoid all risk of sparks which may cause an immediate explosion, and charge the battery in a well ventilated area.


**Risk of serious injury.**



Handle the battery with care as it contains sulphuric acid, which must not come into contact with eyes or skin. If it does, wash the affected area with plenty of cold water. If necessary, consult a doctor.

Keep naked flames, red hot objects and sparks away from the battery components as there is a **risk of explosion**.

Please note when working close to the engine that it may be hot. In addition, the engine cooling fan may

start at any moment. The  warning light in the engine compartment reminds you of this.

**Risk of injury.**

## BATTERY: troubleshooting (2/2)

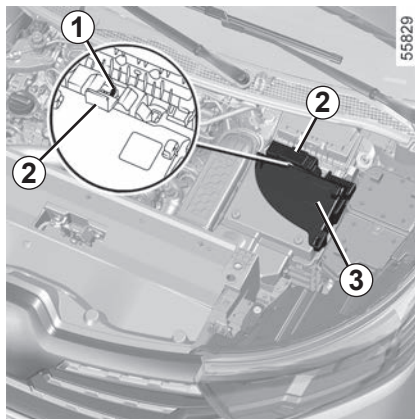
### Starting the vehicle using the battery from another vehicle

If you have to use the battery from another vehicle to start, obtain suitable jump leads (with a large cross section) from an approved dealer or, if you already have jump leads, ensure that they are in perfect condition.

**The two batteries must have an identical nominal voltage: 12 volts.** The battery supplying the current should have a capacity (amp-hours, Ah) which is at least the same as that of the discharged battery.

Ensure that there is no risk of contact between the two vehicles (risk of short circuiting when the positive terminals are connected) and that the discharged battery is properly connected. Switch off your vehicle ignition.

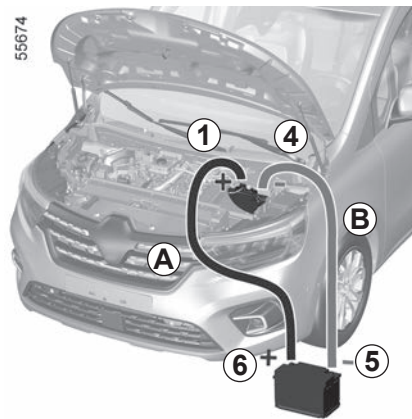
Start the engine of the vehicle supplying the current and run it at an intermediate engine speed.



Lift the red cover on box **2** located behind the battery.

Connect the positive cable **A** to the **support 1 (+)** located under the box cover **2**, then to the **terminal 6 (+)** of the battery supplying the current.

Remove the cover **3** and the protective foam located underneath. Connect the negative cable **B** to **terminal 5 (-)** of the battery supplying the current then to the **metal cable 4 (-)** of the discharged battery.



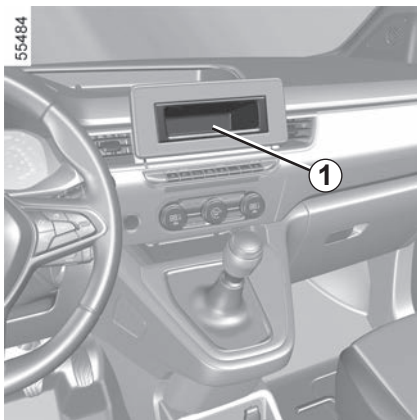
Start the engine, and as soon as it starts running, disconnect cables **A** and **B** in reverse order (**4 - 5 - 6 - 1**). After repairing, ensure that the protective foam and the cover **3** are in place.



Check that there is no contact between leads **A** and **B** and that the positive lead **A** is not touching any metal parts on the vehicle supplying the current.

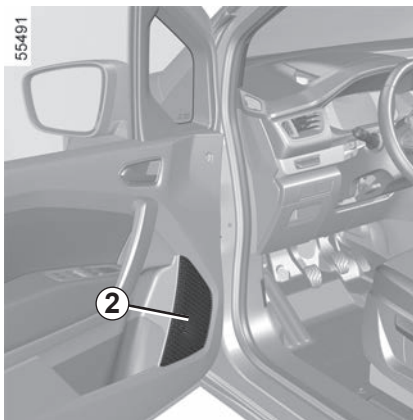
**Risk of injury and/or damage to the vehicle.**

## FITTING A RADIO



### Radio location 1

Unclip the blanking cover. The connections: ( + aerial) and ( – supply and speaker) are located behind it.



### Front door speakers 2

To install any equipment, please consult an authorised dealer.

- In all cases, it is very important to follow the manufacturer's instructions carefully.
- The specifications of the brackets and wires (available from our network) vary depending on the equipment level of your vehicle and the type of radio.

Consult an approved Dealer to find out the correct part number.

- No work may be carried out on the vehicle's electrical or radio circuits, except by approved dealers: an incorrectly connected system may result in damage being caused to the electrical equipment and/or the components connected to it.

## ACCESSORIES



### Electrical and electronic accessories

Before installing this type of accessory (particularly for transmitters/receivers: frequency bandwidth, power level, position of the aerial, etc.), make sure it is compatible with your vehicle. You can get advice from an authorised dealer.

Connect accessories with a maximum power of 120 Watts only. **Fire hazard.** When several accessory sockets are used at the same time, the total power of the connected accessories must not exceed 180 watts.

No work may be carried out on the vehicle's electrical or radio circuits, except by authorised dealers: an incorrectly connected system may result in damage being caused to the electrical equipment and/or the components connected to it.

If the vehicle is fitted with any aftermarket electrical equipment, make sure that the installation is correctly protected by a fuse.

Establish the rating and position of this fuse.

### Using the diagnostic socket

The use of electronic accessories on the diagnostic socket may cause serious disturbance to the vehicle's electronic systems. For your safety we recommend that you use only electronic accessories approved by the manufacturer, consult an Approved Dealer. **Serious accident risk.**

### Use of transmitting/receiving devices (telephones, CB equipment etc.).

Telephones and CB equipment with integrated aerials may cause interference to the electronic systems originally fitted to the vehicle: it is advisable only to use equipment with an external aerial. **Furthermore, we remind you of the need to conform to the legislation in force concerning the use of such equipment.**

### Fitting aftermarket accessories

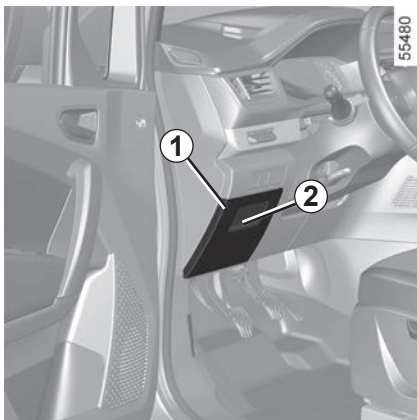
If you wish to install accessories on the vehicle: please contact an authorised dealer. Also, to ensure the correct operation of your vehicle, and to avoid any risk to your safety, we recommend that you use only accessories specifically designed for your vehicle, which are the only accessories for which the manufacturer will provide a warranty.

If you are using an anti-theft device, only attach it to the brake pedal.

### Obstructions to the driver

On the driver's side, only use mats suitable for the vehicle, attached with the pre-fitted components, and check the fitting regularly. Do not lay one mat on top of another. **There is a risk of wedging the pedals.**

## FUSES (1/3)



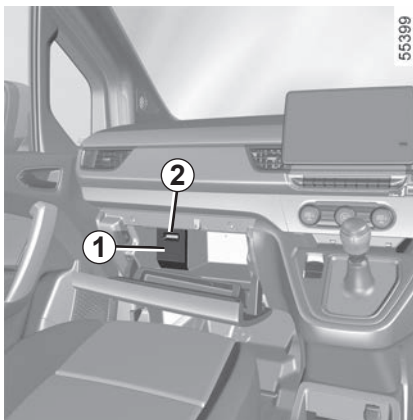
### Fuse boxes

If any electrical component does not work, check the condition of the fuses.

#### Passenger compartment fuses

Place your hand in location **2** and pull to open the flap **1**.

Depending on the vehicle, to identify the fuses, refer to the fuse allocation label located at the back of the flap **1** and shown on the following pages.



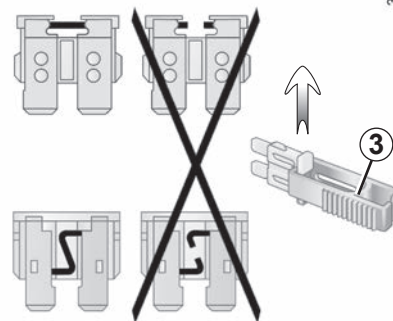
### Tweezers 3

Remove the fuse using the tweezers **3** on the back of the flap.

To remove the fuse from the tweezers, slide the fuse to the side.

It is not advisable to use the free fuse locations.

To comply with current legislation, or as a precaution, you can obtain an emergency kit from your approved dealer containing a set of spare bulbs and fuses.













Check the fuse in question and **replace it**, if necessary, **by a fuse of the same rating**.

If a fuse is fitted with too high a rating, it may cause the electrical circuit to overheat (risk of fire) in the event of an item of equipment using an excessive amount of current.

# FUSES (2/3)

## Allocation of fuses (the presence of certain fuse depends on the vehicle equipment level)

Symbol	Allocation
	Windscreen washer
	Front headlights
	Hazard warning lights
	Horn
	Towbar socket
	Brake lights, passenger compartment central unit
	Screen washer, rear lights
	Direction indicators
	Accessories socket
	Electric windows

Use the fuse allocation label in the storage compartment to identify the fuses.

Certain fuses should only be replaced by a qualified professional. These fuses are not listed on the label.

Only change the fuses represented on the label.

## FUSES (3/3)




### Fuses in engine compartment A

Some functions are protected by fuses located in the engine compartment (unit **A**).

However, because of their reduced accessibility, **we advise you to have your fuses replaced by an approved Dealer.**



Please note when working close to the engine that it may be hot. In addition, the engine cooling fan may

start at any moment. The  warning light in the engine compartment reminds you of this.

**Risk of injury.**

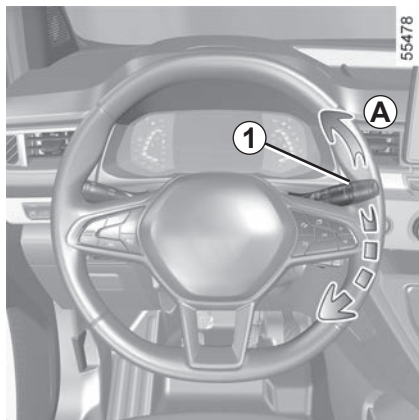


Before carrying out any action in the engine compartment, you must switch off the ignition. ➔ 2.4 or

➔ 2.5.



## WIPER BLADES: replacement (1/2)

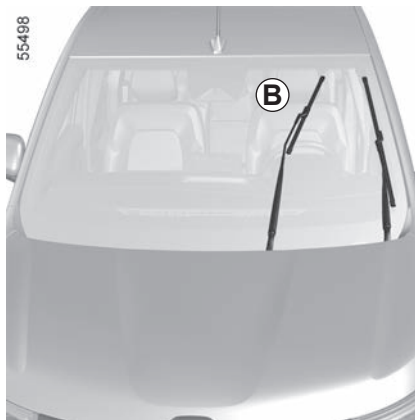


### Replacing the windscreen wiper blades 2

To replace the wipers, first put them in the service position **B**.

#### With the ignition on and the engine stopped:

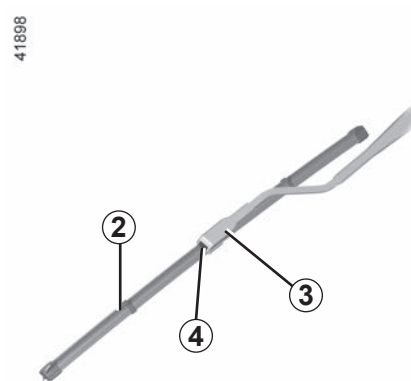
- move the stalk twice in succession **1** to position **A** (single sweep): the wiper blades will stop in the service position **B** away from the bonnet;
- lift the wiper arm **3**;
- lower the **4** tab then remove the blade **2**.



### To refit

To refit the wiper blade **2**, insert it in its housing in the arm **3**, then clip it until you hear a click. Make sure that the blade is correctly locked in position.

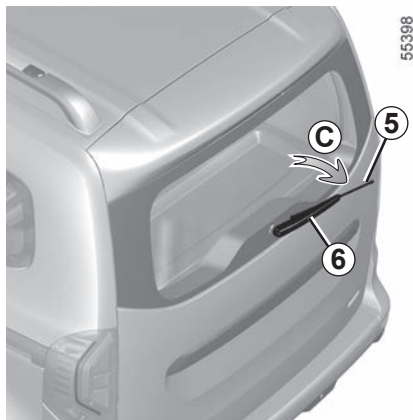
To return the blades to lowered position, make sure that the blades are folded down onto the windscreen then set the **1** stalk to position **A** (single sweep): the windscreen wiper blades will fold into the bonnet when the ignition is switched on.



Check the condition of the wiper blades. You are responsible for their service life:

- clean the blades, windscreen and rear screen regularly with soapy water;
- do not use them when the windscreen or rear screen are dry;
- free them from the windscreen or rear screen when they have not been used for a long time.

## WIPER BLADES: replacement (2/2)



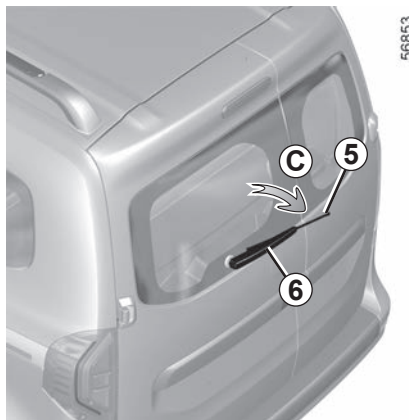
### Rear screen wiper blade 5

Stalk in stop position (deactivated):

- lift the wiper arm 6;
- turn the blade horizontally 5 (movement C) until it unclips;
- remove the blade by pulling it.

### To refit

To refit the wiper blade, proceed in reverse order to removal. Make sure that the blade is correctly locked in position.



Check the condition of the wiper blades.

- clean the blades, windscreen and rear screen regularly with soapy water;
- do not use them when the windscreen or rear screen are dry;
- free them from the windscreen or rear screen when they have not been used for a long time.



– In frosty weather, make sure that the wiper blades are not stuck by ice (to avoid the risk of the motor overheating).

- Check the condition of the wiper blades. Replace the wiper blades as soon as they begin to lose efficiency (approximately once a year).

When changing the blade, when it has been removed, do not let the wiper arm fall against the window: risk of breaking the window.



Before changing the rear wiper blade, make sure the stalk is in the stop position (deactivated).

**Risk of injury.**

## TOWING: breakdown recovery (1/2)

Before carrying out any towing, position the gearbox in neutral position (position **N** on vehicles equipped with an automatic gearbox), unlock the steering column then release the parking brake.

### Steering column unlocking

Insert the key into the ignition, set to "On" ON **2** position or, depending on the vehicle, with the card in the passenger compartment, press the engine start button for approximately **two seconds**.

Reposition the lever to neutral (position **N** for vehicles fitted with an automatic gearbox).

The steering column unlocks, the accessory functions are powered: you can use the vehicle's lights (direction indicators, brake lights, etc.). At night the vehicle must have its lights on.

Depending on the vehicle, once you have finished towing, press the engine start button twice (risk of running down the battery).

The speed specified by current legislation for towing must always be observed. If you are driving the towing vehicle, do not exceed the permissible towing weight for your vehicle. ➡ 6.10.

### Towing a vehicle fitted with an automatic gearbox

Transport the vehicle on a trailer or tow it with the front wheels off the ground.

**In exceptional circumstances**, you may tow it with all four wheels on the ground, only in a forward gear, with the gearbox in neutral position **N**, over a maximum distance of 50 miles (80 km) and not exceeding a speed of 16 mph (25 km/h).

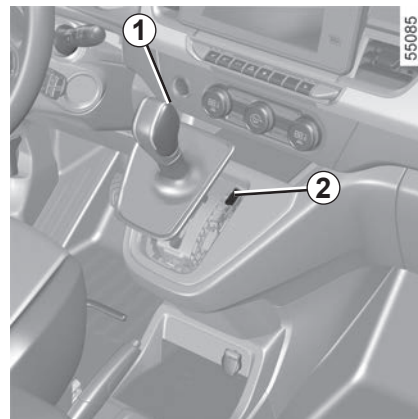


When the engine is stopped, steering and braking assistance are not operational.



Leave the card in the vehicle during towing.

**Risk of the steering column locking.**

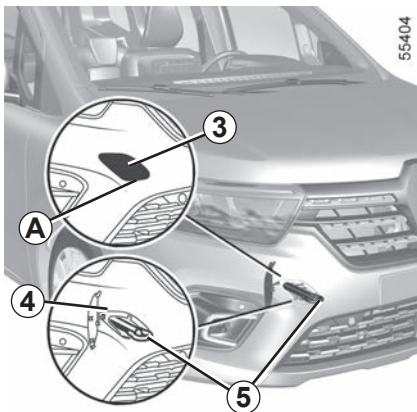


When starting, if the lever is locked in position **P** even though you are pressing the brake pedal, the lever can be released manually in order to unlock the drive wheels.

To do this, unclip the base of the gaiter and press the **2** button while simultaneously pressing the **1** button on the lever to unlock the lever and shift to position **N**.

Contact an authorised dealer as soon as possible.

## TOWING: breakdown recovery (2/2)

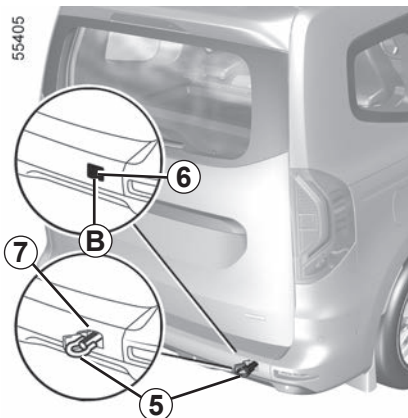


Only use the front 4 and rear 7 towing points (never use the driveshafts or any other part of the vehicle). These towing points may only be used for pulling. They must never be used for lifting the vehicle directly or indirectly.



Ensure that the towing eye is bolted correctly.

**Risk of losing the towed object.**



### Access to towing points

#### Front towing point 4

Unclip the cover 3 by inserting a flat-blade screwdriver or similar into the groove A.

#### Rear towing point 7

Unclip the cover 6 by inserting a flat-blade screwdriver or similar into the groove B.

**Tighten the towing hitch 5 fully:** first by hand until it stops, then finish by locking it with the wheel brace or, depending on the vehicle, the lever.

Only use the towing hitch 5 and the wheelbrace or lever provided with the tools. ➔ 5.8.



– Use a rigid towing bar. If a rope or cable is used (where the law allows this), the vehicle being towed must be able to brake.

- A vehicle must not be towed if it is not fit to be driven.
- Avoid accelerating or braking suddenly when towing, as this may result in damage being caused to the vehicle.
- In all cases, it is advisable not to exceed **15.5 mph (25 km/h)**.



Do not leave the tools unsecured inside the vehicle as they may come loose under braking.

## OPERATING FAULTS (1/8)

### Using the card

The card does not lock or unlock the doors.

### POSSIBLE CAUSES

Card battery is flat.

Use of appliances operating on the same frequency as the card (mobile phone, etc.).

Vehicle located in a high electromagnetic radiation zone.

Vehicle battery flat.

The message "Place card on zone + START" appears on the instrument panel.

The vehicle is started.

Desynchronisation of the card

### WHAT TO DO

Replace the battery. You will still be able to lock/unlock and start your vehicle. ➡ 1.29 and ➡ 2.4 or ➡ 2.5.

Stop using the devices or use the key provided. ➡ 1.29.

Use the key that is built into the card ➡ 1.29.

Place the card in the placement area ➡ 2.5 then press the START button.

With the engine running, the card's locking/unlocking device is blocked. Turn off the ignition.

Unlock the driver's door by inserting the key integrated in the card into the door lock ➡ 1.29 then place the card in the placement area ➡ 2.5 and press the START button to synchronise the card.

## OPERATING FAULTS (2/8)

The following advice will enable you to carry out quick, temporary repairs. For safety reasons you should always contact an approved dealer as soon as possible.

Using the remote control	POSSIBLE CAUSES	ACTION REQUIRED
The remote control does not lock or unlock the doors.	The remote control battery is flat.	Use the emergency key.
	Use of appliances operating on the same frequency as the remote control (mobile phone, etc.).	Stop using the devices or use the key.
	Vehicle located in a high electromagnetic radiation zone. Discharged battery.	Replace the battery. You will still be able to lock/unlock and start your vehicle. ➡ 1.29 and ➡ 2.4 or ➡ 2.5.
	The vehicle is started.	With the engine running, the key's locking/unlocking device is blocked. Turn off the ignition.
	Desynchronisation of the remote control	Unlock the driver's door by inserting the key into the door lock ➡ 1.29, then start the engine to synchronise the remote control ➡ 2.4.

## OPERATING FAULTS (3/8)

The starter is activated	POSSIBLE CAUSES	ACTION REQUIRED
The instrument panel indicator lights are weak or fail to light up and the starter does not turn.	Battery terminals not tight, battery terminals disconnected or oxidised.	Retighten or reconnect the terminals, or clean them if they are oxidised.
	Discharged battery or not operational.	Connect another battery to the faulty battery. ➡ 5.31 or replace the battery if necessary. Do not push the vehicle if the steering column is locked.
The engine will not start.	Faulty circuit.	Consult an approved dealer.
	Starting conditions are not fulfilled. The "hands-free" card does not work.	➡ 2.4 or ➡ 2.5. Place the card in the recess provided for this purpose on the centre console ➡ 2.4 or ➡ 2.5.
With the vehicle stationary, engine cold, the engine's idle speed is high.	Petrol version, this is not necessarily a fault. This may be caused by the increase in the engine temperature.	The engine's idle speed should decrease after about one minute. Otherwise, this may be caused by another fault. Call an approved Dealer.
The engine cannot be switched off.	Card not detected.	Place the card in the recess provided for this purpose on the centre console. Press and hold the start button.
	Electronic fault.	Press the start button 3 times quickly or press and hold.
The steering column remains locked.	Steering wheel locked.	Move the steering wheel while pressing the engine start button (or, depending on the vehicle, operating the ignition key) ➡ 2.4.
	Faulty electrical circuit.	Consult an approved dealer.

## OPERATING FAULTS (4/8)

On the road	POSSIBLE CAUSES	WHAT TO DO
Vibrations.	Tyres not inflated to correct pressures, incorrectly balanced or damaged.	Check the tyre pressures: if this is not the problem, have them checked by an approved Dealer.
White smoke from the exhaust.	<p>In the diesel version, this is not necessarily a fault. Smoke may be caused by particle filter regeneration.</p> <p>Petrol version, this is not necessarily a fault. Depending on the climate conditions (cold, humidity etc.), smoke may be produced under hard vehicle acceleration.</p>	<p>➡ 2.14.</p> <p>Reduce the engine speed and avoid sudden acceleration to gradually make the smoke disappear. Otherwise, this may be caused by another fault. Consult an approved dealer.</p>
Smoke under the bonnet.	Short-circuit or cooling system leak.	Stop, switch off the ignition, stand away from the vehicle and contact an approved dealer.
The oil pressure warning light comes on:		
while cornering or braking,	The level is too low.	Top up the engine oil ➡ 4.5.
is slow to go out or remains lit up under acceleration.	Loss of oil pressure.	Stop the vehicle and contact an approved Dealer.



## OPERATING FAULTS (5/8)

On the road	POSSIBLE CAUSES	WHAT TO DO
Steering becomes heavy.	Assistance overheating.	Drive carefully at reduced speed, be aware of the level of force in the steering wheel needed to turn the wheels.
	Fault with the electric assistance motor.	Consult an authorised dealer.
	Fault in the assistance system	
The engine is overheating. The coolant temperature indicator is in the warning zone and warning light <b>STOP</b> comes on.	Engine cooling fan not working.	Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and contact an approved dealer.
	Coolant leaks.	Check the coolant reservoir: it should contain fluid. If there is no coolant, consult an authorised dealer as soon as possible.
Coolant boiling in the coolant reservoir.	Mechanical fault: damaged cylinder head gasket.	Stop the engine. Contact an approved dealer.



**Radiator:** if there is a significant lack of coolant, remember that it must never be topped up using cold coolant when the engine is very hot. After any procedure on the vehicle which has involved even partial draining of the cooling system, it must be refilled with a new mixture prepared in the correct proportions. Reminder: only products approved by our Technical Department may be used for this purpose.

# OPERATING FAULTS (6/8)

Stopped	POSSIBLE CAUSES	WHAT TO DO
The engine cooling fan starts to run after the ignition is switched off.	This is not necessarily a fault. The engine cooling fan group may start to run in order to regulate the engine temperature. This operation may last several minutes after the engine is switched off.	
	The engine cooling fan runs for more than 10 minutes after the engine is switched off.	Consult an approved dealer.

## OPERATING FAULTS (7/8)

Electrical equipment	POSSIBLE CAUSES	WHAT TO DO
The wipers do not work.	Wiper blades stuck.	Free the blades before using the wipers.
	Faulty electrical circuit.	Consult an approved dealer.
	Fuse damaged.	Replace the fuse or have it replaced ➡ 5.35.
The wiper does not stop.	Faulty electrical controls.	Consult an approved dealer.
Direction indicators flashing more quickly.	Blown rear bulb.	➡ 5.18.
The direction indicators do not work.	Faulty electrical circuit or control.	Consult an approved dealer.
	Fuse damaged.	Replace the fuse or have it replaced ➡ 5.35.
The lights do not come on or go off.	Faulty electrical circuit or control.	Consult an approved dealer.
	Fuse damaged.	Replace the fuse or have it replaced ➡ 5.35.

## OPERATING FAULTS (8/8)

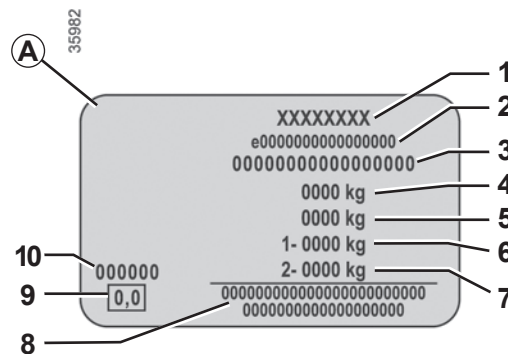
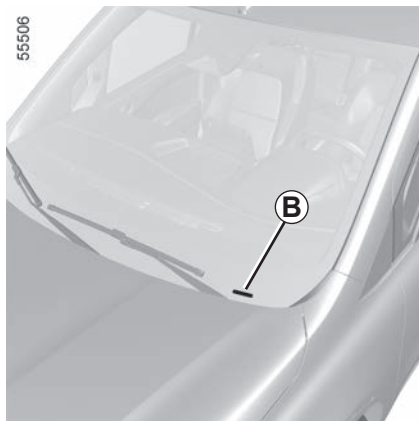
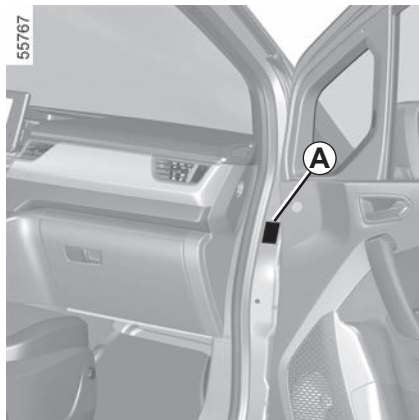
Electrical equipment	POSSIBLE CAUSES	WHAT TO DO
Traces of condensation in the headlights or rear lights.	<p>Traces of condensation may be a natural phenomenon caused by variations in temperature and humidity.</p> <p>In this case, the traces will disappear slowly once the lights are switched on.</p>	
The front seat belt reminder light comes on when the seat belts are fastened.	An object is stuck between the floor and the seat and is disrupting the operation of the sensor.	Remove all objects from underneath the front seats.



# ***Section 6: Technical specifications***

Vehicle identification plate . . . . .	6.2
Technical Information for the emergency services . . . . .	6.3
Engine identification . . . . .	6.4
Dimensions . . . . .	6.5
Engine specifications . . . . .	6.7
Weights . . . . .	6.10
Towing weights . . . . .	6.10
Replacement parts and repairs . . . . .	6.11
Service sheets . . . . .	6.12
Anticorrosion check . . . . .	6.18

## 55767



**The presence and location of the information depends on the vehicle.**

- 1 Manufacturer name.
- 2 EC design number or approval number.
- 3 Identification number.

- 4 MMAC (Maximum Authorised Mass).
- 5 MTR (Gross Train Weight: vehicle fully loaded, with trailer).
- 6 MMTA (Maximum Permissible Weight) front axle.
- 7 MMTA rear axle.
- 8 Reserved for related or additional entries.
- 9 Not used.
- 10 Paint reference (colour code).

## TECHNICAL INFORMATION FOR THE EMERGENCY SERVICES



The QR Code on the **A** label allows emergency workers using a tablet or smartphone to immediately access the technical information useful for working on the vehicle in the event of an accident.

Ensure that the **A** label is always visible and present on the windscreen as well as the rear screen.

**Any modification or damage would prevent access to the information.**

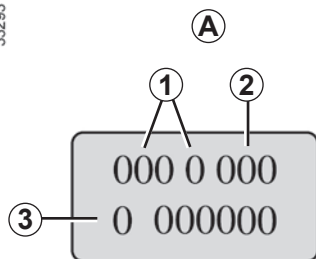


**Note:** vehicles without rear windows have only the front label affixed.



# ENGINE IDENTIFICATION

33293

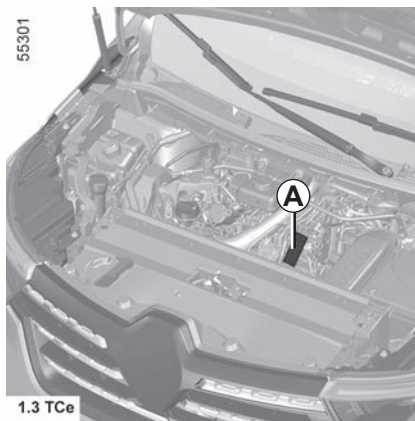


**Please quote the engine identification information in area A in all correspondence or orders.**

(Location varies depending on engine)

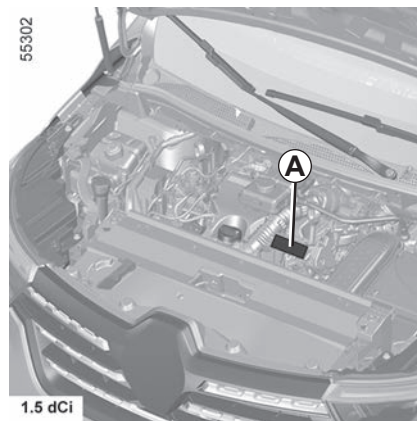
- 1** Engine type.
- 2** Engine suffix.
- 3** Engine serial number.

55301



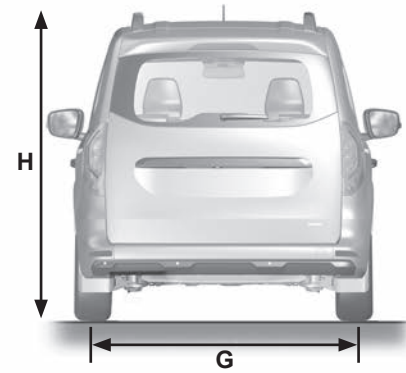
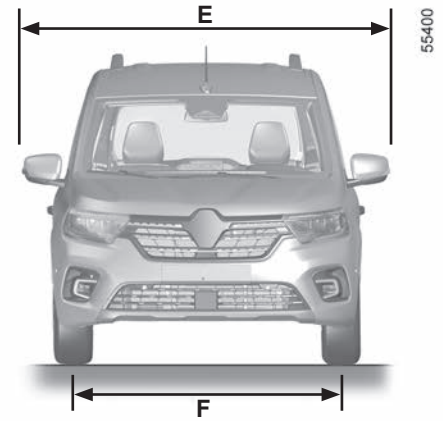
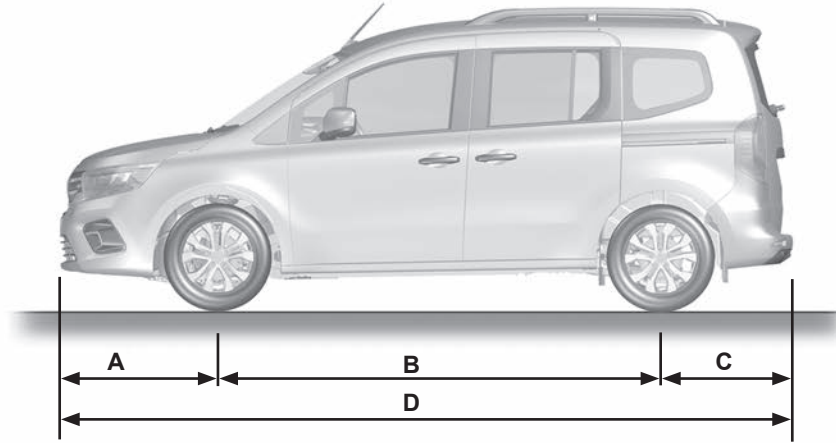
1.3 TCe

55302



1.5 dCi

## DIMENSIONS (in metres) (1/2)



## DIMENSIONS (in metres) (2/2)

<b>A</b>		0,960
<b>B</b>		2,716
<b>C</b>		0,810
<b>D</b>		4,487
<b>E</b>		2,159
<b>F</b>		1,584
<b>G</b>		1,595
<b>H (unladen)</b>	Estate version	1,8
	Van version	1,820






<b>Turning circles between kerbs</b>	10,9
<b>Turning circles between walls</b>	11,2

**Caution:** if the vehicle is fitted with roof bars, the height must be increased by 0,052 m (the bars cannot be removed).

## ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS (1/3)

Versions	1.3 TCe	1.5 dCi
<b>Engine type</b> (see engine plate)	H5H Turbo	K9K Turbo
<b>Cubic capacity</b> (cc)	1 332	1461
<b>Type of fuel</b> <b>Octane rating</b>	<p>Petrol</p> <p>You <b>must</b> use unleaded petrol with the octane rating stated on the label inside the fuel filler flap. ➡ 1.147.</p>	<p>Diesel</p> <p>The label located in the fuel filler flap indicates the authorised fuels.</p>

## ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS (2/3)

Versions	1.3 TCe	1.5 dCi
<b>Engine type</b> (see engine plate)	H5H Turbo	K9K Turbo
<b>Cubic capacity</b> (cc)	1 332	1461
<b>Fuel types that meet European standards and are compatible with the engines of vehicles sold in Europe</b> (in any other case, contact an Approved Dealer).	<div>  <p>Unleaded petrol compliant with standard <b>EN 228</b> contains up to 5% ethanol in volume.</p> </div> <div>  <p>Unleaded petrol compliant with standard <b>EN 228</b> contains up to 10% ethanol in volume.</p> </div>	<div>  <p>Diesel fuel compliant with standard <b>EN 590</b> contains up to 7% fatty acid methyl ester in volume.</p> </div> <div>  <p>Diesel fuel compliant with standard <b>EN 16734</b> contains up to 10% fatty acid methyl ester in volume.</p> </div> <div>  <p>Diesel fuel compliant with standard <b>EN 15940</b> contains up to 7% acid methyl ester in volume.</p> </div>

## ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS (3/3)

<b>Versions</b>	<b>1.3 TCe</b>	<b>1.5 dCi</b>
<b>Engine type</b> (see engine plate)	H5H Turbo	K9K Turbo
<b>Cubic capacity (cc)</b>	1 332	1461
<b>Spark plugs</b>	<p>Only use the spark plugs specified for your vehicle's engine.</p> <p>The type should be marked on a label affixed inside the engine compartment. If it is not then contact an approved Dealer.</p> <p>Fitting spark plugs other than those specified may damage the engine.</p>	—

## WEIGHTS (in kg)

The weights indicated for a basic vehicle without options: they vary depending on your vehicle's equipment. Consult your approved Dealer.

Maximum Authorised Mass (MMAC) Maximum permissible weight (MMTA) Gross Train Weight (MTR)	Van version	Estate versions
	Weights indicated on the vehicle identification plate ➡ 6.2	
Braked Trailer Weight*	found by calculating: <b>MTR - MMAC</b>	
Unbraked Trailer Weight*	685 kg	750 kg
Permissible nose weight*	75 kg	
Maximum permissible load on roof	➡ 3.44, ➡ 3.46	

### \* Towing weight (Towing a caravan, boat, etc.)

Towing is prohibited when the MTR-MMAC calculation is equal to zero, or when the MTR is equal to zero (or is not listed) on the identification plate.

- It is important to respect local towing regulations in force, specifically those set out in the Highway Code. Please contact your authorised dealer about adapting any towing equipment.
- When towing, under no circumstances may **the total train weight (vehicle + trailer) be exceeded**. However the following is permitted:
  - rear axle MMTA exceeded by no more than 15%,
  - maximum MMAC exceeded by no more than 10% or 100 kg (whichever is reached first).

In either case, the maximum speed of the vehicle and trailer must not exceed 48 mph (80 km/h) (van versions) or 60 mph (100 km/h) (estate versions) and the tyre pressure must be increased by 0.2 bar (3 PSI).
- The engine output and climbing capability are reduced with altitude. We recommend that the maximum load be reduced by 10% at an altitude of 1,000 metres and by an additional 10% for each 1,000 metres thereafter.

## REPLACEMENT PARTS AND REPAIRS

Original parts are based on strict specifications and are subject to highly-specialised tests. Therefore, they are of at least the same level of quality as the parts fitted originally.

If you always fit genuine replacement parts to your vehicle, you will ensure that it performs well. Furthermore, repairs carried out within the manufacturer's Network using original parts are guaranteed according to the conditions set out on the reverse of the repair order.



# SERVICE SHEETS (1/6)

VIN: .....

Date:                      Miles (Km):                      Invoice number:		Comments/miscellaneous
<b>Type of operation:</b> Service <input type="checkbox"/> ..... <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Stamp</b>	
<b>Anti-corrosion check:</b> OK <input type="checkbox"/> Not OK* <input type="checkbox"/> *See specific page		
Date:                      Miles (Km):                      Invoice number:		Comments/miscellaneous
<b>Type of operation:</b> Service <input type="checkbox"/> ..... <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Stamp</b>	
<b>Anti-corrosion check:</b> OK <input type="checkbox"/> Not OK* <input type="checkbox"/> *See specific page		
Date:                      Miles (Km):                      Invoice number:		Comments/miscellaneous
<b>Type of operation:</b> Service <input type="checkbox"/> ..... <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Stamp</b>	
<b>Anti-corrosion check:</b> OK <input type="checkbox"/> Not OK* <input type="checkbox"/> *See specific page		

## SERVICE SHEETS (2/6)

VIN: .....

Date:                      Miles (Km):                      Invoice number:		Comments/miscellaneous
<b>Type of operation:</b> Service <input type="checkbox"/> ..... <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Stamp</b>	
<b>Anti-corrosion check:</b> OK <input type="checkbox"/> Not OK* <input type="checkbox"/> *See specific page		
Date:                      Miles (Km):                      Invoice number:		Comments/miscellaneous
<b>Type of operation:</b> Service <input type="checkbox"/> ..... <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Stamp</b>	
<b>Anti-corrosion check:</b> OK <input type="checkbox"/> Not OK* <input type="checkbox"/> *See specific page		
Date:                      Miles (Km):                      Invoice number:		Comments/miscellaneous
<b>Type of operation:</b> Service <input type="checkbox"/> ..... <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Stamp</b>	
<b>Anti-corrosion check:</b> OK <input type="checkbox"/> Not OK* <input type="checkbox"/> *See specific page		

SERVICE SHEETS (3/6)

VIN: .....

Date:                      Miles (Km):                      Invoice number:		Comments/miscellaneous
<b>Type of operation:</b> Service <input type="checkbox"/> ..... <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Stamp</b>	
<b>Anti-corrosion check:</b> OK <input type="checkbox"/> Not OK* <input type="checkbox"/> *See specific page		
Date:                      Miles (Km):                      Invoice number:		Comments/miscellaneous
<b>Type of operation:</b> Service <input type="checkbox"/> ..... <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Stamp</b>	
<b>Anti-corrosion check:</b> OK <input type="checkbox"/> Not OK* <input type="checkbox"/> *See specific page		
Date:                      Miles (Km):                      Invoice number:		Comments/miscellaneous
<b>Type of operation:</b> Service <input type="checkbox"/> ..... <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Stamp</b>	
<b>Anti-corrosion check:</b> OK <input type="checkbox"/> Not OK* <input type="checkbox"/> *See specific page		

## SERVICE SHEETS (4/6)

VIN: .....

Date:                      Miles (Km):		Invoice number:	Comments/miscellaneous
<b>Type of operation:</b> Service <input type="checkbox"/> ..... <input type="checkbox"/>		Stamp	
<b>Anti-corrosion check:</b> OK <input type="checkbox"/> Not OK* <input type="checkbox"/> *See specific page			
Date:                      Miles (Km):		Invoice number:	Comments/miscellaneous
<b>Type of operation:</b> Service <input type="checkbox"/> ..... <input type="checkbox"/>		Stamp	
<b>Anti-corrosion check:</b> OK <input type="checkbox"/> Not OK* <input type="checkbox"/> *See specific page			
Date:                      Miles (Km):		Invoice number:	Comments/miscellaneous
<b>Type of operation:</b> Service <input type="checkbox"/> ..... <input type="checkbox"/>		Stamp	
<b>Anti-corrosion check:</b> OK <input type="checkbox"/> Not OK* <input type="checkbox"/> *See specific page			

SERVICE SHEETS (5/6)

VIN: .....

Date:                      Miles (Km):                      Invoice number:		Comments/miscellaneous
<b>Type of operation:</b> Service <input type="checkbox"/> ..... <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Stamp</b>	
<b>Anti-corrosion check:</b> OK <input type="checkbox"/> Not OK* <input type="checkbox"/> *See specific page		
Date:                      Miles (Km):                      Invoice number:		Comments/miscellaneous
<b>Type of operation:</b> Service <input type="checkbox"/> ..... <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Stamp</b>	
<b>Anti-corrosion check:</b> OK <input type="checkbox"/> Not OK* <input type="checkbox"/> *See specific page		
Date:                      Miles (Km):                      Invoice number:		Comments/miscellaneous
<b>Type of operation:</b> Service <input type="checkbox"/> ..... <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Stamp</b>	
<b>Anti-corrosion check:</b> OK <input type="checkbox"/> Not OK* <input type="checkbox"/> *See specific page		

## SERVICE SHEETS (6/6)

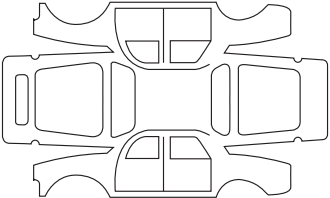
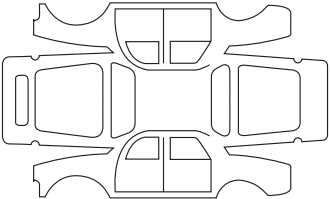
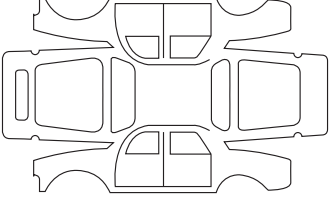
VIN: .....

Date:                      Miles (Km):                      Invoice number:		Comments/miscellaneous
<b>Type of operation:</b> Service <input type="checkbox"/> ..... <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Stamp</b>	
<b>Anti-corrosion check:</b> OK <input type="checkbox"/> Not OK* <input type="checkbox"/> *See specific page		
Date:                      Miles (Km):                      Invoice number:		Comments/miscellaneous
<b>Type of operation:</b> Service <input type="checkbox"/> ..... <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Stamp</b>	
<b>Anti-corrosion check:</b> OK <input type="checkbox"/> Not OK* <input type="checkbox"/> *See specific page		
Date:                      Miles (Km):                      Invoice number:		Comments/miscellaneous
<b>Type of operation:</b> Service <input type="checkbox"/> ..... <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Stamp</b>	
<b>Anti-corrosion check:</b> OK <input type="checkbox"/> Not OK* <input type="checkbox"/> *See specific page		

# ANTICORROSION CHECK (1/5)

If the continuation of the warranty is subject to repair, it is indicated below.

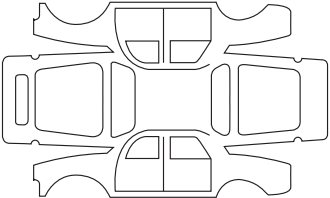
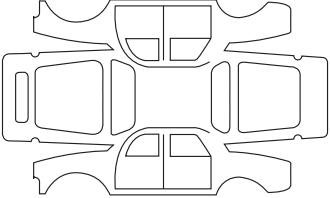
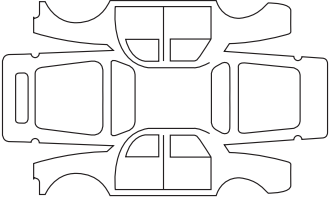
VIN: .....

Corrosion repair operation to be carried out:		Stamp
Date of repair:		
Repair to be carried out:		Stamp
Date of repair:		
Repair to be carried out:		Stamp
Date of repair:		

# ANTICORROSION CHECK (2/5)

If the continuation of the warranty is subject to repair, it is indicated below.

VIN: .....

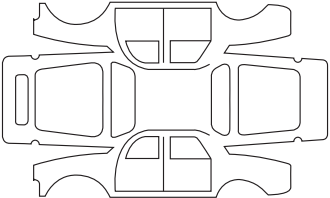
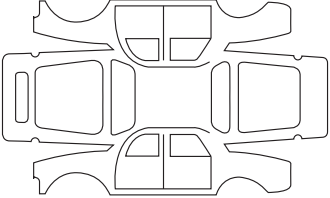
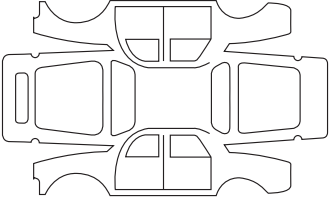
Corrosion repair operation to be carried out:		Stamp
Date of repair:		
Repair to be carried out:		Stamp
Date of repair:		
Repair to be carried out:		Stamp
Date of repair:		



# ANTICORROSION CHECK (3/5)

If the continuation of the warranty is subject to repair, it is indicated below.

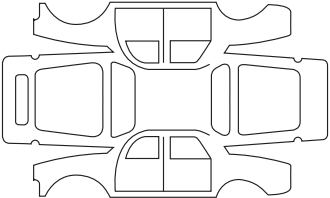
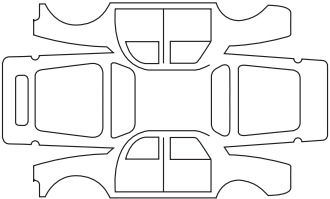
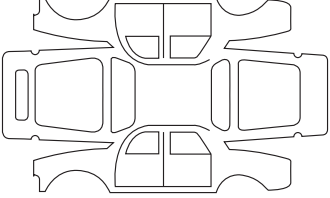
VIN: .....

Corrosion repair operation to be carried out:		Stamp
Date of repair:		
Repair to be carried out:		Stamp
Date of repair:		
Repair to be carried out:		Stamp
Date of repair:		

# ANTICORROSION CHECK (4/5)

If the continuation of the warranty is subject to repair, it is indicated below.

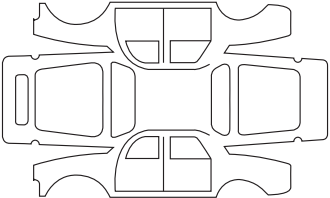
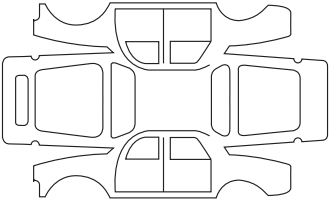
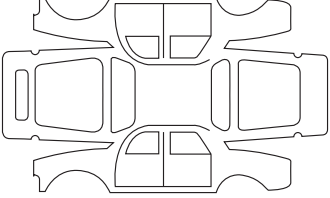
VIN: .....

Corrosion repair operation to be carried out:		Stamp
Date of repair:		
Repair to be carried out:		Stamp
Date of repair:		
Repair to be carried out:		Stamp
Date of repair:		

# ANTICORROSION CHECK (5/5)

If the continuation of the warranty is subject to repair, it is indicated below.

VIN: .....

Corrosion repair operation to be carried out:		Stamp
Date of repair:		
Repair to be carried out:		Stamp
Date of repair:		
Repair to be carried out:		Stamp
Date of repair:		

# ALPHABETICAL INDEX (1/8)

## A

ABS ..... 1.100 – 1.101, 2.42 → 2.47  
access  
    vehicle ..... 0.2, 1.2 → 1.21  
    accessories ..... 2.6, 5.34  
accessories - installation ..... 5.34  
accessories socket ..... 3.16, 3.32  
adaptive cruise control ..... 2.105 → 2.117  
AdBlue ..... 1.150 → 1.153  
additional methods of restraint  
    side protection ..... 1.57  
    to the front seat belts ..... 1.50 → 1.55  
    to the rear seat belts ..... 1.56  
additional methods of restraint ..... 1.58  
additional tank capacity ..... 1.110, 1.115  
additional tank filling ..... 1.101  
adjusting your driving position ..... 1.33 → 1.40, 1.43 → 1.49,  
1.134, 3.33  
advanced safety ..... 2.73 → 2.89  
advice on antipollution ..... 1.117, 2.29  
air bag  
    activating the front passenger air bags ..... 1.67, 1.81,  
    1.90 → 1.92  
air bag ..... 1.50 → 1.58, 1.65, 1.67 → 1.80, 1.85, 1.90 → 1.92,  
1.99, 1.117  
air conditioning ..... 3.2 → 3.15  
air vents ..... 3.2 → 3.4  
airbag  
    front passenger airbag deactivation ..... 1.85, 1.90 → 1.92  
airbags ..... 0.6  
anti-corrosion check ..... 6.18 → 6.22  
anti-corrosion protection ..... 4.14  
anti-lock braking system: ABS ..... 2.42 → 2.47  
antipollution  
    advice ..... 2.29

## armrest

    front ..... 1.34, 3.27  
assisted parking ..... 1.102, 2.134 → 2.149  
audible and visual signals ..... 1.93  
AUTO mode ..... 1.133 → 1.135  
automatic gearbox (use) ..... 2.20, 2.150 → 2.153  
automatic gearbox selector lever ..... 2.150 → 2.153  
automatic locking of the doors while driving ..... 1.32

## B

batteries ..... 5.27 → 5.30  
battery  
    breakdown recovery ..... 5.31 – 5.32  
battery ..... 0.8, 1.99, 4.12 – 4.13, 5.31 – 5.32  
battery (remote control) ..... 5.27 – 5.28  
beep ..... 1.118  
blind spot warning signal ..... 2.59 → 2.68  
blind spot: warning signal ..... 2.59 → 2.68  
bonnet ..... 4.2 – 4.3  
brake fluid ..... 4.8  
breakdown recovery ..... 0.9  
bulbs  
    changing ..... 5.16 → 5.21

## C

camera rear view ..... 1.127, 1.129 → 1.132, 2.142 → 2.144  
card ..... 1.7 → 1.21  
card: battery ..... 5.29 – 5.30  
card: use ..... 1.7 → 1.21  
catalytic converter ..... 2.12 → 2.15  
central door locking ..... 1.2 – 1.3, 1.6 → 1.21, 1.29 → 1.32,  
1.119 – 1.120  
changing a bulb ..... 5.16 → 5.21  
changing a wheel ..... 5.11 – 5.12  
changing gear ..... 1.100, 2.16, 2.21 – 2.22, 2.150 → 2.153  
child minder mirror ..... 3.24

## ALPHABETICAL INDEX (2/8)

child restraint/seat .....1.59 – 1.60, 1.62 → 1.89  
child safety..... 0.3, 1.2 – 1.3, 1.22, 1.24, 1.55, 1.59 – 1.60,  
1.62 → 1.92, 3.19 → 3.21  
child seats.....1.59 – 1.60, 1.62 → 1.89  
children ..... 0.3, 1.59 – 1.60, 1.65 → 1.92, 3.19 → 3.21  
cleaning:  
    inside the vehicle ..... 4.17 – 4.18  
clock  
    setting .....1.110, 1.113  
clock ..... 1.122 – 1.123, 1.123  
closing the doors ..... 1.7 → 1.21, 1.23 → 1.32  
configuration menu ..... 1.119 → 1.121  
control instruments ..... 1.98 → 1.102, 1.104 → 1.111,  
1.122 – 1.123, 1.123  
controls  
    doors/opening elements ..... 1.4 – 1.5  
    steering wheel.....3.16 → 3.18  
controls .....0.4, 1.94 → 1.97, 2.96, 2.100  
courtesy light ..... 3.22 – 3.23, 5.22  
courtesy mirrors..... 3.24  
crosswind assist ..... 2.44  
cruise control .....1.102, 2.100 → 2.104  
cruise control-speed limiter.....1.102, 2.96 → 2.104  
customised vehicle settings ..... 1.119 → 1.121  
customising the vehicle settings ..... 1.119 → 1.121

### D

dashboard.....0.4, 1.94 → 1.97  
daytime running lights..... 1.7 → 1.10, 1.120, 1.133 → 1.138  
deadlocking the doors ..... 1.6, 1.22  
demisting  
    rear screen.....3.5, 3.9 → 3.13  
    windscreen.....3.6, 3.9 → 3.13  
dimensions ..... 6.5 – 6.6  
dipstick..... 4.4  
display ..... 1.98 → 1.102, 1.104 → 1.108, 3.16

doors.....1.23 → 1.28, 1.119 – 1.120  
doors and tailgate ..... 1.2 – 1.3, 1.11 → 1.21  
doors/tailgate..... 1.4 – 1.5, 1.7 → 1.21, 1.29 → 1.32  
driver assistance..... 0.5, 2.42, 2.48 → 2.149, 2.156 → 2.158  
driver's position .....0.4, 1.94 → 1.102  
driving  
    0.5, 1.119 – 1.120, 2.2, 2.4 → 2.7, 2.12 → 2.15, 2.17 → 2.28,  
2.22 → 2.28, 2.31 → 2.36, 2.42 → 2.91, 2.96 → 2.104,  
2.134 → 2.154, 2.156 → 2.158  
driving aids  
    adaptive cruise control.....2.105 → 2.117  
driving aids .....0.5, 1.102, 1.120 – 1.121, 2.48 → 2.104,  
2.118 → 2.149, 2.156 → 2.158  
driving position  
    settings .....0.3, 1.43 → 1.49, 1.124  
driving recommendations ..... 2.21 → 2.23, 2.26 → 2.28

### E

ECO driving .....1.101, 2.21 → 2.28  
ECO mode..... 2.21 – 2.22, 2.26, 2.28, 3.11, 3.14  
«ECO» mode function ..... 1.101  
electric beam height adjustment..... 1.139 – 1.140  
electric windows .....3.19 → 3.21  
electronic parking brake .....1.100, 2.17 → 2.20  
electronic stability control: ESC .....2.42 → 2.47  
emergency active braking.....1.102, 2.73 → 2.89  
emergency brake assist.....1.102, 2.42 → 2.47  
emergency braking .....1.102, 2.42 → 2.47  
emergency call .....2.156 → 2.158  
emergency key .....1.7 → 1.10  
emergency lane keep assist .....2.73 → 2.89  
emergency spare wheel ..... 5.2 – 5.3  
energy  
    «ECO» mode ..... 1.101  
engine  
    technical specifications .....6.7 → 6.9

## ALPHABETICAL INDEX (3/8)

engine coolant ..... 1.101, 1.105 – 1.106, 4.7  
engine identification plates ..... 0.7  
engine oil ..... 4.4 → 4.6  
engine oil capacity ..... 4.5 – 4.6  
engine oil level ..... 1.100, 1.103, 4.4 → 4.6  
engine specifications ..... 6.4, 6.7 → 6.9  
engine standby ..... 1.102, 2.8 → 2.11  
engine start/stop button ..... 2.5 → 2.7  
environment ..... 2.30  
equipment  
    fitting ..... 3.43  
equipment  
    multimedia ..... 5.33  
ESC: electronic stability control ..... 1.100, 2.42 → 2.47  
Extended grip ..... 2.47  
external temperature ..... 1.122 – 1.123

### F

fatigue detection warning ..... 2.90 – 2.91  
faults  
    operating faults ..... 1.152 – 1.153, 2.12 → 2.15, 2.20,  
        2.43 → 2.47, 2.50 – 2.51, 2.56 – 2.57, 2.66, 2.88, 2.91,  
        2.95, 2.139, 2.153, 2.158, 3.14, 5.35 → 5.37, 5.42 → 5.49  
    file ..... 1.34  
filling with reagent ..... 1.150 → 1.153  
filter  
    air filter ..... 4.9  
    diesel filter ..... 1.117  
    oil filter ..... 4.5 – 4.6  
    particle filter ..... 1.101, 2.13  
    passenger compartment filter ..... 4.9  
fitting a radio ..... 5.33  
fittings ..... 3.25 → 3.31  
flap  
    fuel flap ..... 0.2  
front seat adjustment ..... 1.34 → 1.40

front seats  
    adjustment ..... 1.33 → 1.40, 1.43  
    fuel  
        advice on fuel ..... 2.21 → 2.28, 2.22 → 2.28  
        consumption ..... 2.21 → 2.23, 2.26, 2.28  
        filling ..... 1.147 → 1.149  
        quality ..... 1.147 → 1.149  
fuel consumption ..... 1.110, 2.21 → 2.23, 2.26 – 2.27, 3.14  
fuel economy ..... 2.21 → 2.28, 2.22 → 2.28  
fuel filler cap ..... 1.4 – 1.5, 1.147 → 1.149  
fuel level ..... 1.98 → 1.102, 1.101, 1.104 → 1.107, 1.147  
fuel repriming ..... 2.14  
fuel tank  
    capacity ..... 1.147  
fuel tank capacity ..... 1.147 → 1.149  
fuses ..... 0.9, 5.35 → 5.37

### G

gear lever ..... 2.16, 2.150  
grab handle ..... 3.24  
grip control ..... 2.47

### H

handbrake ..... 2.16 – 2.17  
hands-free telephone integrated control ..... 3.16 → 3.18  
«hands-free» card: battery ..... 5.29 – 5.30  
hazard warning lights signal ..... 1.93  
headlight beam adjustment ..... 1.139 – 1.140  
headrest  
    rear ..... 3.33  
headrest ..... 1.33, 3.33  
heated seats ..... 1.34 → 1.40  
heated windscreen ..... 3.9 → 3.13  
heating and air conditioning system ..... 3.5 → 3.14  
heating system ..... 3.5 → 3.13  
Hill Start Assist ..... 2.42 → 2.47, 2.46

## ALPHABETICAL INDEX (4/8)

horn ..... 1.93  
horn:  
    flash ..... 1.93  
hubcap tool ..... 5.8 → 5.10

### I

idle speed ..... 2.155  
ignition switch ..... 2.3, 2.17 → 2.20  
indicators  
    bulb replacement ..... 5.20 – 5.21  
    on the instrument panel ..... 1.108  
    overspeed warning ..... 1.108  
indicators ..... 1.93, 2.63, 5.16 → 5.21  
indicators:  
    direction indicators ..... 1.93  
    instrument panel .....  
    1.98 → 1.102, 1.104 → 1.111, 1.152 – 1.153, 2.8 → 2.11,  
    2.13 → 2.28, 2.22 → 2.29, 2.33 → 2.36  
    information and general advice  
    welcome aboard your vehicle ..... 0.1  
instrument panel .....  
0.4, 1.98 → 1.102, 1.104 → 1.118, 1.120 – 1.121, 2.8 → 2.11,  
2.16 → 2.28, 2.22 → 2.29, 2.33 → 2.36  
instrument panel messages ..... 1.109 → 1.118, 1.152 – 1.153,  
2.8 → 2.11, 2.13 – 2.15, 2.17 → 2.20, 2.33 → 2.36  
interior lighting:  
    changing bulbs ..... 5.22 → 5.26  
interior trim  
    maintenance ..... 4.17 – 4.18  
Isofix ..... 1.62 → 1.64, 1.66, 1.81 → 1.89

### J

jack ..... 5.3, 5.8 – 5.9, 5.11 – 5.12

### K

key/remote control  
    deadlocking ..... 1.6  
keys ..... 1.2 → 1.6

### L

lane departure warning ..... 1.102, 2.48 → 2.58  
Lane Keeping Assist ..... 2.53 → 2.58, 2.73 → 2.89  
lane keeping: assistance ..... 2.53 → 2.58, 2.73 → 2.89  
level information  
    fuel ..... 1.108  
levels ..... 0.8, 4.7 → 4.9  
levels:  
    brake fluid ..... 4.8  
    coolant ..... 4.7  
    windscreen washer reservoir ..... 4.9  
lifting the vehicle  
    changing a wheel ..... 5.11 – 5.12  
lighting  
    exterior ..... 0.2  
    glovebox ..... 5.22 → 5.26  
lighting:  
    exterior ..... 1.93, 1.133 → 1.140  
    instrument panel ..... 1.133 → 1.138  
    interior ..... 3.22 – 3.23  
    see-me-home ..... 1.119 – 1.120, 1.137  
lights  
    adjustment ..... 1.139 – 1.140  
    changing bulbs ..... 5.16 – 5.17  
    front ..... 5.16 – 5.17  
lights:  
    adjusting ..... 1.139 – 1.140  
    adjustment of headlight beam height ..... 1.139 – 1.140  
    brake lights ..... 5.18 → 5.21  
    dipped beam headlights ..... 1.99, 1.133 – 1.134,  
    1.136 – 1.137, 5.16 – 5.17

## ALPHABETICAL INDEX (5/8)

direction indicators ..... 1.93, 1.99, 5.16 → 5.18  
fog lights ..... 1.99, 1.133 → 1.138, 1.138  
hazard warning ..... 1.93  
main beam headlights ..... 1.99, 1.133 → 1.135, 5.16  
number plate lights ..... 5.19 – 5.20  
side lights ..... 1.133, 1.137, 5.16 → 5.18  
lights-on warning buzzer ..... 1.23, 1.136  
load permitted on the roof ..... 6.10  
locking ..... 1.44 → 1.49  
locking the doors ..... 1.4 – 1.5, 1.7 → 1.21, 1.29 → 1.32,  
1.119 – 1.120  
locking/unlocking the opening elements  
map ..... 1.7 → 1.10  
locking/unlocking the opening elements ..... 1.6  
luggage compartment lighting  
changing bulbs ..... 5.22  
luggage retaining net ..... 3.37

### M

maintenance ..... 1.152, 2.29, 3.14  
maintenance:  
bodywork ..... 4.14 → 4.16  
interior trim ..... 4.17 – 4.18  
mechanical ..... 4.4, 4.12 – 4.13, 6.12 → 6.17  
mileage before service ..... 1.110, 1.114 – 1.115  
map  
hands-free ..... 1.11 → 1.21  
map reading lights ..... 3.22 – 3.23  
menu for customising the vehicle settings ..... 1.109,  
1.119 → 1.121  
methods of restraint in addition to the seat belts ... 1.50 → 1.58  
mileage before service ..... 1.110, 1.114 – 1.115  
Motorway and Traffic assistant ..... 2.118 → 2.133  
multimedia (equipment) ..... 3.16 → 3.18  
multimedia equipment ..... 1.103, 1.106, 1.119, 1.122, 1.136,  
3.16 → 3.18

### N

navigation ..... 3.16 → 3.18  
navigation system ..... 3.16 → 3.18

### O

oil change ..... 4.5 – 4.6  
opening the doors ..... 1.23 → 1.32  
opening/closing  
luggage compartment ..... 1.4 – 1.5  
operating faults  
card battery ..... 5.29 – 5.30  
remote control batteries ..... 5.27 – 5.28  
operating faults ..... 1.3, 1.32, 1.34 → 1.40, 1.52, 1.92,  
1.98 → 1.102, 1.109 – 1.110, 1.117 – 1.118, 1.135 – 1.136,  
1.142, 1.152 – 1.153, 2.6, 2.11 → 2.15, 2.20, 2.43 → 2.47,  
2.50 – 2.51, 2.56 – 2.57, 2.66, 2.88, 2.91, 2.95, 2.112, 2.139,  
2.153, 2.158, 3.14, 3.21, 5.35 → 5.37, 5.42 → 5.49  
operation ..... 2.150  
overspeed buzzer ..... 1.104, 1.107  
overspeed warning ..... 1.102, 2.92 → 2.96

### P

paint  
maintenance ..... 4.14 → 4.16  
parking assistance: assisted parking ..... 2.134 → 2.149  
parking brake ..... 1.116, 2.17 → 2.20  
parking distance control 1.120 – 1.121, 2.134 → 2.141, 2.139,  
2.142 → 2.144  
partition ..... 1.41 – 1.42  
power-assisted steering ..... 1.124  
precautions during use ..... 1.141 → 1.144  
pretensioners ..... 1.50 → 1.55  
puncture ..... 0.9, 1.118, 5.2 → 5.9, 5.11 – 5.12



# ALPHABETICAL INDEX (6/8)

## R

radio	
fitting a radio .....	5.33
radio.....	3.16 → 3.18
radio frequency remote control/key	
battery.....	5.27 – 5.28
use.....	1.2 → 1.5
range with fuel .....	1.101, 1.104, 1.106 – 1.107
reagent (tank) .....	1.150 → 1.153
reagent quality.....	1.150 → 1.153
reagent tank.....	1.150 → 1.153
reagent tank cap.....	1.150 → 1.153
reagent tank capacity .....	1.150 → 1.153
rear bench seat.....	1.64, 1.66, 3.34 – 3.35
rear parcel shelf.....	1.66, 3.36
rear seat .....	1.64
rear seats	
functions .....	3.34 – 3.35
rear seats.....	1.48, 3.33
rear view camera .....	2.142 → 2.144
rear view mirrors.....	0.2, 1.125 → 1.128
remote control	
card.....	1.7 → 1.10
deadlocking.....	1.6
map.....	1.7 → 1.10
remote control .....	1.11 → 1.21
remote control door locking unit .....	1.2 → 1.5
replacement	
remote control batteries .....	5.27 – 5.28
replacement parts.....	6.11
reverse gear	
selecting.....	2.16
reversing sensor .....	2.134 → 2.141
roof bars .....	3.44 → 3.46
roof rack	
roof bars.....	3.44 → 3.46

running in .....	2.2
------------------	-----

## S

safety distance warning .....	2.69 → 2.72
safety distances.....	2.69 → 2.72
SCR: selective catalytic reduction .....	1.150 → 1.153
screen	
navigation display .....	3.16 → 3.18
navigation screen.....	3.16 → 3.18
screen wash/wipe	
replacing blades.....	1.143, 5.38 – 5.39
screen wash/wipe .....	1.144
screens	
multimedia screen.....	2.24 – 2.25, 2.56 → 2.58, 2.65, 2.70, 2.88 → 2.91, 2.93, 2.137 – 2.138, 2.142, 2.148, 3.11, 3.16 → 3.18
seat belt pretensioners	
front seat belt .....	1.50 → 1.55
seat belt pretensioners .....	1.56
seat belts	
seat belt height adjustment.....	1.47
seat belt reminder warning light.....	1.45
seat belts .. 0.6, 1.43 → 1.55, 1.58, 1.62 → 1.64, 1.67 → 1.89, 4.17	
seats .....	0.3
service sheets.....	6.12 → 6.17
settings	
configuration menu .....	1.119 → 1.121
settings .....	1.119 → 1.121
side protection devices.....	1.56 – 1.57
sign detection: overspeed warning .....	2.92 → 2.95
signals and lights .....	1.93, 1.133 → 1.140
speakers	
location .....	5.33
special features of diesel versions.....	2.14 – 2.15
special features of petrol vehicles .....	2.12 – 2.13

# ALPHABETICAL INDEX (7/8)

speed limiter .....	1.102, 2.96 → 2.99
starting .....	1.116
starting the engine .....	2.3 → 2.11
steering wheel	
adjustment .....	1.124
steering wheel controls .....	3.16 → 3.18
Stop & Start .....	1.124, 1.149 – 1.150, 2.21 – 2.22
Stop & Start function .....	2.8 → 2.11, 2.17, 2.21 – 2.22
stopping the engine .....	2.4, 2.7, 2.17 → 2.20
storage compartment .....	3.25 → 3.31
storage compartments .....	3.25 → 3.31
storage/organisation .....	0.3
sun visor .....	3.24
switching on the vehicle ignition .....	2.3 → 2.7

## T

tailgate .....	1.2 – 1.3, 1.7 → 1.10, 1.28, 3.38 → 3.42
tank	
Brake fluid .....	4.8
Coolant .....	4.7
tanks and reservoirs:	
windscreen washer .....	4.9
technical specifications .....	6.5 → 6.11
telephone .....	3.16 → 3.18
temperature regulation .....	3.9 → 3.13
tool kit .....	5.3, 5.8 → 5.10
tools .....	5.8 → 5.10
towing	
breakdown .....	5.40 – 5.41
towing equipment .....	3.43
towing .....	0.9
towing a caravan .....	3.43, 6.10
towing hitch .....	5.8 – 5.9, 5.40 – 5.41
towing rings .....	3.38 → 3.42
towing weights .....	6.10
traction control .....	1.100, 2.42 → 2.47

Traction control - Extended grip .....	2.47
traction control system: ASR .....	2.42, 2.44
trailer driving assistance .....	2.46
transporting children .....	1.59 – 1.60, 1.62 → 1.89
transporting objects	
in the luggage compartment .....	3.39 → 3.42
on the roof .....	6.10
trims .....	5.10
trip computer and warning system .....	1.98 → 1.102, 1.104, 1.109 → 1.118, 1.120
tyre inflation kit .....	2.35, 2.37 → 2.41, 5.2, 5.4 → 5.7
tyre pressure .....	0.7, 1.110, 1.113, 2.28, 2.31 → 2.41, 4.10 – 4.11, 5.2, 5.5, 5.7, 5.12, 5.14
tyre pressure loss warning .....	2.31 → 2.36, 5.5, 5.12
tyre pressure monitor .....	1.101, 2.37 → 2.41
tyre pressures 2.31 → 2.41, 4.10 – 4.11, 5.4 → 5.7, 5.12, 5.14	
tyres	
tyre pressure monitoring system .....	2.37 → 2.41
tyres .....	0.2, 2.28, 2.31 → 2.41, 4.10 – 4.11, 5.13 → 5.15

## U

unlocking the doors .....	1.7 → 1.21, 1.29 → 1.32
USB socket .....	3.16

## V

variable power-assisted steering .....	1.124
vehicle identification .....	0.7
vehicle identification number (VIN) .....	0.7
vehicle identification plates .....	0.7, 6.2, 6.4
vehicle range .....	1.152
ventilation	
ventilation .....	3.2 → 3.4
ventilation .....	3.2 → 3.13

## W

warning lights .....	1.98 → 1.102, 1.104 → 1.118
----------------------	-----------------------------

## ALPHABETICAL INDEX (8/8)

washing .....	4.14 → 4.16
weights .....	6.10
welcome aboard your vehicle .....	0.1
wheelbrace .....	5.8 – 5.9, 5.11 – 5.12
wheels (safety) .....	5.13 → 5.15
wide angle rear view mirror .....	1.128
windows.....	0.2
windscreen de-icing/demisting .....	3.6, 3.9 → 3.13
windscreen washer.....	1.141 → 1.146, 1.146
windscreen washer/wiper .....	1.119 – 1.120, 5.38 – 5.39
wiper blades .....	0.9, 1.144, 5.38
wipers .....	1.141 → 1.146, 1.146
wireless charger	
induction recharging .....	3.17





RENAULT S.A.S. SOCIÉTÉ PAR ACTIONS SIMPLIFIÉE AU CAPITAL DE 533 941 113 €, 13-15, QUAI LE GALLO  
92100 BOULOGNE-BILLANCOURT R.C.S. NANTERRE 780 129 987 — SIRET 780 129 987 03591 / TÉL. : 0810 40 50 60  
NU 1398-3 – 99 91 059 45S – 01/2022 – Edition anglaise



**KX**